MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 82

The Life of Thomas Becket

William FitzStephen

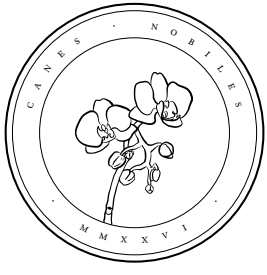
Vita sancti Thomæ

The Life of Thomas Becket
With the Description of London

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

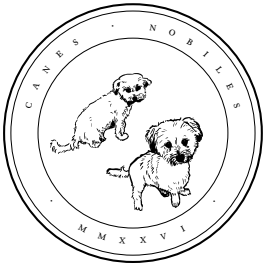


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 82 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows James Craigie Robertson's text
(Materials for the History of Thomas Becket III, London, 1877)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

Prologue 7
The Description of London 9
The Games of London 19
Birth, Schooling, and the Chancellorship 30
The Chancellor's Household 39
The King and His Chancellor 48
The Embassy to Paris 57
Toulouse, the French War, and the Election 66
The New Archbishop 74
Clarendon 82
The Customs and Northampton 90
The Council of Northampton 98

The Sixth and Seventh Days 106
The Archbishop's Answer 117
The Judgment Refused 125
The Flight 133
Before the Pope 141
The King's Prayer 151
Pontigny and Sens 160
The Excommunication of Gilbert 169
Excommunications and Councils 179
Montmirail and Montmartre 187
The Coronation of the Young King 197
The Peace of Fréteval 206
The Terms of Peace 217
The Return 226
Southwark and the Signs 235
The Knights Swear 243
Christmas at Canterbury 251
The Knights in the Palace 260
The Martyrdom 268
After the Murder 277
Burial and Miracles 287

Prologus

PROLOGUE

William son of Stephen, fellow citizen, clerk, and table companion of Thomas, called to share his cares as subdeacon in his chapel and reader of his letters, and witness of his passion at Canterbury, sets down the life and passion of the good archbishop. As Plato shaped a republic and Sallust described Africa, he will describe the site and commonwealth of London, Thomas's city.

Ad Dei omnipotentis gloriam et perpetuam beati Thomæ
to of-God almighty the-glory and the-perpetual of-blessed Thomas
memoriam, et ad omnium legentium vel audientium profectum
memory and for of-all of-those-reading or hearing the-profit
et ædificationem, ipsius boni archipræsulis et martyris
and edification of-the-very good archprelate and martyr
Thomæ vitam et passionem ego Willelmus, filius Stephani,
Thomas the-life and passion I William son of-Stephen
scribere curavi: ejusdem domini mei concivis, clericus, et
to-write have-taken-care of-the-same lord my fellow-citizen clerk and
convictor; et ad partem sollicitudinis ejus oris ipsius
table-companion and to a-share of-the-solicitude his of-the-mouth his-own
invitatus alloquio, fui in cancellaria ejus dictator; in capella,
invited by-the-address I-was in the-chancery his secretary in the-chapel
eo celebrante, subdiaconus; sedente eo ad cognitionem
with-him celebrating subdeacon with-sitting him for the-hearing
causarum, epistolarum et instrumentorum quæ offerebantur
of-cases of-letters and of-instruments which were-offered
lector, et aliquarum, eo quandoque jubente, causarum
reader and of-some with-him sometimes ordering of-cases
patronus. Concilio Northamtoniæ habito, ubi maximum
advocate with-the-council of-Northampton held where greatest

fuit rerum momentum, cum ipso interfui; passionem ejus
was of-affairs the-moment with him I-was-present the-passion his
Cantuariæ inspexi; cætera plurima, quæ hic scribuntur, oculis
at-Canterbury I-beheld the-other very-many-things which here are-written with-eyes
vidi, auribus audivi; quædam a consciis didici relatoribus.
I-saw with-ears I-heard some-things from witnesses I-learned narrators
Plato rempublicam oratione formavit; situm Africæ in
Plato the-commonwealth in-speech formed the-site of-Africa in
historia sua Sallustius descripsit, occasione Pœnorum
history his Sallust described on-the-occasion of-the-Carthaginians
Romanis rebellium, et Romanorum ad eos subjugandos
to-the-Romans rebelling and of-the-Romans to them to-be-subdued
sæpius transmissorum; et ego situm, et rem publicam
more-often sent-across and I the-site and the-thing public
Londoniæ occasione beati Thomæ.
of-London on-the-occasion of-blessed Thomas

THE DESCRIPTION OF LONDON

London, seat of the kingdom, is happy in its air, its faith, its walls, its site, and its citizens. William counts Saint Paul's and its thirteen conventual and 126 parish churches, the Tower on the east and two castles on the west, the walled city and the Thames, the king's palace two miles upstream, the gardens, fields, woods, and springs, the citizens' arms, the three schools and their disputations, the trades in their places, the cook-shop by the river, and the Friday horse fair on a field outside one of the gates.

Descriptio nobilissimæ civitatis Londoniæ.

description of-the-most-noble city of-London

Inter nobiles orbis urbes, quos fama celebrat, civitas

among the-noble of-the-world cities which fame celebrates the-city

Londoniæ, regni Anglorum sedes, una est, quæ famam

of-London of-the-kingdom of-the-English the-seat one is which the-fame

sui latius diffundit, opes et merces longius transmittit,

of-itself more-widely spreads riches and merchandise farther sends

caput altius extollit. Felix est aeris salubritate, Christiana

the-head higher raises happy it-is of-the-air in-the-healthiness in-Christian

religione, firmitate munitionum, natura situs, honore

religion in-the-strength of-fortifications in-the-nature of-site in-the-honor

civium, pudicitia matronali; ludis etiam quam jocunda, et

of-citizens in-the-chastity matronly in-games also how pleasant and

nobilium est fœcunda virorum: quæ singula semotim

of-noble it-is fruitful men which-things singly separately

libet inspicere.

it-pleases to-examine

Ibi siquidem emollit animos hominum clementia cæli;
there indeed softens the-minds of-men the-mildness of-the-sky
non ut sint "in Venerem putres," sed ne feri sint et
not that they-be into Venus rotten but that-not fierce they-be and
bestiales, potius benigni et liberales.
bestial rather kindly and liberal
Est ibi in ecclesia beati Pauli episcopalis sedes: quondam
there-is there in the-church of-blessed Paul the-episcopal see once
fuit metropolitana, et adhuc futura creditur, si remeaverint
it-was metropolitan and still about-to-be it-is-believed if should-return
cives in insulam; nisi forte beati Thomæ martyris
the-citizens into the-island unless perhaps of-blessed Thomas the-martyr
titulus archiepiscopalis et præsentia corporalis dignitatem
the-title archiepiscopal and the-presence bodily dignity
illam Cantuariæ, ubi nunc est, conservet perpetuam. Sed
that at-Canterbury where now it-is preserve perpetual but
cum utramque harum urbium sanctus Thomas illustraverit,
since each of-these cities saint Thomas has-illumined
Londoniam ortu, Cantuariam occasu; ipsius sancti
London by-his-rising Canterbury by-his-setting of-the-very of-the-saint
intuitu, cum justitiæ accessu, habet altera adversus alteram
in-regard with of-justice the-access has the-one against the-other
quod amplius alleget. Sunt etiam, quod ad Christianæ
what more it-may-allege there-are also as-to-what to of-the-Christian
fidei cultum pertinet, tum in Londonia tum in suburbio,
faith the-worship pertains both in London and in the-suburb
tredecim majores ecclesiæ conventuum, præter minores
thirteen greater churches of-convents besides the-lesser
parochianas centum viginti sex.
parish-churches a-hundred twenty six

Habet ab oriente arcem palatinam, maximam et fortissimam,
it-has on the-east a-castle palatine very-great and very-strong
cujus et area et muri a fundamento profundissimo
whose both area and walls from a-foundation very-deep
exsurgunt, cæmento cum sanguine animalium temperato: ab
rise with-mortar with the-blood of-animals tempered on
occidente duo castella munitissima; muro urbis alto et
the-west two castles very-fortified with-the-wall of-the-city high and
magno duplatis heptapylæ portis intercontinuante, turrito ab
great with-doubled of-seven-gates gates connecting towered on
aquilone per intercapedines. Similiterque ab austro Londonia
the-north at intervals and-likewise on the-south London
murata et turrita fuit; sed fluvius maximus piscosus, Thamesis,
walled and towered was but the-river very-great full-of-fish the-Thames
mari influo refluoque, qui illac allabitur, mœnia illa tractu
with-sea flowing and-ebbing which there glides-along walls those by-the-course
temporis abluit, labefactavit, dejecit. Item sursum ab
of-time has-washed-away weakened thrown-down likewise upward on
occidente palatium regium eminet super fluvium eundem,
the-west the-palace royal stands-out above the-river same
ædificium incomparabile, cum antemurali et propugnaculis,
a-building incomparable with outwork and bulwarks
duobus millibus ab urbe, suburbio frequenti continuante.
two miles from the-city with-a-suburb populous connecting
Undique extra domos suburbanorum horti civium,
on-all-sides outside the-houses of-the-suburbans the-gardens of-the-citizens
arboribus consiti, spatiosi et speciosi, contigui habentur.
with-trees planted spacious and handsome adjoining are-held
Item a borea sunt agri, pascuæ, et pratorum grata
likewise on the-north are fields pastures and of-meadows a-pleasant
planities, aquis fluvialibus interfluis; ad quas molinorum
plain with-waters of-streams flowing-between at which of-mills

versatiles rotæ citantur cum murmure jocoso. Proxime patet
the-turning wheels are-driven with murmur merry nearby lies-open
ingens foresta, saltus nemorosi, ferarum latebræ, cervorum,
a-huge forest glades wooded of-beasts the-lairs of-stags
damarum, aprorum, et taurorum sylvestrium. Agri urbis
of-does of-boars and of-bulls wild the-fields of-the-city
sationales non sunt jejunæ glareæ, sed pingues Asiæ campi,
arable not are of-hungry gravel but rich of-Asia plains

"qui faciant lætas segetes,"
"which make glad crops,"

et suorum cultorum repleant horrea
and of-their tillers fill the-barns

"Cerealis mergite culmi."
"Of-Ceres with-the-sheaf of-the-stalk."

Sunt etiam circa Londoniam ab aquilone suburbani fontes
there-are also around London on the-north suburban springs
præcipui, aqua dulci, salubri, perspicua, et per claros
outstanding with-water sweet healthful clear and over the-bright
rivo trepidante lapillos; inter quos Fons Sacer, Fons
with-the-stream trembling pebbles among which the-Well Holy the-Well
Clericorum, Fons sancti Clementis, nominatiores habentur,
of-the-Clerks the-Well of-saint Clement more-famous are-held
et adeuntur celebriore accessu et majore frequentia
and are-visited with-more-frequent access and greater throng
scholarium, et urbanæ juventutis in serotinis æstivis ad
of-scholars and of-the-urban youth on evening summer to
auram exeuntis. Urbs sane bona, si bonum habeat dominum.
the-air going-out a-city truly good if a-good it-have lord

Urbs ista viris est honorata, armis decorata, multo
city this with-men is honored with-arms adorned with-many
habitatore populosa; ut tempore bellicæ cladis, jubente rege
inhabitant populous so-that at-the-time of-warlike disaster with-ordering king
Stephano, bello apti ex ea exeuntes ostentui haberentur, et
Stephen for-war fit-men from it going-out for-display were-held and
viginti millia armatorum equitum, sexaginta millia peditum
twenty thousand of-armed horsemen sixty thousand of-foot
æstimarentur. Cives Londoniæ ubicunque locorum præ
were-reckoned the-citizens of-London wherever of-places before
omnibus aliis civibus ornatu morum, vestium, et mensæ
all other citizens for-the-elegance of-manners of-dress and of-table
lautioris, spectabiles et noti habentur. Habitatores aliarum
more-sumptuous conspicuous and known are-held the-inhabitants of-other
urbium cives, hujus barones dicuntur. Eis est finis omnis
cities citizens of-this-one barons are-called to-them is the-end of-every
controversiæ sacramentum. Urbis matronæ ipsæ Sabinæ sunt.
controversy the-oath of-the-city the-matrons very Sabines are
In Londonia tres principales ecclesiæ scholas celebres habent
in London three principal churches schools famous have
de privilegio et antiqua dignitate. Plerumque tamen favore
by privilege and ancient dignity generally nevertheless by-the-favor
personali alicujus notorum secundum philosophiam plures ibi
personal of-someone of-the-known in-respect-of philosophy more there
scholæ admittuntur. Diebus festis ad ecclesias festivas magistri
schools are-admitted on-days festal at the-churches festal the-masters
conventus celebrant. Disputant scholares, quidam demonstrative,
gatherings celebrate dispute the-scholars some demonstratively
dialectice alii; hi rotant enthymemata, hi perfectis melius
dialectically others these roll enthymemes these perfect better
utuntur syllogismis. Quidam ad ostentationem exercentur
use syllogisms some for show are-exercised

disputatione, quæ est inter colluctantes; alii ad veritatem,
in-disputation which is between wrestlers others for truth
ea quæ est perfectionis gratia. Sophistæ simulatores
that which is of-perfection for-the-sake sophists feigners
agmine et inundatione verborum beati judicantur; alii
by-the-column and flood of-words blessed are-judged others
paralogizant. Oratores aliqui quandoque orationibus rhetoricis
reason-falsely orators some at-times with-speeches rhetorical
aliquid dicunt apposite ad persuadendum, curantes artis
something say aptly for persuading taking-care of-the-art
præcepta servare, et ex contingentibus nihil omittere. Pueri
the-precepts to-keep and of the-pertinent-things nothing to-omit boys
diversarum scholarum versibus inter se conrixantur; aut
of-different schools in-verses among themselves wrangle or
de principiis artis grammaticæ, vel regulis præteritorum vel
about the-principles of-the-art of-grammar or the-rules of-preterites or
supinorum, contendunt. Sunt alii qui in epigrammatibus,
of-supines contend there-are others who in epigrams
rhythmis et metris, utuntur vetere illa triviali dicacitate;
rhythms and meters use the-old that trivial wit
licentia Fescennina socios suppressis nominibus liberius
with-license Fescennine the-comrades with-suppressed names more-freely
lacerant; lœdorias jaculantur et scommata; salibus Socraticis
they-lacerate abuses they-hurl and gibes with-the-salt Socratic

sociorum, vel forte majorum, vitia tangunt; vel mordacius
of-the-comrades or perhaps of-the-greater the-vices touch or more-bitingly
dente rodunt "Theonino" audacibus dithyrambis. Auditores,
with-tooth gnaw Theonine with-bold dithyrambs the-hearers

"multum ridere parati,
"much to-laugh ready,
Ingeminant tremulos naso crispante cachinnos."
Redouble tremulous with-nose wrinkling guffaws."

De dispositione urbis.
about the-arrangement of-the-city
Singulorum officiorum exercitores, singularum rerum venditores,
of-single offices the-practitioners of-single things the-sellers
singularum operarum suarum locatores, quotidiano mane per
of-single works their the-hirers every morning by
se sunt locis distincti omnes, ut officiis. Præterea est
themselves are in-places distinct all as in-offices moreover there-is
in Londonia supra ripam fluminis, inter vina in navibus et
in London on the-bank of-the-river among the-wines in ships and
cellis vinariis venalia, publica coquina. Ibi quotidie pro
cellars wine for-sale a-public cookshop there daily according-to
tempore est invenire cibaria, fercula, assa, pista, frixa, elixa,
the-season it-is to-find foods dishes roast baked fried boiled
pisces, pisciculos, carnes grossiores pauperibus, delicatiores
fishes little-fish meats coarser for-the-poor more-delicate
divitibus, venationum, avium, avicularum. Si subito veniant
for-the-rich of-venison of-birds of-little-birds if suddenly come

ad aliquem civium amici fatigati ex itinere; nec libeat
to some-one of-the-citizens friends wearied from a-journey nor it-please
jejunis exspectare ut novi cibi emantur et coquantur,
fasting to-wait until new foods be-bought and be-cooked

"Dent famuli manibus lymphas, panesque canistris;"
"Let-give the-servants for-the-hands waters, and-breads in-baskets;"

interim ad ripam curritur, ibi præsto sunt omnia desiderabilia.
meanwhile to the-bank one-runs there ready are all-things desirable
Quantalibet militum vel peregrinorum infinitas intrans urbem,
however-great of-soldiers or of-pilgrims the-infinity entering the-city
qualibet diei vel noctis hora, vel ab urbe exitura, ne
at-whatever of-day or of-night hour or from the-city about-to-go-out lest
vel hi nimium jejunent, vel alii impransi exeant, illuc,
either these too-much fast or others unfed go-out thither
si placet, divertunt, et se pro modo suo singuli
if it-please they-turn-aside and themselves according-to measure their each
reficiunt. Qui se curare volunt molliter, accipenserem
refresh those-who themselves to-take-care wish softly the-sturgeon
vel Afram avem vel attagenem Ionicum non quærant,
or the-African bird or the-francolin Ionian not let-them-seek
appositis quæ ibi inveniuntur deliciis. Hæc equidem
with-the-set-out which there are-found delicacies this indeed
publica coquina est, et civitati plurimum expediens, et
a-public cookshop is and to-the-city very expedient and
ad civilitatem pertinens. Hinc est quod legitur in Gorgia
to civility pertaining hence it-is that is-read in the-Gorgias
Platonis, juxta medicinam esse cocorum officium, simulacrum
of-Plato next-to medicine to-be of-cooks the-office the-image
et adulationem quartæ particulæ civilitatis.
and flattery of-the-fourth part of-civility

Est ibi extra unam portarum statim in suburbio quidam
there-is there outside one of-the-gates at-once in the-suburb a-certain
planus campus re et nomine. Omni sexta feria, nisi sit
level field in-fact and in-name every sixth day unless it-be
major festivitas præceptæ solennitatis, est ibidem celebre
a-greater festival of-commanded solemnity there-is there a-famous
spectaculum nobilium equorum venalium; spectaturi vel
spectacle of-noble horses for-sale about-to-see or
empturi veniunt, qui in urbe assunt, comites, barones,
about-to-buy come those-who in the-city are-present earls barons
milites, cives plurimi. Juvat videre gradarios succussatura
knights citizens very-many it-delights to-see ambling-horses with-jolting
nitente suaviter ambulantes, pedibus lateraliter simul erectis
gleaming sweetly walking with-feet sideways together raised
quasi a subalternis et demissis; hinc equos, qui armigeris
as-if from subalterns and lowered here horses which for-squires
magis conveniunt, durius incedentes, sed expedite tamen,
rather befit more-roughly going but readily nevertheless
qui quasi a contradictoriis pedes simul elevant et deponunt;
which as-if from contradictories the-feet together raise and set-down
hinc nobiles pullos juniores, qui, nondum fræno bene assueti,
here noble colts younger which not-yet to-the-bridle well accustomed

"Altius incedunt, et mollia crura reponunt."
"Higher they-step, and soft legs set-down."

Hinc summarios membris validis et vegetis; hinc dextrarios
here sumpter-horses with-limbs strong and vigorous here chargers
pretiosos, elegantis formæ, staturæ honestæ, micantes auribus,
costly of-elegant form of-stature handsome quivering with-ears
cervicibus arduis, clunibus obesis. In horum incessu spectant
with-necks high with-haunches plump in of-these the-gait watch

emptores, primo passum suaviorem, postea motum citatiorem,
the-buyers first the-pace more-gentle afterward the-motion faster
qui est quasi a contrariis, pedibus anterioribus simul
which is as-if from contrary feet the-front-ones together
solo amotis et admotis, et posterioribus similiter.
from-the-ground removed and brought-back and the-hind-ones likewise
Cum talium sonipedum cursus imminet, et aliorum forte, qui
when of-such steeds a-race impends and of-others perhaps who
similiter sunt in genere suo ad vecturam validi, ad cursuram
likewise are in kind their for carrying strong for running
vegeti, clamor attollitur, vulgares equos in partem ire
vigorous a-shout is-raised the-common horses into a-side to-go
præcipitur: sessores alipedum pueri tres simul, aliquando
it-is-ordered the-riders of-the-wing-footed boys three together sometimes
bini ex condicto et bini, certamini se præparant,
two-by-two by agreement and two-by-two for-the-contest themselves prepare
docti equis imperitare, indomitorum "lupatis temperant
skilled horses to-command of-the-untamed with-rough-bits they-temper
frænis ora:" hoc maxime præcavent, ne alter alteri
with-bridles the-mouths this most they-beware lest the-one from-the-other
cursum præripiat. Equi similiter pro modo suo ad
the-course snatch the-horses likewise according-to manner their for
certamen cursus illius attollunt; tremunt artus, moræ
the-contest of-the-race that rise tremble in-the-limbs of-delay
impatientes, stare loco nesciunt; facto signo, membra
impatient to-stand in-place know-not with-made the-signal the-limbs
extendunt, cursum rapiunt, agilitate pervicaci feruntur.
they-stretch the-course they-seize with-agility persistent they-are-borne
Certant sessores laudis amore et spe victoriæ equis
contend the-riders of-praise from-love and in-hope of-victory to-the-horses
admissis subdere calcaria, et nec minus urgere eos virgis, et
let-go to-put-under the-spurs and not less to-urge them with-rods and

ciere clamoribus. Putares omnia in motu esse, secundum
to-rouse with-shouts you-would-think all-things in motion to-be according-to
Heraclitum, et falsam omnino Zenonis sententiam, dicentis
Heraclitus and false wholly of-Zeno the-opinion saying
quoniam non contingit moveri, neque stadium pertransire.
that not it-happens to-be-moved nor the-stadium to-traverse
Parte alia stant seorsim rusticorum peculia, agrorum
in-part another stand apart of-the-rustics the-stock of-fields
instrumenta, sues longis lateribus, vaccæ distentis uberibus,
the-implements swine with-long sides cows with-distended udders

"Corpora magna boum, lanigerumque pecus."
"The-bodies great of-oxen, and-the-woolly flock."

THE GAMES OF LONDON

The fair sells plow mares and their foals; merchants of every nation trade here; the city is older than Rome, founded by Brutus. Its sports are the miracle plays, the cockfights and the ball games of Shrovetide, the Lenten sham fights on horseback, the water quintain at Easter, the summer games of the young, the winter fights of boars and of bulls and bears set on by dogs, skating on the frozen marsh, and hawking and hunting. London bore Constantine, and lately the Empress Matilda, the young King Henry, and Thomas.

Stant ibi aptæ aratris, trahis, et bigis equæ; quarundam
stand there fit for-plows for-sledges and for-carts mares of-some
ventres fœtibus protument; alias editi fœtus obeunt, pulli
the-bellies with-young swell others born the-young go-about foals
lasciviores, sequela inseparabilis.
more-playful a-following inseparable

Ad hanc urbem ex omni natione quæ sub cælo est navalia
to this city from every nation which under heaven is by-sea
gaudent institores habere commercia.
rejoice merchants to-have trades

"Aurum mittit Arabs; species et thura Sabæus;
"Gold sends the-Arab; spices and frankincense the-Sabaean;
Arma Scythes; oleum palmarum divite sylva
Arms the-Scythian; oil of-palms from-rich wood
Pingue solum Babylon; Nilus lapides pretiosos;
Fertile soil Babylon; the-Nile stones precious;
Seres purpureas vestes; Galli sua vina;
The-Seres purple garments; the-Gauls their wines;
Norwegi, Russi, varium, grysium, sabelinas."
The-Norwegians, the-Russians, vair, gris, sables."

Urbe Roma, secundum chronicorum fidem, satis antiquior
than-the-city Rome according-to of-the-chronicles the-faith quite older
est. Ab eisdem quippe patribus Trojanis hæc prius a Bruto
it-is from the-same indeed fathers Trojan this-one earlier by Brutus
condita est, quam illa a Remo et Romulo; unde et adhuc
founded was than that-one by Remus and Romulus whence also still
antiquis eisdem utuntur legibus, communibus institutis. Hæc
the-ancient same they-use laws common institutions this-one
etiam similiter illi regionibus est distincta; habet annuos
also likewise to-that in-regions is distinguished it-has annual
pro consulibus vicecomites; habet senatoriam dignitatem, et
for consuls sheriffs it-has senatorial dignity and
magistratus minores; eluviones et aquæductus in vicis; ad
magistrates lesser sewers and aqueducts in the-streets for
genera causarum, deliberativæ, demonstrativæ, judicialis, loca
the-kinds of-cases deliberative demonstrative judicial places

sua, fora singula; habet sua diebus statutis comitia. Non
its-own courts single it-has its-own on-days fixed assemblies not
puto urbem esse in qua sint probabiliores consuetudines,
I-think a-city to-be in which be more-approvable customs
in ecclesiis visitandis, ordinatis Dei honorandis, festis
in churches to-be-visited in-the-ordained of-God to-be-honored in-feasts
feriandis, eleemosynis dandis, in hospitibus suscipiendis,
to-be-kept in-alms to-be-given in guests to-be-received
in desponsationibus firmandis, matrimoniis contrahendis,
in betrothals to-be-confirmed in-marriages to-be-contracted
nuptiis celebrandis, conviviis ornandis, convivis hilarandis,
in-weddings to-be-celebrated in-banquets to-be-adorned in-guests to-be-cheered
etiam in exsequiis curandis et cadaveribus humandis.
also in funerals to-be-attended-to and in-corpses to-be-buried
Solæ pestes Londoniæ sunt immodica stultorum potatio, et
the-only plagues of-London are the-immoderate of-fools drinking and
frequens incendium. Ad hæc omnes fere episcopi, abbates,
frequent fire to these all nearly bishops abbots
et magnates Angliæ quasi cives et municipes sunt urbis
and magnates of-England as-if citizens and burgesses are of-the-city
Londoniæ, sua ibi habentes ædificia præclara, ubi se
of-London their-own there having buildings splendid where themselves
recipiunt, ubi divites impensas faciunt, ad concilia, ad
they-lodge where lavish expenses make to councils to
conventus celebres in urbem evocati a domino rege, vel
assemblies solemn into the-city summoned by the-lord king or
metropolitano suo, seu propriis tracti negotiis.
metropolitan their or by-their-own drawn affairs

De ludis.

about games

Amplius et ad ludos urbis veniamus, quoniam non expedit

further also to the-games of-the-city let-us-come since not it-is-expedient

utilem tantum et seriam urbem esse, nisi dulcis etiam sit et

useful only and serious a-city to-be unless sweet also it-be and

jocunda: unde et in sigillis summorum pontificum, usque ad

pleasant whence also on the-seals of-the-supreme pontiffs up-to to

tempora ultimi Leonis papæ, ex altera parte bullæ, sculpto

the-times of-the-last Leo pope on the-one side of-the-bull with-carved

per impressionem piscatore Petro, et supra eum clave, quasi

by impression with-the-fisherman Peter and above him a-key as-if

manu Dei de cælis ei porrecta, et circa eum versu,

by-the-hand of-God from the-heavens to-him held-out and around him a-verse

"Tu pro me navem liquisti, suscipe clavem,"

"You for me the-ship have-left, take-up the-key,"

ex altera parte impressa erat urbs, et scriptura ista, "Aurea

on the-other side impressed was a-city and the-writing this Golden

Roma." Item ad laudem Augusti Cæsaris et Romæ dictum

Rome likewise to the-praise of-Augustus Caesar and of-Rome said

est;

it-was

"Nocte pluit tota, redeunt spectacula mane:

"At-night it-rains all, return the-spectacles in-the-morning:

Divisum imperium cum Jove Cæsar habes."

Divided the-empire with Jove, Caesar, you-have."

Londonia pro spectaculis theatralibus, pro ludis scenicis,
London instead-of spectacles theatrical instead-of plays stage
ludos habet sanctiores, repræsentationes miraculorum quæ
games has holier representations of-the-miracles which
sancti confessores operati sunt, seu repræsentationes passionum
holy confessors performed have or representations of-the-passions
quibus claruit constantia martyrum. Præterea quotannis, die
in-which shone the-constancy of-the-martyrs moreover every-year on-the-day
quæ dicitur Carnilevaria, ut a ludis puerorum Londoniæ
which is-called Carnival that from the-games of-the-boys of-London
incipiamus (omnes enim pueri fuimus), scholarum singuli
we-may-begin all for boys we-were of-the-schools each
pueri suos apportant magistro suo gallos gallinaceos pugnaces,
boys their bring to-master their cocks barnyard fighting
et totum illud antemeridianum datur ludo puerorum
and whole that forenoon is-given to-the-game of-the-boys
vacantium spectare in scholis suorum pugnas gallorum. Post
free to-watch in the-schools their the-fights of-the-cocks after
prandium vadit in suburbanam planitiem omnis juventus
dinner goes into the-suburban plain all the-youth
urbis ad lusum pilæ celebrem. Singulorum studiorum
of-the-city to the-game of-ball famous of-each studies
scholares suam habent pilam; singulorum officiorum urbis
the-scholars their-own have ball of-each offices of-the-city
exercitores suam fere singuli. Majores natu, patres, et
the-practitioners their-own nearly each the-elder by-birth the-fathers and
divites urbis, in equis spectatum veniunt certamina juniorum,
the-rich of-the-city on horses to-watch come the-contests of-the-younger
et modo suo juvenantur cum juvenibus; et excitari videtur
and in-way their are-made-young with the-young and to-be-roused seems

in eis motus caloris naturalis contemplatione tanti motus
in them the-motion of-heat natural by-the-contemplation of-so-great motion
et participatione gaudiorum adolescentiæ liberioris.
and by-participation of-the-joys of-youth freer
Singulis diebus dominicis in quadragesima, post prandia,
on-single days Sunday in Lent after dinners
exit in campos "juvenum recens examen" in equis bellicosis,
goes-out into the-fields of-young-men a-fresh swarm on horses warlike
in equis certamine primis; quorum quisque
on horses in-the-contest first of-whom each

"Aptus et in gyros currere doctus equus."
"Fit and in circles to-run trained a-horse."

Erumpunt a portis catervatim filii civium laici, instructi
burst-forth from the-gates in-troops the-sons of-the-citizens lay equipped
lanceis et scutis militaribus; juniores hastilibus ferro
with-lances and shields military the-younger with-spear-shafts with-the-iron
dempto præfurcatis, "simulacra belli cient," campestria prælia
removed forked images of-war they-rouse field battles
ludunt, et agonisticam exercent militarem. Adveniunt et
they-play and the-contest they-exercise military come also
plurimi aulici, rege in vicino posito, et de familiis
very-many courtiers with-the-king in the-vicinity placed and from the-households
episcoporum, consulum, et baronum ephebi, nondum cingulo
of-bishops of-earls and of-barons youths not-yet with-the-belt
donati militiæ, gratia concertandi. Accendit singulos spes
presented of-knighthood for-the-sake of-contending kindles each the-hope
victoriæ; equi feri adhinniunt, tremunt artus, frænos
of-victory the-horses fierce neigh tremble in-the-limbs the-bits
mandunt; impatientes moræ stare loco nesciunt; cum tandem
champ impatient of-delay to-stand in-place know-not when at-last

sonipedum rapit ungula cursum, sessores adolescentes, divisis
of-the-steeds seizes the-hoof the-course the-riders young with-divided
agminibus, hi præcedentibus instant, nec assequuntur; hi
columns these the-ones-ahead press nor overtake those
socios consequuntur, dejiciunt, et prætervolant.
their-comrades overtake throw-down and fly-past
In feriis paschalibus ludunt quasi prælia navalia. In arbore
in the-holidays of-Easter they-play as-if battles naval in a-tree
siquidem mediamna scuto fortiter innexo, navicula, multo
indeed in-mid-stream with-a-shield strongly fastened a-boat with-much
remo et raptu fluminis cita, celsa in puppi stantem habet
oar and with-the-rush of-the-river swift high on the-stern standing has
juvenem scutum illud lancea percussurum; qui si scuto
a-youth the-shield that with-the-lance about-to-strike who if on-the-shield
illi lanceam illidens frangat eam, et immotus persistat,
that the-lance dashing he-break it and unmoved stand-firm
habet propositum, voti compos; si vero lancea integra
has his-aim of-his-wish master if however with-the-lance whole
fortiter percusserit, in profluentem amnem dejicitur: navis
strongly he-shall-have-struck into the-flowing river he-is-thrown the-boat
motu suo acta præterit. Sunt tamen hinc inde secus
by-motion its driven passes-by there-are nevertheless on-this-side on-that by
scutum duæ naves stationariæ, et in eis juvenis plurimi,
the-shield two ships stationary and in them young-men very-many
ut eripiant percussorem flumine absorptum, cum primo
that they-may-snatch the-striker by-the-river swallowed when first
emersus comparet, vel summa rursus cum bullit in unda.
emerged he-appears or highest again when he-bubbles in the-wave
Supra pontem, et in solariis supra fluvium, sunt qui
above the-bridge and in the-galleries above the-river are those-who
talia spectent, multum ridere parati.
such-things watch much to-laugh ready

In festis tota æstate juvenes ludentes exercentur arcu,
in the-feasts the-whole summer young-men playing are-exercised in-archery
cursu, saltu, lucta, jactu lapidum, amentatis missilibus
running leaping wrestling the-throwing of-stones with-thonged missiles
ultra metam expediendis, parmis duellionum. Puellarum
beyond the-mark to-be-hurled with-the-shields of-the-duelists of-the-girls
Cytharea ducit choros usque imminente luna, et pede
Cytherea leads the-dances up-to with-impending moon and with-foot
libero pulsatur tellus.
free is-beaten the-earth
In hieme singulis fere festis ante prandium, vel apri spumantes
in winter on-single nearly feasts before dinner either boars foaming
pugnant pro capitibus, et verres fulmineis accincti dentibus
fight for heads and boars with-lightning-like girded tusks
addendi succidiæ, vel pingues tauri cornipetæ, seu ursi
to-be-added to-the-bacon or fat bulls horn-butting or bears
immanes, cum objectis depugnant canibus. Cum est congelata
huge with set-on fight dogs when is frozen
palus illa magna, quæ mœnia urbis aquilonalia alluit, exeunt
marsh that great which the-walls of-the-city northern washes go-out
lusum super glaciem densæ juvenum turmæ. Hi ex cursu
to-the-game upon the-ice thick of-young-men troops these from running
motu captato citatiore, distantia pedum composita,
with-motion caught swifter with-the-distance of-the-feet set
magnum spatium latere altero prætenso perlabuntur; alii
great space with-side one stretched-forward glide-across others
quasi magnos lapides molares de glacie sibi sedes
as-if great stones millstones of ice for-themselves seats
faciunt; sessorem unum trahunt plurimi præcurrentes, manibus
make a-sitter one they-drag many running-ahead with-hands
se tenentes. In tanta citatione lubrici motus aliquando
themselves holding in so-great speed of-slippery motion sometimes

pedibus lapsi cadunt omnes proni. Sunt alii super glaciem
with-feet slipped they-fall all prone there-are others on the-ice
ludere doctiores, singuli pedibus suis aptantes et sub
to-play more-skilled each to-feet their fitting and under
talaribus suis alligantes ossa, tibias scilicet animalium,
ankles their binding bones the-shin-bones namely of-animals
et palos ferro acuto supposito tenentes in manibus; quos
and poles with-iron sharp set-under holding in hands which
cum aliquando glaciei illidunt, tanta rapacitate feruntur,
when sometimes on-the-ice they-strike with-so-great speed they-are-borne
quanta avis volans, vel pilum balistæ. Interdum autem
as-great-as a-bird flying or the-bolt of-a-crossbow sometimes however
magna procul distantia, ex condicto duo aliqui ita ab
with-great far distance by agreement two some-ones so from
oppositis veniunt; concurritur, palos erigunt, se invicem
opposite-sides come they-run-together the-poles they-raise each-other in-turn
percutiunt; vel alter vel ambo cadunt, non sine læsione
strike either one or both fall not without injury
corporali; cum post casum etiam vi motus feruntur
bodily since after the-fall also by-the-force of-the-motion they-are-borne
ab invicem procul, et qua parte glacies caput excipit,
from each-other far and on-whatever side the-ice the-head catches
totum radit, totum decorticat. Plerumque tibia cadentis
wholly it-scrapes wholly it-strips generally the-shin of-the-falling-one
vel brachium, si super illud ceciderit, confringitur; sed
or the-arm if on it he-shall-have-fallen is-broken but
ætas avida gloriæ, juventus cupida victoriæ, ut in veris
age greedy of-glory youth desirous of-victory that in true
præliis fortius se habeat, ita in simulatis exercetur.
battles more-bravely itself it-may-bear so in feigned-ones is-exercised

Plurimi civium delectantur, ludentes in avibus cœli,
very-many of-the-citizens delight playing with birds of-the-sky
nisis, accipitribus, et hujusmodi, et in canibus
with-sparrowhawks with-hawks and of-this-kind and with dogs
militantibus in sylvis. Habentque cives suum jus venandi,
hunting in the-woods and-have the-citizens their-own right of-hunting
in Middelsexia, Hertfordsira, et tota Chiltra, et in Cantia
in Middlesex Hertfordshire and all the-Chiltern and in Kent
usque ad aquam Crayæ. Londonienses, tunc Trinovantes
up-to to the-water of-Cray the-Londoners then Trinovantes
dicti, Gaium Julium Cæsarem, qui "nullas nisi sanguine
called Gaius Julius Caesar who no unless with-blood
fuso vias habere gaudebat," repulerunt. Unde Lucanus,
shed ways to-have rejoiced repulsed whence Lucan

"Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis."
"Terrified to-the-sought he-showed backs Britons."

Civitas Londonia peperit aliquot qui regna plurima et
the-city London has-borne some who kingdoms very-many and
Romanum sibi subdiderunt imperium; et plurimos alios,
the-Roman to-themselves subjected empire and very-many others
quos mundi dominos virtus evexit ad deos, ut fuerat in
whom of-the-world lords courage raised to the-gods as had-been in
Apollinis oraculo Bruto promissum:
of-Apollo the-oracle to-Brutus promised

"Brute, sub occasu solis, trans Gallica regna,
"Brutus, under the-setting of-the-sun, beyond the-Gallic kingdoms,
Insula in oceano est undique clausa mari:
An-island in the-ocean is on-all-sides closed by-the-sea:

Hanc pete; namque tibi sedes erit illa perennis:
This seek; for to-you a-seat will-be that perennial:
Hic fiet natis altera Troja tuis.
Here will-be-made for-the-sons a-second Troy your.
Hic de stirpe tua reges nascentur; et ipsis
Here from stock your kings will-be-born; and to-them
Totius terræ subditus orbis erit."
Of-the-whole earth subject the-world will-be."

Et temporibus Christianis nobilem illum edidit imperatorem
and in-times Christian noble that it-produced emperor
Constantinum, Helenæ reginæ filium, qui urbem Romam et
Constantine of-Helena the-queen the-son who the-city Rome and
imperialia insignia omnia Deo donavit, et beato Petro, et
imperial the-insignia all to-God gave and to-blessed Peter and
Sylvestro papæ Romano, cui et stratoris exhibuit officium,
to-Sylvester pope Roman to-whom also of-groom he-showed the-office
et se non amplius imperatorem, sed sanctæ ecclesiæ
and himself no longer emperor but of-the-holy church
Romanæ defensorem gavisus est vocari: et ne pax domini
Roman defender rejoiced has to-be-called and lest the-peace of-the-lord
papæ, occasione præsentiæ ejus, secularis strepitus tumultu
pope on-the-occasion of-the-presence his of-secular din by-the-tumult
concuteretur, ipse ab urbe domino papæ collata omnino
be-shaken he-himself from the-city to-the-lord pope conferred wholly
discessit, et sibi civitatem Byzantium ædificavit. Londonia
departed and for-himself the-city Byzantium built London
et modernis temporibus reges illustres magnificosque peperit,
also in-modern times kings illustrious and-magnificent has-borne

imperatricem Mathildem, Henricum regem tertium, et
the-empress Matilda Henry the-king third and
beatum Thomam archiepiscopum, martyrem Christi gloriosum,
blessed Thomas archbishop martyr of-Christ glorious

"— — Quali non candidiorem
"Than-whom not whiter
Ipsa tulit, nec quo fuerit devinctior alter"
She-herself bore, nor than-whom were more-bound another"

omnibus bonis totius orbis Latini.
to-all the-good of-the-whole world Latin

Willelmus Filius Stephani, civis Londoniensis, de vita et passione Sancti Thomæ, Archiepiscopi et Martyris

BIRTH, SCHOOLING, AND THE CHANCELLORSHIP

God foreshowed Thomas to his mother, who dreamed she carried the whole church of Canterbury in her womb, and then of a coverlet too great to unfold that covered all England. Born in London to Gilbert and Matilda, reared at Merton, schooled in London and Paris, he served the city's sheriffs, then joined Archbishop Theobald's household, where Roger of Pont l'Évêque twice had him sent away. Theobald sent him to Rome, made him archdeacon, and at his urging Henry II made him chancellor, second in the kingdom.

Beatum Thomam, antequam exiret de ventre, novit Dominus
blessed Thomas before he-went-out from the-womb knew the-Lord
et prædestinavit; et qualis quantusque futurus esset,
and predestined and of-what-sort and-how-great about-to-be he-was
matri per revelationem declaravit. Siquidem illa prægnans
to-the-mother through revelation declared indeed she pregnant

adhuc vidit per somnium quod archiepiscopalem ecclesiam
still saw through a-dream that the-archiepiscopal church
Cantuariensem totam in utero haberet; eumque in lucem
of-Canterbury whole in the-womb she-had and-him into the-light
editum obstetrix in manibus tollens, ait, "Archiepiscopum
brought-forth the-midwife in hands lifting says an-archbishop
quendam a terra elevavi." Dum in cunis jaceret
certain from the-earth I-have-raised while in the-cradle lay
infantulus, una nocte visum est matri suæ, quod nutricem
the-little-infant one night seemed it-was to-mother his that the-nurse
ejus alloqueretur, questa quod ipse coopertorium non haberet;
his she-addressed complaining that he a-coverlet not had
cui nutrix, "Immo, domina, optimum habet." Cui illa,
to-whom the-nurse nay lady the-best he-has to-whom she
"Ostende mihi." Nutrix illud afferens et ostendens, et totum
show to-me the-nurse it bringing and showing and whole
explicare volens nec valens, ait, "Tantum est, quod non possum
to-unfold wishing nor able says so-great it-is that not I-can
in hoc thalamo totum evolvere." Cui mater, "Intra in
in this chamber whole to-unroll to-whom the-mother go-in into
aulam, et ibi explica." Nutrix hoc facere elaborans ait, "Sed
the-hall and there unfold the-nurse this to-do laboring says but
nec hic queo totum explicare." Mater mirata ait, "Exi a
not-even here can-I whole unfold the-mother wondering says go-out from
domo in plateam hanc fori modo vacantis; ibi nimirum
the-house into the-square this of-the-market now empty there surely
poteris." Sed nec ibi nutrix potuit, et dixit, "Tantum est
you-will-be-able but not-even there the-nurse could and said so-great is
coopertorium, quod finem ejus nequeo invenire; videtur operire
the-coverlet that the-end its I-cannot find it-seems to-cover
totam Angliam, explicationi ejus angustam, et ultra extenditur."
all England for-the-unfolding its narrow and beyond it-extends

Igitur Thomas natus est ex legitimo matrimonio et
therefore Thomas born was of lawful marriage and
honestis parentibus, patre Gileberto, qui et vicecomes
honorable parents with-father Gilbert who also sheriff
aliquando Londoniæ fuit, matre Mahalt; civibus Londoniæ
once of-London was with-mother Matilda citizens of-London
mediastinis, neque fœnerantibus neque officiose negotiantibus,
middling neither lending-at-interest nor busily trading
sed de reditibus suis honorifice viventibus.
but from revenues their honorably living
Quod patri suo fuerit aliquod indicium de eo divinitus
that to-father his was some sign about him divinely
revelatum, hinc scimus. Puerum eum pater in religiosa domo
revealed hence we-know the-boy him the-father in a-religious house
canonicorum Meritonæ priori Roberto aliquandiu nutriendum
of-canons of-Merton to-prior Robert for-a-while to-be-reared
commendaverat. Venit aliqua die pater filium videre;
had-entrusted came on-a-certain day the-father the-son to-see
introducto puero coram priore et patre, pater procidens
with-brought-in the-boy before the-prior and the-father the-father falling-down
pronus adoravit. Indignans prior ait illi, "Delire senex, quid
prone adored indignant the-prior says to-him mad old-man what
agis? procidis ad pedes filii tui? Quod honoris ei facis,
are-you-doing do-you-fall at the-feet of-son your what of-honor to-him you-do
tibi ille facere deberet." Cui pater in secreto ait, "Domine,
to-you he to-do ought to-whom the-father in secret says lord
scio quid faciam: erit iste puer magnus coram Domino."
I-know what I-am-doing will-be this boy great before the-Lord

De pueritia ejus.
about the-boyhood his

Annis igitur infantiæ, pueritiæ, et pubertatis simpliciter
with-the-years therefore of-infancy of-boyhood and of-puberty simply
domi paternæ et in scholis urbis decursis, Thomas
at-home paternal and in the-schools of-the-city run-through Thomas
adolescens factus studuit Parisius. Reversus, receptus
a-youth having-become studied at-Paris having-returned received
est in partem sollicitudinis rei publicæ Londoniensis,
he-was into a-part of-the-solicitude of-the-thing public of-London
et vicecomitum clericus et rationalis effectus; ubi laudabiliter
and of-the-sheriffs clerk and accountant made where praiseworthily
se habens, didicit prudentiam hujus sæculi, qua
himself conducting he-learned the-prudence of-this world by-which
postmodum cautior et prudentior probe noverat communia
afterward more-cautious and more-prudent well he-knew the-common
ecclesiæ Anglorum, et publica totius regni, egregie et
of-the-church of-the-English and public of-the-whole kingdom excellently and
magnifice tractare negotia, quemadmodum
magnificently to-handle affairs as

"Cervinam pellem postquam latravit in aula,
"The-deer hide after he-has-barked in the-hall,
Militat in sylvis catulus."
Serves in the-woods the-whelp."

Quomodo venit ad curiam Theobaldi archiepiscopi.
how he-came to the-court of-Theobald archbishop
Subinde prodeuntibus annis et meritis, adhæsit
thereupon with-advancing years and merits he-attached-himself
Theobaldo, bonæ memoriæ Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, per
to-Theobald of-good memory of-Canterbury archbishop through

duos fratres Bolonienses, Baldewinum archidiaconum et
two brothers of-Boulogne Baldwin archdeacon and
magistrum Eustachium, hospites plerumque patris ejus et
master Eustace guests generally of-father his and
familiares archiepiscopi, in ipsius notitiam introductus: et
familiars of-the-archbishop into his notice introduced and
eo familiarius, quod præfatus Gilebertus cum domino
by-that more-familiarly because the-aforesaid Gilbert with the-lord
archipræsule de propinquitate et genere loquebatur; ut ille
archprelate about kinship and family spoke as he
ortu Normannus, et circa Tierrici villam, de equestri ordine,
by-birth a-Norman and near of-Thierry the-town of equestrian rank
natu vicinus. Horum, inquam, et patris introductu,
by-birth a-neighbor of-these I-say and of-the-father by-the-introduction
archiepiscopus sui gregis scripsit Thomam; postea fortem
the-archbishop of-his flock enrolled Thomas afterward brave
expertus bonumque. Ad villam de Herges primum venit
having-found and-good at the-town of Harrow first he-came
ad curiam archiepiscopi, cum uno solo armigero, Radulpho
to the-court of-the-archbishop with one only squire Ralph
de Londonia.
of London
Ipsa nocte sequente visum est hospitæ suæ, quod
that-very on-the-night following seemed it-was to-hostess his that
super tectum ecclesiæ sederet ille, et totam vestimentis suis
on the-roof of-the-church sat he and whole with-garments his
dependentibus cooperuisset ecclesiam. In crastino somnium
hanging-down had-covered the-church on the-morrow the-dream
viro suo narravit illa; et interpretata est, quod alter
to-husband her told she and interpreted she-has that one

illorum juvenum (adhuc enim ignorabat uter esset Thomas)
of-those youths still for she-did-not-know which was Thomas
ecclesiæ illius villæ esset futurus dominus.
of-the-church of-that town would-be about-to-be the-lord
De nobilitate clericorum curiæ.
about the-nobility of-the-clerks of-the-court
In curia illa archiepiscopali magni et adprime literati clerici
in court that archiepiscopal great and exceedingly lettered clerks
erant; quorum plurimos ad episcopatus Angliæ, Rogerum
were of-whom very-many to bishoprics of-England Roger
vero de Ponte Episcopi ad archiepiscopatum Eboraci,
however of the-Bridge of-the-Bishop to the-archbishopric of-York
ipse archiepiscopus postea promovit. Horum respectu
he-himself the-archbishop afterward promoted of-these in-regard
Thomas minus litteratus erat; sed longe quidem altior est
Thomas less lettered was but far indeed higher is
ratio morum quam litterarum, et ipse studuit moralitati
the-reckoning of-morals than of-letters and he studied for-morality
et prudentiæ intendere, ut inter eos, litteris adhuc inferior,
and for-prudence to-attend so-that among them in-letters still inferior
moribus conspectior et acceptior appareret: postmodum
in-morals more-conspicuous and more-acceptable he-might-appear afterward
enim literatissimus fuit.
for most-lettered he-was
De persecutione Rogeri postea archiepiscopi.
about the-persecution of-Roger afterward archbishop
Rogerus ille, Thomæ successibus et favoris ejus primitiis
Roger that of-Thomas the-successes and of-favor his the-first-fruits
invidens, apud archiepiscopum bis obtinuit quod a
envying with the-archbishop twice obtained that from
curia jussus est semigrare. Thomas vero, rudis et
the-court ordered he-was to-depart Thomas however inexperienced and

pudoratus, et nullius sibi admissi conscius, utraque vice
modest and of-no for-himself fault conscious on-each occasion
refugium habuit apud fratrem archiepiscopi Walterum, tunc
refuge had with the-brother of-the-archbishop Walter then
archidiaconum Cantuariæ, postea episcopum Roffensem, qui
archdeacon of-Canterbury afterward bishop of-Rochester who
et in ipsa curia morabatur; et ejus interventu ad
also in that-very court stayed and his by-the-intervention to
gratiam archiepiscopi et pristinum locum est revocatus.
the-favor of-the-archbishop and former place he-was recalled
Intellecta mox ipsius industria, mittebat eum archiepiscopus
understood soon his industry sent him the-archbishop
aliquotiens Romam pro negotiis ecclesiæ Anglorum; ubi,
several-times to-Rome for the-affairs of-the-church of-the-English where
Domino favente, sapienter se gerens, in plurimam
with-the-Lord favoring wisely himself conducting into very-much
summorum pontificum et sanctæ ecclesiæ Romanæ gratiam
of-the-supreme pontiffs and of-the-holy church Roman favor
receptus est.
received he-was

De statura illius et moralitate.
about the-stature his and morality

Erat siquidem placido vultu et venusto, statura procerus,
he-was indeed of-placid face and handsome in-stature tall
naso eminentiore et parum inflexo, sensibus corporeis
with-nose rather-prominent and slightly bent in-senses bodily
vegetus, eloquio comptus, ingenio subtilis, animo magnus,
vigorous in-speech polished in-wit subtle in-mind great
virtutum iter jam altius ingrediens, omnibus amabilem
of-virtues the-way already higher entering to-all lovable
se exhibens, oppressis et pauperibus compatiens,
himself showing with-the-oppressed and the-poor sympathizing

elatis resistens, sociorum intendens promotioni, [non ficte,
the-proud resisting of-comrades attending to-the-promotion not feignedly
sed officiose,] bonorum omnium venerationi; munificus et
but dutifully of-good-men all for-the-veneration munificent and
facetus, fallere vel falli præcavens, statim prudens
witty to-deceive or to-be-deceived guarding-against at-once prudent
hujus sæculi filius, lucis futurus.
of-this world son of-light about-to-be
Qualiter primum crevit in reditibus.
how first he-grew in revenues
Primum reditum habuit de dono Johannis Wigorniensis
the-first revenue he-had from the-gift of-John of-Worcester
episcopi, ecclesiam videlicet beatæ Mariæ Littoream.
bishop the-church namely of-blessed Mary on-the-Strand
Postmodum, de donatione archiepiscopi, ecclesiam de
afterward from the-donation of-the-archbishop the-church of
Ottefordia. Postea habuit præbendam Londoniæ in ecclesia
Otford afterward he-had a-prebend of-London in the-church
Sancti Pauli, et aliam Lincoliæ. Tunc, impetrato a domino
of-Saint Paul and another of-Lincoln then with-obtained from lord
suo archiepiscopo transfretandi licentia, per annum studuit
his the-archbishop of-crossing-the-sea license for a-year he-studied
in legibus Bononiæ, postea Autissiodori. Processu temporis
in laws at-Bologna afterward at-Auxerre with-the-progress of-time
et meritorum ejus, ordinavit eum archiepiscopus diaconum,
and of-merits his ordained him the-archbishop deacon
et fecit Cantuariensis ecclesiæ archidiaconum: post episcopos
and made of-the-Canterbury church archdeacon after the-bishops
et abbates, in ecclesia Anglorum hic primus et dignior
and abbots in the-church of-the-English this first and worthier
est personatus, et ei valebat centum libras argenti.
is dignity and to-him it-was-worth a-hundred pounds of-silver

Qualiter factus est cancellarius.

how made he-was chancellor

Consecrato igitur per manum ejusdem archiepiscopi secundo

with-consecrated therefore by the-hand of-the-same archbishop second

Henrico rege Anglorum, commendatione et obtentu

Henry king of-the-English by-the-recommendation and request

archiepiscopi, et hortatu actuque nobilis Henrici

of-the-archbishop and by-the-exhortation and-action of-the-noble Henry

Wintoniensis episcopi, regis factus est Thomas cancellarius,

of-Winchester bishop of-the-king made was Thomas chancellor

quasi omnibus aliis præelectus: vir industrius, animo

as-if before-all others chosen a-man industrious in-mind

magna volvens, multarumque et magnarum rerum experiens;

great-things revolving and-of-many and great things experienced

cujus obsequii et honoris vices ita operosus exsolvit ad

of-whose service and honor the-duties so laboriously he-discharged to

Dei laudem et totius regni utilitatem, ut in incerto

of-God the-praise and of-the-whole kingdom the-utility that in uncertainty

sit, nobilior, magnificentior, et regi utilior fuerit in

it-be nobler more-magnificent and to-the-king more-useful he-was in

pacis an in bellicis negotiis.

of-peace or in warlike affairs

Cancellarii Angliæ dignitas est, ut secundus a rege in

of-the-chancellor of-England the-dignity is that second after the-king in

regno habeatur; ut altera parte sigilli regii, quod

the-kingdom he-be-held that with-the-other part of-the-seal royal which

et ad ejus pertinet custodiam, propria signet mandata;

also to his belongs custody his-own he-seal mandates

ut capella regis in ipsius sit dispositione et cura; ut

that the-chapel of-the-king in his be disposition and care that

vacantes archiepiscopatus, episcopatus, abbatias et baronias,

the-vacant archbishoprics bishoprics abbacies and baronies

cadentes in manu regis, ipse suscipiat et conservet; ut
falling into the-hand of-the-king he-himself take-up and keep that
omnibus regis assit conciliis, et etiam non vocatus
at-all of-the-king he-be-present councils and even not called
se ingerat; ut omnia sigilliferi regii, clerici sui, manu
himself he-thrust that all-things of-the-seal-bearer royal the-clerk his by-the-hand
signentur, omnia cancellarii consilio disponantur: item
be-sealed all-things of-the-chancellor by-the-counsel be-disposed likewise
ut, suffragantibus ei per Dei gratiam vitæ meritis, non
that with-supporting him through of-God the-grace of-life the-merits not
moriatur nisi archiepiscopus aut episcopus, si voluerit.
he-die unless archbishop or bishop if he-shall-have-wished
Inde est quod cancellaria emenda non est.
hence it-is that the-chancellorship to-be-bought not is

THE CHANCELLOR'S HOUSEHOLD

With the chancellor's counsel England is set at peace, the Flemings expelled, and the palace in London rebuilt between Easter and Pentecost. His table is open to all who come to court, his hall strewn daily with fresh straw or rushes; he punishes a clerk who seduced a friend's wife, rears the sons of nobles and the king's own heir, receives homage, crosses with ships of his own, gives freely, and in secret takes the discipline. He urges the king to fill vacant sees.

De pace reddita Angliæ, ejectis Flandrensibus.
about peace restored to-England with-expelled the-Flemings
Et cum tempore regis Stephani regnum Angliæ profanis
and when in-the-time of-king Stephen the-kingdom of-England with-impious
decertatum odiis guerræ tempestas involvisset, bellica undique
contested hatreds of-war the-storm had-enveloped warlike on-all-sides
clades desævisset; in unaquaque fere tertia villa speluncæ
disaster had-raged in every nearly third town dens

latronum, hostilia videlicet castra, firmata essent; exhæredatique
of-robbers hostile namely castles fortified had-been and-disinherited
fuissent nobiles indigenæ, et alienigenæ Flandrenses et
had-been nobles native and foreigners Flemings and
marticolæ viri Cantiam et plurimam regni partem
Mars-worshiping men Kent and the-greatest of-the-kingdom part
occupassent; cumque diuturnitate guerræ fere vicennalis ita
had-occupied and-when by-the-length of-war nearly twenty-year so
turbata essent omnia, ut impossibile videretur Flandrenses
disturbed were all-things that impossible it-seemed the-Flemings
ejici, et regnum in statum pristinum et antiquam
to-be-expelled and the-kingdom into state former and ancient
dignitatem et pacem reformari, maxime novo rege
dignity and peace to-be-restored especially with-new king
adolescente: miseratione Dei, consilio cancellarii, et
youthful by-the-mercy of-God by-the-counsel of-the-chancellor and
cleri et baronum regni, qui pacis bonum volebant,
of-the-clergy and of-the-barons of-the-kingdom who of-peace the-good wished
infra tres primos menses coronationis regis, Willelmus de
within three first months of-the-coronation of-the-king William of
Ipra, violentus incubator Cantiæ, cum lacrymis emigravit;
Ypres violent squatter of-Kent with tears emigrated
Flandrenses omnes, collectis impedimentis et armis, ad
the-Flemings all with-gathered baggage and arms to
mare tendunt; castella omnia per Angliam corruunt, præter
the-sea head the-castles all through England fall except
antiquas pacis conservandæ turres et oppida; corona Angliæ,
ancient of-peace to-be-kept towers and towns the-crown of-England
revocatis defectionibus, redintegratur; exhæredatis jura
with-recalled defections is-restored to-the-disinherited the-rights
paterna restituuntur; de sylvarum latibulis ad villas
paternal are-restored from of-the-woods the-lurking-places to the-towns

prodeunt latrones, et communi gaudentes pace teneri,
come-forth robbers and in-the-common rejoicing peace to-be-held
conflant gladios in vomeres, lanceas in falces. Territi a furcis
they-forge swords into plowshares lances into sickles terrified by the-gallows
fures similiter agriculturæ, aliarumve artium mechanicarum,
thieves likewise of-agriculture or-of-other arts mechanical
fiunt exercitatores. Pax ubique est; clypei importantur, caulæ
become practitioners peace everywhere is shields are-carried-in sheepfolds
exportantur: exeunt securi ab urbibus et castris ad nundinas
are-carried-out go-out secure from cities and castles to the-fairs
negotiatores, ad creditores repetendos Judæi.
merchants to creditors to-be-claimed Jews
Hujus cancellarii industria et consilio, annitentibus ordinatis
of-this chancellor by-the-industry and counsel with-striving the-ordained
Dei, et comitibus et baronibus, nobile illud regnum Angliæ,
of-God and the-earls and barons noble that kingdom of-England
tanquam ver novum, renovatur, ecclesia sancta honoratur;
as-if spring new is-renewed the-church holy is-honored
vacans episcopatus vel abbatia honestæ personæ sine
a-vacant bishopric or abbey to-an-honorable person without
simonia donatur; rex, favente Rege regum, in omnibus
simony is-given the-king with-favoring the-King of-kings in all
negotiis suis prosperatur; Angliæ regnum ditatur, pleno
affairs his prospers of-England the-kingdom is-enriched with-full
replet illud copia cornu: colles culti sunt; valles abundant
fills it plenty horn the-hills cultivated are the-valleys abound
frumento, pascuæ pecoribus, ovilia quoque balantibus.
with-grain the-pastures with-cattle the-sheepfolds also with-bleating-ones
Cancellarius Thomas regni sedem, palatium Londoniæ,
the-chancellor Thomas of-the-kingdom the-seat the-palace of-London
prius fere ruinam, reparari facit; mira celeritate
formerly nearly ruin to-be-repaired makes with-wonderful speed

tantum opus perficiens intra quoddam pascha et pentecosten,
so-great a-work completing between a-certain Easter and Pentecost
tot fabris lignariis et aliis operariis tantæ
so-many with-craftsmen wood-working and other workmen with-so-great
instantiæ motu et sonitu operantibus, ut vix alter
of-urgency with-motion and noise working that scarcely one
alterum proxime admotum posset audire loquentem.
another very-near brought could to-hear speaking
Cancellarii summus erat in clero, militia, et populo
of-the-chancellor highest was in the-clergy the-knighthood and the-people
regni, favor. Omnes vacantes parochianas ecclesias villarum
of-the-kingdom the-favor all vacant parish churches of-towns
et castrorum posset habere; nullus enim ei advocatus negare
and castles he-could to-have no-one for to-him patron to-deny
auderet, si rogare vellet: tanta tamen animi magnitudine
would-dare if to-ask he-wished with-so-great nevertheless of-mind greatness
vicit ambitionem, ut pauperibus sacerdotibus et clericis
he-conquered ambition that for-poor priests and clerks
perquirendi ecclesias illas locum tollere præoccupando
of-acquiring churches those the-room to-take-away by-forestalling
dedignaretur. Magnanimus magna potius perquirebat, scilicet
he-disdained the-magnanimous great-things rather sought namely
præposituram Beverlaci, et donationem præbendarum de
the-provostship of-Beverley and the-gift of-prebends of
Hastinges a comite Augensi; turrim Londoniarum cum
Hastings from the-count of-Eu the-Tower of-London with
servitio militum addictorum; castellariam Eye, cum honore
the-service of-knights assigned the-castellany of-Eye with the-honor
septies viginti militum; et castrum Berchamstedie.
seven-times twenty of-knights and the-castle of-Berkhamsted

Ludebat plerumque, sed perfunctorie, non dedita opera, in
he-played generally but perfunctorily not with-devoted effort with
avibus cæli, nisis et accipitribus suis, et canibus
birds of-the-sky with-sparrowhawks and hawks his and dogs
venaticis, et in calculis bicoloribus
hunting and at counters two-colored

"Insidiosorum ludebat bella latronum."
"Of-insidious he-played the-wars robbers."

De honore et mensa domus cancellarii.
about the-honor and table of-the-house of-the-chancellor
Cancellarii domus et mensa communis erat omnibus
of-the-chancellor the-house and table common was to-all
cujuscunque ordinis indigentibus ad curiam regis
of-whatever rank in-need to the-court of-the-king
venientibus, qui probi vel essent, vel esse viderentur. Nulla
coming who honest either were or to-be seemed no
fere die comedebat absque comitibus et baronibus, quos
nearly day did-he-eat without earls and barons whom
ipsemet invitabat. Jusserat quaque die, novo stramine vel
he-himself invited he-had-ordered each day with-new straw or
fœno in hieme, novis scirpis vel frondibus virentibus in æstate,
hay in winter with-new rushes or boughs green in summer
sterni hospitium suum, ut militum multitudinem, quam
to-be-strewn lodging his that of-knights the-multitude which
scamna capere non poterant, area munda et læta reciperet;
the-benches to-hold not could the-floor clean and glad might-receive
ne vestes eorum pretiosæ, vel pulchræ eorum camisiæ, ex
lest the-garments their precious or fine their shirts from
areæ sorde maculam contraherent. Vasis aureis et argenteis
of-the-floor the-dirt a-stain contract with-vessels golden and silver

domus ejus renidebat, ferculis et potibus pretiosis abundabat;
the-house his gleamed with-dishes and drinks precious it-abounded
ut siqua esculenta vel poculenta commendaret raritas,
so-that if-any edible or drinkable-things commended rarity
emptores ejus nulla eorum comparandorum repellere deberet
the-buyers his no of-them to-be-procured to-repel ought
caritas. Summe tamen sobrius erat in his, ut de divite
the-dearness supremely nevertheless sober he-was in these-things that from rich
mensa dives colligeretur eleemosyna. Et (quod a confessionis
table rich was-gathered alms and what from of-confession
ejus auditore, Roberto, venerabili canonico de Meritona,
his the-hearer Robert venerable canon of Merton
audivi), ex quo cancellarius factus est, nulla eum polluit
I-heard from when chancellor made he-was no him polluted
luxuria. Super quo et rex ipse diurnas ei et nocturnas
lust over which also the-king himself by-day for-him and by-night
tendebat insidias; sed tanquam vir timoratus et a Deo
laid snares but as a-man God-fearing and by God
prædestinatus, munditiæ carnis intendens, lumbos præcinctos
predestined to-the-cleanness of-the-flesh attending the-loins girded
habebat. Et quidem vir sapiens, regni moderamini
he-had and indeed a-man wise of-the-kingdom to-the-government
et tantarum curarum publicarum et privatarum intentus
and of-so-great cares public and private intent
occupationi, rarius illecebris talibus attentabatur. Quoniam,
on-the-occupation more-rarely by-allurements such was-tempted since

"Otia si tollas, periere Cupidinis arcus."
"Leisures if you-take-away, have-perished of-Cupid the-bows."

Vir pudicus cancellarius, osor turpitudinis et impudicitiæ,
a-man chaste the-chancellor hater of-baseness and of-unchastity
quendam clericum suum magnæ prosapiæ, Ricardum de Ambli,
a-certain clerk his of-great lineage Richard of Ambli
pro eo quod cujusdam socii sui, dum longinquo aberat
for that that of-a-certain comrade his while far he-was-absent
in transmarinis, uxorem seduxerat et accubuerat, facta
in overseas-parts the-wife he-had-seduced and lain-with with-made
ei persuasione quod vir ejus in fata concessisset,
to-her the-persuasion that husband her into the-fates had-yielded
a domo et amicitia sua projecit; et in turri Londoniæ
from house and friendship his he-cast and in the-Tower of-London
incarceratum, et in compedibus diu afflictum, teneri fecit.
imprisoned and in fetters long afflicted to-be-held he-made
Qualiter nutriebat filios nobilium.
how he-reared the-sons of-nobles
Cancellario et regni Angliæ et regnorum vicinorum
to-the-chancellor both of-the-kingdom of-England and of-kingdoms neighboring
magnates liberos suos servituros mittebant, quos ipse
the-magnates children their about-to-serve sent whom he
honesta nutritura et doctrina instituit, et cingulo donatos
with-honorable rearing and teaching instructed and with-the-belt presented
militiæ ad patres et propinquos cum honore remittebat
of-knighthood to fathers and kinsmen with honor sent-back
aliquos, aliquos retinebat. Rex ipse, dominus suus, filium
some some he-retained the-king himself lord his son
suum, hæredem regni, ei nutriendum commendavit;
his the-heir of-the-kingdom to-him to-be-reared entrusted
quem ipse cum coætaneis sibi multis filiis nobilium, et
whom he with coevals to-him many sons of-nobles and

debita eorum omnium sequela, et magistris, et servitoribus
the-due of-them all retinue and masters and servants
propriis, quo dignum erat honore, secum habuit.
own with-which worthy it-was honor with-himself he-had
In qua tamen tantorum sæcularium honorum pompa ipse
in which nevertheless of-so-great secular honors pomp he-himself
sæpe disciplinam secretam, nudato ad flagella dorso, recipiebat;
often discipline secret with-bared for the-scourges back received
cum erat in vicinia Londoniæ, a Radulpho priore Sanctæ
when he-was in the-vicinity of-London from Ralph prior of-Holy
Trinitatis; in vicinia Cantuariæ, a Thoma presbytero Sancti
Trinity in the-vicinity of-Canterbury from Thomas priest of-Saint
Martini. Humilis erat in oculis suis; humilis erat humilibus,
Martin humble he-was in eyes his humble he-was to-the-humble
elatis ferus et violens; quasi innatum erat ei,
to-the-proud fierce and violent as-if inborn it-was to-him

"Parcere subjectis, et debellare superbos."
"To-spare the-subjected, and to-war-down the-proud."

Cancellario homagium infiniti nobiles et milites faciebant;
to-the-chancellor homage countless nobles and knights did
quos ipse, salva fide domini regis, recipiebat, et ut
whom he with-saved faith of-the-lord king received and as
homines suos patrocinio eos ulteriore fovebat.
men his with-patronage them further cherished
Transfretaturus interdum sex aut plures naves in sua habebat
about-to-cross-the-sea sometimes six or more ships in his he-had
velificatione, nullumque, qui transfretare vellet, remanere
sailing and-no-one who to-cross wished to-remain
sinebat; appulsus gubernatores suos et nautas ad placitum
he-allowed having-landed helmsmen his and sailors at pleasure

eorum remunerabat. Nulla fere dies effluebat ei, qua
their he-rewarded no nearly day flowed-by for-him on-which
non ipse aliqua magna largiretur donaria, equos, aves,
not he-himself some great bestowed gifts horses birds
vestimenta, auream vel argenteam supellectilem, vel monetam.
garments golden or silver furniture or coin
Sic nimirum scriptum est, "Quidam erogant propria, et
so surely written it-is some pay-out their-own-things and
semper abundant; alii rapiunt aliena,
always abound others snatch others'-things

Et curtæ semper abest rei:"
And to-a-scanty always is-lacking thing:"

tantamque habebat cancellarius donandi gratiam, ut amor
and-so-great had the-chancellor of-giving grace that the-love
et deliciæ totius orbis Latini reputaretur. Ut cuique erat
and delight of-the-whole world Latin he-was-reckoned as to-each was
ætas, ita quemque facetus adoptabat.
age so each courteous he-adopted
Dei omnipotentis instinctu, Thomæ cancellarii suasu,
of-God almighty by-the-instinct of-Thomas the-chancellor by-the-persuasion
dominus rex vacantes episcopatus et abbatias non diu
the-lord king vacant bishoprics and abbeys not long
retinebat, ut fisco suo patrimonia Crucifixi inferrentur;
retained that to-treasury his the-patrimonies of-the-Crucified be-brought
(quod postea fecit, sed amplius absit ab eo;) immo sine
which afterward he-did but further far-be-it from him nay without
magna mora honestis illas dabat personis, et secundum Deum.
great delay to-honorable them he-gave persons and according-to God

The king takes Merton under his favor, recalls good Englishmen living in Gaul, and plays with his chancellor like a boy, once pulling his new cloak from his back in the street to give a beggar. The kings of France and England visit him sick at Rouen, where the prior of Leicester tells him the court says he will be archbishop and he answers that he would then lose the king's favor or put God's service second, as afterward happened. He builds the king three ships, receives the Norwegian envoys, saves two archdeacons' houses, and shields the bishop of Le Mans from the king's anger over Pope Alexander.

Item cancellarii consilio dominus rex canonicalem ecclesiam
likewise of-the-chancellor by-the-counsel the-lord king the-canonical church
Meritonæ, ubi morantes Deum merentur, in gratiam et
of-Merton where those-dwelling God deserve into favor and
familiaritatem recepit; et eam a presbyterio et crucibus factis
familiarity received and it from the-presbytery and the-crossings made
susceptam sumptibus suis consummavit, et perpetuis ditavit
undertaken at-expenses his completed and with-perpetual enriched
reditibus; ibique aliquando, cum religioso conventu, pœnitentiæ
revenues and-there sometimes with the-religious convent of-penance
triduanas ante diem paschæ celebrabat excubias. Post nocturnum
three-day before the-day of-Easter he-kept vigils after the-nocturnal
vero obsequium, quod dicitur tenebrarum, sed est lucis,
however service which is-called of-darkness but is of-light
die parascevæ usque ad horam nonam, vicinarum villarum
on-the-day of-preparation up-to to the-hour ninth of-the-neighboring towns
pauperes, orationum gratia, visitabat ecclesias, pedes incedens,
the-poor of-prayers for-the-sake he-visited the-churches on-foot going
in capa absconditus, uno solo comitatus socio, viarum duce.
in a-cope hidden by-one only accompanied companion of-the-ways guide

Amplius, cancellario Thoma suggerente, pauperes Angligenas
further with-the-chancellor Thomas suggesting the-poor English
morantes in Galliis, quos fama celebrabat bonos, vel monachum
dwelling in the-Gauls whom fame celebrated as-good either a-monk
in religione, vel magistrum in studio, rex revocabat, et tales
in religion or a-master in study the-king recalled and such
in regno suo plantabat personas; ut magistrum Robertum
in kingdom his planted persons as master Robert
de Meliduno in episcopali ecclesia Herefordiæ, et Willelmum
of Melun in the-episcopal church of-Hereford and William
monachum Sancti Martini de Campis in abbatia Rameseiæ.
monk of-Saint Martin of the-Fields in the-abbey of-Ramsey
Ita ob ipsius dotes virtutum, animi magnitudinem,
so on-account-of his gifts of-virtues of-mind the-greatness
meritorum insignia, quæ animo ejus inhæserant, cancellarius
of-merits the-marks which in-the-mind his had-clung the-chancellor
regi, clero, militiæ, et populo erat acceptissimus.
to-the-king to-the-clergy to-the-knighthood and to-the-people was most-acceptable
Pertractatis seriis, colludebant rex et ipse, tanquam
with-finished serious-matters they-played-together the-king and he as-if
coætanei pueruli, in aula, in ecclesia, in consessu, in equitando.
coeval little-boys in the-hall in church in session in riding
Una dierum coequitabant in strata Londoniæ; stridebat
one of-the-days they-were-riding-together in the-street of-London was-shrieking
deformis hyems; eminus aspexit rex venientem senem,
hideous winter from-afar saw the-king coming an-old-man
pauperem, veste trita et tenui; et ait cancellario, "Videsne
poor in-garment worn and thin and says to-the-chancellor do-you-see
illum?" Cancellarius, "Video;" Rex, "Quam pauper, quam
that-one the-chancellor I-see the-king how poor how
debilis, quam nudus! Numquidne magna esset eleemosyna
weak how naked would-it-not great be alms

dare ei crassam et calidam capam?" Cancellarius, "Ingens
to-give to-him a-thick and warm cloak the-chancellor huge
equidem; et ad hujusmodi animum et oculum, rex,
indeed and to of-this-kind mind and eye king
habere deberes." Interea pauper adest; rex substitit, et
to-have you-ought meanwhile the-poor-man is-present the-king stopped and
cancellarius cum eo. Rex placide compellat pauperem, et
the-chancellor with him the-king placidly addresses the-poor-man and
quærit si capam bonam vellet habere. Pauper, nesciens
asks if a-cloak good he-would-wish to-have the-poor-man not-knowing
illos esse, putabat jocum, non seria agi. Rex
them to-be thought a-joke not serious-things to-be-done the-king
cancellario, "Equidem tu hanc ingentem habebis eleemosynam;"
to-the-chancellor indeed you this great will-have alms
et injectis ad capucium ejus manibus, capam, quam novam
and with-thrown on the-hood his hands the-cloak which new
et optimam de scarleta et grysio indutus erat, rex
and best of scarlet and gris clothed-in was the-king
cancellario auferre, ille retinere, laborabat. Fit igitur
from-the-chancellor to-take-away he to-keep labored there-is-made therefore
ibi motus et tumultus magnus: divites et milites, qui eos
there a-commotion and tumult great the-rich and knights who them
sequebantur, mirati accelerant scire quænam esset tam subita
followed amazed hasten to-know what was so sudden
inter eos causa concertandi; non fuit qui diceret; intentus
between them a-cause of-contending not there-was one-who might-say intent
erat uterque manibus suis, ut aliquando quasi casuri
was each on-hands his so-that sometimes as-if about-to-fall
viderentur. Aliquandiu reluctatus cancellarius, sustinuit regem
they-seemed for-a-while having-resisted the-chancellor allowed the-king
vincere, capam sibi inclinato detrahere, et pauperi
to-win the-cloak from-himself bowed to-pull-off and to-the-poor-man

donare. Tunc primum rex sociis suis acta narrat;
to-give then first the-king to-the-companions his the-acts tells
risus omnium ingens; fuerunt qui cancellario capas et
the-laughter of-all huge there-were those-who to-the-chancellor cloaks and
pallia sua porrigerent. Cum capa cancellarii pauper senex
mantles their held-out with the-cloak of-the-chancellor the-poor old-man
abit, præter spem locupletatus et lætus, Deo gratias agens.
goes-away beyond hope enriched and glad to-God thanks giving
Aliquotiensque ad hospitium cancellarii rex comedebat, tum
and-several-times at the-lodging of-the-chancellor the-king ate both
ludendi causa, tum gratia videndi quæ de ejus domo
of-playing for-the-sake and for-the-sake of-seeing the-things-which about his house
et mensa narrabantur. Rex veniebat aliquando equo admisso
and table were-told the-king came sometimes with-horse let-go
in hospitium cancellarii sedentis ad mensam; aliquando
into the-lodging of-the-chancellor sitting at table sometimes
sagitta in manu, rediens venatu, vel iturus in nemus;
an-arrow in hand returning from-hunting or about-to-go into the-wood
aliquando bibebat et viso cancellario recedebat; aliquando
sometimes he-drank and with-seen the-chancellor withdrew sometimes
saliens ultra mensam, assidebat et comedebat. Magis unanimes
leaping over the-table he-sat-down and ate more of-one-mind
et amici nunquam duo aliqui fuerunt temporibus Christianis.
and friends never two any were in-times Christian
Fuit aliquando gravi tentus infirmitate cancellarius Rothomagi
was once by-grave held infirmity the-chancellor at-Rouen
apud Sanctum Gervasium. Venerunt eum duo reges simul
at Saint Gervais came him two kings together
videre, rex Francorum, et rex Anglorum, dominus suus.
to-see the-king of-the-French and the-king of-the-English lord his
Tandem dispositus ad sanitatem, et convalescens, una dierum
at-length disposed toward health and convalescing one of-the-days

sedit ad ludum scaccorum, indutus capa manicata. Intravit
he-sat at the-game of-chess clothed-in a-cope sleeved entered
eum visitare Aschetinus, prior Legecestriæ; veniens a curia
him to-visit Aschetinus prior of-Leicester coming from the-court
regis, qui tunc erat in Gasconia; qui liberius eum allocutus,
of-the-king who then was in Gascony who more-freely him having-addressed
ausu familiaritatis, ait, "Quid est hoc quod capa manicata
with-the-daring of-familiarity says what is this that a-cope sleeved
utimini? Hæc vestis magis illorum est qui accipitres portant;
you-use this garment more of-those is who hawks carry
vos vero estis persona ecclesiastica, una singularitate sed
you however are a-person ecclesiastical one in-singularity but
plures dignitate; Cantuariæ archidiaconus, decanus Hastingiæ,
several in-dignity of-Canterbury archdeacon dean of-Hastings
præpositus Beverlaci, canonicus ibi et ibi, procurator etiam
provost of-Beverley canon here and there procurator also
archiepiscopatus; et, sicut rumor in curia frequens est,
of-the-archbishopric and as rumor in the-court frequent is
archiepiscopus eritis." Cancellarius respondit inter cætera ad
archbishop you-will-be the-chancellor answered among other-things to
verbum illud, "Equidem tres tales pauperes agnosco in Anglia
word that indeed three such poor I-know in England
sacerdotes, quorum cujuslibet ad archiepiscopatum promotionem
priests of-whom of-any to the-archbishopric the-promotion
magis optarem quam meam; nam ego, si forte promoverer,
more I-would-wish than mine for I if perhaps I-were-promoted
ita dominum meum regem 'intus et in cute novi,' necesse
so lord my king within and in the-skin I-know necessity
haberem, aut ipsius gratiam amittere, aut Domini Dei (quod
I-would-have either his favor to-lose or of-the-Lord God which
absit!) servitium postponere." Quod et post ita contigit.
far-be-it the-service to-put-after which also afterward so happened

Rex Angliæ ad suam transfretationem navem propriam solet
the-king of-England for his crossing a-ship own is-wont
habere. Cancellarius ei fieri fecit non unam solam, sed
to-have the-chancellor for-him to-be-made made not one only but
tres simul naves optimas, et omnibus necessariis instructas,
three together ships best and with-all necessaries equipped
ut nihil deesset; et eas regi domino suo dono dedit.
that nothing be-lacking and them to-the-king lord his as-a-gift gave
Venerunt aliquando in Angliam nuncii regis Norwegiæ;
came once into England envoys of-the-king of-Norway
quo audito, cancellarius misit obviam eis, qui eos ad
with-which heard the-chancellor sent to-meet them one-who them to
curiam domini regis duceret, et eis sumptus necessarios
the-court of-the-lord king should-lead and to-them the-expenses necessary
nomine cancellarii ministraret.
in-the-name of-the-chancellor should-supply
Nicolaus archidiaconus Londoniæ incidit semel in offensam
Nicholas archdeacon of-London fell once into the-displeasure
regis, unde domus ejus, familia ipsius expulsa, ex
of-the-king whence the-house his with-the-household his expelled from
regis præcepto serata et regi subhastata fuit. Non destitit
of-the-king the-command locked and to-the-king auctioned was not ceased
bonus cancellarius, quin ipsa die archidiaconum regi
the-good chancellor but-that on-that-very day the-archdeacon to-the-king
reconciliaret, et ad possessionem suam revocari impetraret.
he-reconciled and to possession his to-be-recalled obtained
Eodemque modo officiosus fuit quandoque episcopo
and-in-the-same way obliging he-was once to-the-bishop
Cenomannensi et Giloni archidiacono Rothomagensi. Nam
of-Le-Mans and to-Giles archdeacon of-Rouen for
cum in schismate Romanæ ecclesiæ hinc Octavianus et
when in the-schism of-the-Roman church on-this-side Octavian and

imperator Fredericus qui eum fovebat, inde catholicus papa
the-emperor Frederick who him fostered on-that-side the-catholic pope
Alexander, cum suis cardinalibus et sequacibus, nuncios suos
Alexander with his cardinals and followers envoys their
misissent ad regem Francorum, et regem Anglorum tunc
had-sent to the-king of-the-French and the-king of-the-English then
transmarinum; illi autem, convocatis episcopis plurimis et
overseas they however with-convoked bishops very-many and
summatibus regnorum suorum, apud Novum Forum congregati
the-chief-men of-kingdoms their at New Market assembled
essent, nuncios illos et rationes eorum audituri, et de
had-been the-envoys those and the-reasons their about-to-hear and about
merito electionis eorum, utrius obedientiæ se
the-merit of-the-election their of-which-of-the-two to-the-obedience themselves
subderent, tractaturi, placuissetque tandem eis Alexandri,
they-should-subject about-to-treat and-it-had-pleased at-length them of-Alexander
quæ justior eis et sanctior non immerito visa est: pro eo
which juster to-them and holier not undeservedly seemed has for that
quod archiepiscopus Rothomagensis Hugo eam approbavit, et
that the-archbishop of-Rouen Hugh it approved and
per Gilonem, nepotem et archidiaconum suum, suffraganeis
through Giles nephew and archdeacon his to-the-suffragans
suis recipiendam mandavit, rex vehementer commotus,
his to-be-received ordered the-king vehemently stirred
domos archidiaconi dirui præcepit, quoniam in ipsum
the-houses of-the-archdeacon to-be-demolished ordered since against himself
archiepiscopum grandævum, et virum magnanimum palam
the-archbishop aged and a-man great-minded openly
excandescere rex veritus est. Tunc domino regi supplex
to-blaze-up the-king feared has then to-the-lord king suppliant
ait cancellarius, "Domine mi rex, equidem domus illa, quam
says the-chancellor lord my king indeed house that which

ruere præcipitis, archidiaconi Gilonis est; sed hospitium
to-fall you-order of-the-archdeacon Giles is but lodging
meum est." Et hujusmodi dixit apposite ad persuadendum,
my it-is and of-this-kind he-said aptly for persuading
ut tandem a rege delinito et suaso archidiaconi pacem
that at-length from the-king soothed and persuaded of-the-archdeacon peace
cum domus ipsius integritate obtineret.
with of-the-house his the-integrity he-obtained
In crastino audivit rex quod episcopus Cenomannensis
on the-morrow heard the-king that the-bishop of-Le-Mans
Alexandrum papam recepisset exemplo domini Rothomagensis,
Alexander pope had-received by-the-example of-the-lord of-Rouen
et nunciis ejus obedientiam promisisset papæ servandam.
and to-the-envoys his obedience had-promised to-the-pope to-be-kept
Rex iratus est, quod ejus sine jussu et licentia et sententia
the-king grew-angry has that his without order and license and sentence
hoc fecisset. Marescalli regis, commotione ejus vel forte
this he-had-done the-marshals of-the-king with-the-agitation his or perhaps
præceptione intellecta, ad episcopi hospitia vadunt, camis
command understood to of-the-bishop the-lodgings go with-the-tethers
succisis equos ejiciunt, sarcinas episcopi in vicos exportant,
cut the-horses they-cast-out the-baggage of-the-bishop into the-streets they-carry-out
eum hospitio privant. A curia episcopus turpiter recedere
him of-lodging they-deprive from the-court the-bishop shamefully to-withdraw
compulsus est. Facit rex breves scribi, ut domus ejus
compelled was makes the-king writs to-be-written that the-houses his
Cenomanni diruantur. Signatos breves rex in manu tenens, et
at-Le-Mans be-demolished the-sealed writs the-king in hand holding and
ostendens publice, ait astantibus, "Equidem Cenomannenses
showing publicly says to-those-standing-by indeed the-men-of-Le-Mans
audient de episcopo suo rumorem." Omnis clerus, qui aderat
will-hear about bishop their news all the-clergy who were-present

in tanta duorum regum curia, doluit; cancellarius supra omnes.
in so-great of-two kings court grieved the-chancellor above all
Intelligens autem regem in tanta ira frustra compellandum
understanding however the-king in so-great anger in-vain to-be-addressed
et rogandum, præcepit cursoribus regis, bajulis literarum
and to-be-entreated ordered the-couriers of-the-king the-bearers of-letters
illarum, ut non festinarent, et, cum itinere duorum
those that not they-should-hurry and though in-a-journey of-two
dierum Cenomannis venire possent, non illuc venirent, nisi
days to-Le-Mans to-come they-could not thither they-should-come except
quarto die. Adquieverunt illi. In crastino ad dominum regem
on-the-fourth day acquiesced they on the-morrow to the-lord king
episcopos ire suasit cancellarius pro episcopo Cenomannensi
the-bishops to-go persuaded the-chancellor for the-bishop of-Le-Mans
rogaturos. Ierunt aliqui, regem inexorabilem invenerunt: ierunt
about-to-entreat went some the-king inexorable found went
alii, suggerente cancellario; repulsam passi sunt. Tandem
others with-suggesting the-chancellor repulse suffered have at-length
cancellarius ipse regem adiit, pro episcopo oravit; in crastino
the-chancellor himself the-king approached for the-bishop prayed on the-morrow
similiter. Instantia cancellarii rex compulsus tandem
likewise by-the-insistence of-the-chancellor the-king compelled at-length
adquievit; putans jam quod domus episcopi vel tota vel magna
acquiesced thinking now that the-house of-the-bishop either wholly or great
ex parte corruisset. Statim litteras regis de pace episcopi
from part had-fallen at-once the-letters of-the-king about the-peace of-the-bishop
cancellarius misit præfecto Cenomanni per nuntium proprium,
the-chancellor sent to-the-prefect of-Le-Mans by messenger own
cui et in amicitiæ suæ observantia injunxit, ut die vel
to-whom also in of-friendship his the-observance he-enjoined that by-day or
nocte non quiesceret pes ejus, donec Cenomannum veniret.
by-night not should-rest foot his until to-Le-Mans he-came

Ille continuato diplomate Cenomannum venit, intactis adhuc
he with-continued diploma to-Le-Mans came with-untouched still
domibus episcopi, ipso die, quo priores nuntii domini
the-houses of-the-bishop on-that-very day on-which the-earlier messengers of-the-lord
regis; qui tamen prius venerant, et litteras regis de
king who nevertheless earlier had-come and the-letters of-the-king about
domibus episcopi diruendis ostenderant. Et hic quidem dolo
the-houses of-the-bishop to-be-demolished had-shown and this indeed by-fraud
bono cancellarii se delusum rex postea gavisus est; sicut
good of-the-chancellor himself deluded the-king afterward rejoiced has as
legitur in Thimeo de illa nubentium saluberrima sortis fraude.
is-read in the-Timaeus about that of-those-marrying most-salutary of-lot fraud

THE EMBASSY TO PARIS

The chancellor keeps fifty-two clerks. Sent to ask the king of France for his daughter Margaret for the young Henry, he travels in state: two hundred horsemen, eight wagons, two of them of ale, packhorses with plate and monkeys on their backs, and hounds and hawks. The king, meaning to keep him at his own cost, forbids Paris to sell to him, so his men buy at the markets nearby under changed names; he is generous to the French, the masters, and the scholars. The embassy succeeds, and on his way home he captures Guy de la Val, the English king's enemy, and imprisons him.

Quinquaginta duos clericos cancellarius in obsequio suo
fifty two clerks the-chancellor in service his
habebat; quorum plurimi in suo erant comitatu, plurimi
had of-whom very-many in his were retinue very-many
curabant episcopatus et abbatias vacantes, aut ejus proprios
had-charge-of bishoprics and abbeys vacant or his own
honores ecclesiasticos.
honors ecclesiastical

Deliberavit quandoque rex Anglorum cum cancellario, et
deliberated once the-king of-the-English with the-chancellor and
aliis quibusdam regni sui magnatibus, petere a rege
other certain of-kingdom his magnates to-ask from the-king
Francorum filiam ejus Margaretam matrimonio copulandam
of-the-French daughter his Margaret in-marriage to-be-joined
filio suo Henrico. Placuit consilium. Hæc siquidem regum
to-son his Henry pleased the-counsel this indeed of-kings
et magnorum virorum magna est confœderatio —
and of-great men great is the-alliance

"Hæc res et jungit, junctos quoque servat amicos."
"This thing both joins, joined also keeps friends."

Ad tantam petitionem tanto principi faciendam quis
for so-great a-petition to-so-great a-prince to-be-made who
mittendus erat, nisi cancellarius? Eligitur, assentitur. Igitur
to-be-sent was unless the-chancellor he-is-chosen he-assents therefore
cancellarius rem, personas, et officium suum attendens,
the-chancellor the-matter the-persons and office his regarding
et se tantæ rei commetiens, juxta illud poeticum,
and himself to-so-great a-matter measuring according-to that poetic

"Metire quod audes; nuptialiter se instruit,
"Measure what you-dare; for-the-wedding himself equips,
Qui nuptias mittitur conciliare futuras,"
He-who a-marriage is-sent to-arrange future,"

parat ostendere et effundere luxus Anglicani opulentiam;
prepares to-show and to-pour-out of-luxury English the-opulence
ut apud omnes et in omnibus honoretur persona mittentis
that among all and in all-things be-honored the-person of-the-sender

in misso, et missi sua in se. Circiter ducentos in equis
in the-sent and of-the-sent his in himself about two-hundred on horses
secum habuit de familia sua, milites, clericos, dapiferos,
with-himself he-had of household his knights clerks stewards
servientes, armigeros, nobilium filios militantes ei pro armis,
servants squires of-nobles sons serving him for arms
omnes instructos. Omnes isti et omnis eorum sequela novo
all equipped all these and all their retinue in-new
festivo fulgebant ornatu vestium, quisque pro modo
festive shone adornment of-garments each according-to manner
suo. Habuit etiam viginti quatuor mutatoria vestimentorum,
his he-had also twenty four changes of-garments

"Muricibus Tyriis iteratas vellera lanas,"
"With-murex Tyrian twice-dyed fleeces wools,"

plures vestes holosericas, omnia fere donanda et in
many garments all-silk all nearly to-be-given and in
transmarinis relinquenda, et omnem elegantiam varii, grysii,
overseas-parts to-be-left and all elegance of-vair of-gris
et pellium peregrinarum, palliorum quoque et tapetum,
and of-furs foreign of-mantles also and of-carpets
quibus thalamus et lectus episcopi hospitio recepti
with-which the-chamber and bed of-a-bishop with-hospitality received
ornabantur. Habuit secum canes, aves omne genus, quo reges
were-adorned he-had with-himself dogs birds every kind which kings
utuntur et divites. Habuit in comitatu suo octo bigas curules;
use and the-rich he-had in retinue his eight carts curule
unamquamque quinque equi trahebant, dextrariis corpore et
each five horses drew to-chargers in-body and
robore similes: quisque equus suum sibi deputatum habebat
strength like each horse his-own to-himself assigned had

fortem juvenem, nova tunica succinctum, euntem cum biga;
strong young-man in-new tunic girded going with the-cart
ipsaque biga suum veredum et custodem. Duæ bigæ solam
and-the-very cart its-own horse and guard two carts alone
cervisiam trahebant, factam in aquæ decoctione ex adipe
ale drew made in of-water boiling from the-fat
frumenti, in cadis ferratis, donandam Francis, id genus
of-grain in casks iron-bound to-be-given to-the-French that kind
liquidi plasmatis mirantibus, potum sane salubrem, defæcatum,
of-liquid concoction admiring a-drink truly healthful clear
colore vineo, sapore meliori. Habebat cancellarii capella bigam
in-color of-wine in-taste better had of-the-chancellor the-chapel cart
suam, camera suam, expensa suam, coquina suam; portabant
its-own the-chamber its-own the-larder its-own the-kitchen its-own carried
aliæ esculentorum et poculentorum aliquid; aliæ dorsalia
others of-foods and of-drinks something others hangings
tapeta, saccos cum vestibus nocturnis, sarcinas et impedimenta.
carpets sacks with garments night packs and baggage
Habuit duodecim summarios, octo scrinia quæ cancellarii
he-had twelve sumpter-horses eight chests which of-the-chancellor
continebant supellectilem, auream scilicet et argenteam;
contained the-plate golden namely and silver
vatos, culullos, pateras, scyphos, cuppas, urceolos, pelves,
vases bowls dishes goblets cups pitchers basins
salina, cochlearia, scutellas, parapsides. Aliæ coffræ et clitellæ
saltcellars spoons trays platters others coffers and saddlebags
cancellarii continebant monetam, æs plurimum quotidianis
of-the-chancellor contained coin money very-much for-daily
ejus impensis et donis sufficiens, et vestes ejus, et libros
his expenses and gifts sufficient and garments his and books
aliquot et hujusmodi. Unus summarius capellæ sacra vasa, et
some and of-this-kind one sumpter-horse of-the-chapel sacred vessels and

altaris ornamenta et libros portabat, cæterorum præambulus.
of-the-altar ornaments and books carried of-the-rest leading
Quisque summariorum suum habebat agasonem, qualem
each of-the-sumpter-horses its-own had groom of-what-sort
et qualiter decuit instructum. Quæque etiam biga habebat
and in-what-way befitted equipped each also cart had
canem alligatum vel supra vel subtus, magnum, fortem, et
a-dog tied either above or below great strong and
terribilem, qui ursum vel leonem domiturus videretur. Sed
terrible which a-bear or a-lion about-to-tame seemed but
et supra quemque summarium erat vel simia caudata, vel
also on each sumpter-horse was either an-ape tailed or

"humani simulator simius oris."
"of-the-human the-mimic monkey face."

In ingressu Gallicanarum villarum et castrorum, primi
at the-entry of-French towns and castles first
veniebant garciones pedites,
came grooms on-foot

"fruges consumere nati,"
"the-crops to-consume born,"

quasi ducenti quinquaginta, gregatim euntes sex vel deni,
about two-hundred fifty in-troops going six or ten
vel plures simul, aliquid lingua sua pro more patriæ
or more together something in-tongue their according-to the-custom of-country
suæ cantantes. Sequebantur aliquo intervallo canes copulati et
their singing followed at-some interval dogs coupled and
leporarii in loris et laxis suis, seu quo alio dignentur
greyhounds on leashes and lymers their or by-what other they-may-be-dignified

nomine, cum concuratoribus et sequacibus suis. Post
name with keepers and attendants their after
modicum stridebant ad lapides platearum illæ bigæ ferratæ,
a-little rumbled on the-stones of-the-streets those carts iron-bound
magnis coriis animalium consutis coopertæ. Sequebantur ad
with-great hides of-animals sewn covered followed at
modicam distantiam summarii, agasonibus, positis genibus
a-short distance the-sumpter-horses with-the-grooms with-placed knees
super clunes summarorium, equitantibus. Aliqui Franci a
on the-haunches of-the-sumpter-horses riding some French from
domibus suis egressi ad tantum strepitum quærebant quis
houses their having-come-out at so-great a-din asked who
veniret, cujus esset illa familia? Aiunt illi, quod cancellarius
was-coming whose was that household they-say they that the-chancellor
regis Anglorum ad dominum regem Franciæ missus veniret.
of-the-king of-the-English to the-lord king of-France sent was-coming
Dicunt Franci, "Mirabilis est ipse rex Anglorum, cujus
say the-French wonderful is he-himself the-king of-the-English whose
cancellarius talis et tantus incedit." Sequuntur ad aliquam
chancellor such and so-great goes follow at some
intercapedinem post summarios armigeri, militum portantes
interval after the-sumpter-horses the-squires of-the-knights carrying
scuta et trahentes dextrarios; inde alii armigeri, dehinc
shields and leading chargers then other squires next
ephebi, deinde, qui aves portabant: postea, dapiferi et
youths then those-who birds carried afterward the-stewards and
magistri et ministri domus cancellarii; deinde milites et
masters and ministers of-the-house of-the-chancellor then knights and
clerici, omnes bini et bini equitantes; postremo, cancellarius,
clerks all two and two riding last the-chancellor
et aliqui familiares ejus circa eum.
and some familiars his around him

Appulsus in transmarinis, statim præmiserat domino regi
having-landed in overseas-parts at-once had-sent-ahead to-the-lord king
Francorum cancellarius, mandans quod ad eum veniret.
of-the-French the-chancellor sending-word that to him he-was-coming
Venit per castrum Medlenti. Rescripserat ei rex
he-came by the-castle of-Meulan had-written-back to-him the-king
Francorum, quod occurreret ei Parisius, et qua die.
of-the-French that he-should-meet him at-Paris and on-what day
Rex itaque volens cancellarium procurare, (sicut nobilitatis
the-king therefore wishing the-chancellor to-entertain as of-the-nobility
et consuetudinis Gallicanorum regum est omnem mortalem
and custom of-the-French kings it-is every mortal
ad curiam Franciæ venientem, quamdiu in curia fuerit,
to the-court of-France coming as-long-as in the-court he-shall-be
procurare,) edicto Parisius dato prohibuerat, ne quis
to-entertain with-an-edict at-Paris given had-forbidden that-not anyone
aliquid cancellario vel suis emptoribus venderet. Quo
anything to-the-chancellor or to-his buyers should-sell which
præcognito, cancellarius præmiserat suos ad fora vicina,
known-beforehand the-chancellor had-sent-ahead his-men to the-markets neighboring
Laniaci, Corboili, Pontis Isarei, Sancti Dionysii, qui sibi
of-Lagny of-Corbeil of-the-Bridge of-the-Oise of-Saint Denis who for-him
emerent panes et carnes et pisces, vina et cibaria, in
should-buy breads and meats and fishes wines and foods in
abundantia, mutato, suppressisque nominibus, habitu. Et cum
abundance with-changed and-suppressed names dress and when
Parisius domus Templi hospitium habiturus ingrederetur,
at-Paris the-house of-the-Temple as-lodging about-to-have he-entered
occurrerunt ei sui, dicentes quod hospitium omnibus
met him his-men saying that the-lodging with-all
bonis instructum ad moram triduanam inveniret, quaque die
goods equipped for a-stay three-day he-would-find on-each day

mille hominibus procurandis. Equidem in divitiis regis
for-a-thousand men to-be-provided indeed in the-riches of-king
Salomonis legitur quot animalium carnes quotidianis ejus
Solomon it-is-read how-many of-animals the-meats for-daily his
impensis sufficerent; et equidem una die anguillarum unum
expenses sufficed and indeed on-one day of-eels one
solum ferculum cancellarii centum solidis sterlingorum
only dish of-the-chancellor for-a-hundred shillings sterling
emptum fuit: quod omni patriæ notum, etiam loco
bought was which to-all the-country known also in-place
proverbii multo tempore multis in ore erat. De aliis
of-a-proverb for-much time for-many in the-mouth was about other
ejus ferculis et impensis sileo. Ex hoc uno intelligi
his dishes and expenses I-am-silent from this one to-be-understood
potest, quod mensa cancellarii sumptuosa fuit et sufficiens.
it-can that the-table of-the-chancellor sumptuous was and sufficient
Qualiter eum dominus rex Francorum et nobiles illi Franci
how him the-lord king of-the-French and nobles those French
honorificaverint; qualiter ipse vicissim eos; et præterea qua
honored how he in-turn them and besides with-what
comitate susceperit scholares Parisius et magistros scholarum,
courtesy he-received the-scholars at-Paris and the-masters of-the-schools
et cives scholarium Angligenarum creditores, dicere non
and the-citizens of-the-scholars English creditors to-say not
sufficio. Legitur de Hannibale quod post interfectum
I-suffice it-is-read about Hannibal that after killed
Hasdrubalem Romam nuncios miserit, dicens eis, "Ite,
Hasdrubal to-Rome envoys he-sent saying to-them go
et omnem mortalem explete pecunia." Idem forte legit
and every mortal fill with-money the-same perhaps read
et curavit cancellarius, omnem nobilem Francum, baronem,
and saw-to the-chancellor every noble Frank baron

militem, servitorem regis vel reginæ regis Francorum,
knight servant of-the-king or of-the-queen of-the-king of-the-French
magistros scholarum, scholares, civium nobiliores, muneribus
masters of-schools scholars of-the-citizens the-nobler with-gifts
suis explebat. Omnia sua vasa aurea et argentea donavit,
his he-filled all his vessels golden and silver he-gave
omnia mutatoria vestimentorum; illi pallium, illi
all changes of-garments to-this-one a-mantle to-that-one
capam griseam, illi pelliciam, illi palefridum, illi
a-cloak gray to-that-one a-fur-coat to-that-one a-palfrey to-that-one
dextrarium. Quid plura? Supra omnem hominem suam gratiam
a-charger what more above every man his favor
adeptus est. Legatione sua feliciter functus est, propositum
obtained he-has the-embassy his happily performed he-has his-purpose
assecutus est; quod petiit, ei concessum est. In reditu suo
attained he-has what he-asked to-him granted was on return his
Widonem de la Val, regis Angliæ impugnatorem, patriæ
Guy de la Val of-the-king of-England the-assailant of-the-country
stratæque publicæ deprædatorem, cepit, et conjectum in
and-of-the-road public the-plunderer he-took and thrown into
vincula apud castrum Novi Fori incarceravit. Hoc modo se
chains at the-castle of-New Market imprisoned in-this way himself
cancellarius Thomas in pacis studio et tempore habebat;
the-chancellor Thomas in of-peace pursuit and time conducted
quid de eo in bellicis regis negotiis occupato loquar?
what about him in warlike of-the-king affairs occupied should-I-say

TOULOUSE, THE FRENCH WAR, AND THE ELECTION

At the siege of Toulouse the chancellor leads seven hundred knights of his own; the king refuses his counsel to storm the city with the French king inside, and he stays behind to take three strong castles. In the war on the French border he unhorses a French knight in single combat. When Theobald dies, the king resolves to make him archbishop, trusting him to serve as he had as chancellor; only Gilbert of Hereford speaks against it. He is elected and consecrated at Canterbury in 1162, receives the pallium from Alexander III, and at once puts on the hair shirt and guards his soul.

Qualiter cancellarius regi servierit in sua guerra de Tolosa.
how the-chancellor the-king served in his war of Toulouse
In exercitu et obsidione Tolosæ, ubi tota Anglia, Normannia,
in the-army and the-siege of-Toulouse where all England Normandy
Aquitania, Andegavis, Britannia, Scotia, in præsidium regis
Aquitaine Anjou Brittany Scotland for the-defense of-the-king
Angliæ militarem manum et fortitudinem bellicam emisit,
of-England a-military band and strength warlike sent-forth
cancellarius de propria familia lectam manum, septingentos
the-chancellor from own household a-chosen band seven-hundred
milites habebat. Et quidem, si ejus paritum esset consilio,
knights had and indeed if his obeyed it-had-been counsel
urbem Tolosam, et regem Franciæ, qui favore sororis
the-city Toulouse and the-king of-France who by-the-favor of-his-sister
comitissæ Constantiæ se immiserat, sed et improvide sine
the-countess Constance himself had-thrust but also improvidently without
exercitu et manu forti, invasissent et cepissent; tantus
army and band strong they-would-have-attacked and taken so-great
erat regis Anglorum exercitus. Sed vana superstitione et
was of-the-king of-the-English the-army but by-vain superstition and
reverentia rex tentus consilio aliorum, super urbem, in
reverence the-king held by-the-counsel of-others upon the-city in

qua esset dominus suus rex Franciæ, irruere noluit; dicente
which was lord his the-king of-France to-rush refused with-saying
in contrarium cancellario, quod personam domini rex
to the-contrary the-chancellor that the-person of-lord the-king
Francorum ibi deposuisset, eo quod supra pacta conventa
of-the-French there had-laid-aside on-that because beyond the-pacts agreed
hostem se ibidem ei opposuisset. Non multo post, vocata
an-enemy himself there to-him he-had-opposed not much after summoned
et congregata venit in urbem militia regis Francorum,
and gathered came into the-city the-knighthood of-the-king of-the-French
et rex Angliæ, cum rege Scotiæ et omni exercitu suo,
and the-king of-England with the-king of-Scotland and all army his
impos voti et inefficax propositi rediit; capta tamen
without-power-of wish and ineffective of-purpose returned with-taken nevertheless
prius urbe Cadurtio, et plurimis castris in vicinia Tolosæ,
earlier the-city Cahors and very-many castles in the-vicinity of-Toulouse
quæ erant comitis Tolosæ et suffraganeorum ejus, vel quæ
which were of-the-count of-Toulouse and of-the-vassals his or which
comes Tolosæ regis Angliæ fautoribus prius abstulerat.
the-count of-Toulouse of-the-king of-England from-the-supporters earlier had-taken-away
Ad quæ omnia retinenda, post reditum regis Anglorum,
for which all to-be-retained after the-return of-the-king of-the-English
comitibus omnibus recusantibus, solus cancellarius cum sua
with-the-earls all refusing alone the-chancellor with his
familia, et solo Henrico de Essexia, constabulario et barone
household and only Henry of Essex constable and baron
regis, remansit. Et postea tria castra munitissima, et quæ
of-the-king remained and afterward three castles very-fortified and which
inexpugnabilia videbantur, ipsemet lorica indutus et galea
impregnable seemed he-himself in-a-hauberk clad and a-helmet
cum suis in manu forti cepit. Sed et Garunnam cum
with his-men in hand strong took but also the-Garonne with

militari manu transiit supra hostes; confirmataque in regis
military band he-crossed against the-enemies and-with-confirmed in of-the-king
obsequium tota illa provincia, gratiosus et honoratus rediit.
the-service all that province gracious and honored he-returned
Item qualiter se habuit in guerra Francorum.
likewise how himself he-conducted in the-war of-the-French
Postmodum autem in werra regis Francorum et domini
afterward however in the-war of-the-king of-the-French and of-lord
sui regis Anglorum in Marchia, ad communem terminum
his the-king of-the-English in the-March at the-common boundary
terrarum suarum inter Gisorcium et Triam et Curceles,
of-lands their between Gisors and Trie and Courcelles
cancellarius, præter propriæ familiæ septingentos equites, alios
the-chancellor besides of-own household seven-hundred horsemen other
mille ducentos stipendarios milites habebat, et quatuor
thousand two-hundred mercenary knights had and four
millia servientium, per unam quadragenam. Et cuique militi
thousand of-foot-soldiers for one forty-days and to-each knight
quaque die dabantur ad equos et armigeros procurandos
each day were-given for horses and squires to-be-provided
tres solidi illius monetæ; ipsique milites omnes ad mensam
three shillings of-that coin and-the-very knights all at the-table
erant cancellarii. Ipsemet, clericus cum esset, cum valente
were of-the-chancellor he-himself a-clerk though he-was with a-valiant
milite Franco, Engelramno de Tria, e regione subditis
knight French Engelram of Trie from opposite with-put-under
equo calcaribus veniente armato, lancea demissa et equo
to-the-horse spurs coming armed with-lance lowered and horse
admisso congressus, ipsum equo dejecit, et dextrarium
let-go having-engaged him from-the-horse threw and the-charger
lucrifecit. Et in toto regis Anglorum exercitu semper
won and in the-whole of-the-king of-the-English army always

primi erant milites cancellarii, semper majora audebant,
first were the-knights of-the-chancellor always greater-things dared
semper præclare faciebant, eo docente, ducente, eo
always splendidly did with-him teaching leading with-him
hortante; canere eductui, canere receptui, in lituis suis
exhorting to-sound for-the-advance to-sound for-the-retreat on trumpets his
ductilibus, quos in exercitu suo proprios, sed universo
drawn which in army his own but to-the-whole
hinc inde exercitui habebat notissimos. Unde ipse,
on-this-side on-that army he-had best-known whence he-himself
hostis etiam et expugnator regis Francorum, et terræ
enemy also and attacker of-the-king of-the-French and of-land
ipsius in igne et gladio depopulator, in magnam pervenit
his with fire and sword ravager into great came
gratiam ipsius regis Francorum et magnatum totius Galliæ,
favor of-the-very king of-the-French and of-the-magnates of-all Gaul
suffragantibus ei meritis fidei præstantis et nobilitatis suæ
with-supporting him the-merits of-faith outstanding and of-nobility his
notissimæ; quam gratiam postmodum tempore opportuno
best-known which favor afterward at-a-time opportune
sibi rex exhibuit. Virtus quippe et in hoste laudatur.
to-him the-king showed virtue indeed even in an-enemy is-praised

De electione cancellarii in archiepiscopum.
about the-election of-the-chancellor to archbishop

Interim diem supremum fungitur archiepiscopus Theobaldus.
meanwhile day the-last performs archbishop Theobald
Statuit ergo rex Anglorum cancellarium suum in
decided therefore the-king of-the-English chancellor his to
archiepiscopum promovere, intuitu meritorum personæ, et
archbishop to-promote in-regard of-the-merits of-the-person and
confidens quod sibi ad placitum et nutum, ut cancellarius
trusting that to-him at pleasure and nod as chancellor

fecerat, archiepiscopus obsequeretur. Præcedente itaque
he-had-done archbishop he-would-defer with-preceding therefore
notaque omni clero Angliæ regis voluntate, (quod
and-known to-all the-clergy of-England of-the-king the-will which
solum electionis illius meritis derogavit,) cancellarius,
alone of-election that from-the-merits detracted the-chancellor
archidiaconus Cantuariæ, ejusdem ecclesiæ archiepiscopus
archdeacon of-Canterbury of-the-same church archbishop
unanimiter eligitur. Solus Gillbertus Herefordiæ, qui et
unanimously is-elected alone Gilbert of-Hereford who also
postea translatus est in Londoniam, habitu monachus, vinum
afterward translated was to London in-habit a-monk wine
vel carnes non gustans, quod potuit, dissuasit; ut putabatur,
or meats not tasting what he-could dissuaded as was-thought
non bene zelans electionem, sed male electum; aspirare
not well zealous-for the-election but badly the-elected to-aspire
enim et pro se laborare credebatur. Postmodum enim
for and for himself to-labor he-was-believed afterward for
dixit mirum fecisse regem, qui de homine sæculari et
he-said a-wonder to-have-done the-king who from a-man secular and
de milite quodam fecerat archiepiscopum.
from a-knight a-certain had-made an-archbishop
Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo sexagesimo secundo,
in-the-year of-grace thousand hundred sixtieth second
octava Pentecostes, ecclesiæ Cantuariensis festa die
on-the-octave of-Pentecost of-the-church of-Canterbury the-feast day
Sanctæ Trinitatis, in ipsa metropolitana ecclesia congregatis
of-the-Holy Trinity in the-very metropolitan church with-gathered
suffraganeis episcopis omnibus, per filium hæredemque regis
suffragan bishops all by the-son and-heir of-king
Henrici secundi Henricum, et per Ricardum de Luci
Henry second Henry and by Richard of Lucy

aliosque magnates Angliæ, qui aderant ex parte regis
and-other magnates of-England who were-present from the-side of-the-king
tunc transmarini, beatus Thomas, liber et ab omni querela
then overseas blessed Thomas free and from every claim
sæculari solutus et quietus, ecclesiæ Cantuariensi est
secular released and quit to-the-church of-Canterbury was
redditus et repræsentatus, et per manum Henrici, venerabilis
rendered and presented and by the-hand of-Henry venerable
episcopi Wintoniensis, archiepiscopus ordinatus. Alexander
bishop of-Winchester archbishop ordained Alexander
papa tertius ei pallium misit per clericum ejus Johannem
pope third to-him the-pallium sent by clerk his John
Salesberiensem. Archiepiscopus contra illam fasciam pectoralem
of-Salisbury the-archbishop to-meet that band of-the-breast
et humeralem suscipiendam devotus, pronus et nudus
and of-the-shoulders to-be-received devout bowed and bare
pedes ivit. Mysterium siquidem grande est illud insigne,
of-foot went a-mystery indeed great is that sign
illud archiepiscopi singulare. Pallium pro aurea lamina
that of-the-archbishop singular the-pallium for the-golden plate
est institutum, in qua summus pontifex in lege nomen
is instituted on which the-high priest in the-law the-name
Domini tetragrammaton in fronte sua præferebat inscriptum.
of-the-Lord the-tetragrammaton on forehead his bore inscribed
Duæ lineæ propendentes sunt duæ leges, Christi passionem
the-two strips hanging-down are the-two laws of-Christ the-passion
præferentes; spinulæ sunt clavi, quibus corpus Christi
foreshowing the-little-pins are the-nails with-which the-body of-Christ
cruci figitur. In ordinatione sua, unctione misericordiæ
to-the-cross is-fixed in ordination his with-the-unction of-the-mercy
Dei visibili et invisibili perfusus, exuit sæcularem hominem,
of-God visible and invisible suffused he-put-off the-secular man

et Jesum Christum induitur; evacuavit quæ erant sæcularia
and Jesus Christ is-clothed-in he-emptied what-things were secular
cancellarii, satagens quæ sunt boni archiepiscopi.
of-the-chancellor busying-himself-with what-things are of-a-good archbishop
Itaque omni custodia excubabat animum suum. Sermones
so with-every guard he-watched-over mind his the-sermons
ejus serii erant ad ædificationem auditorum; opera ejus,
his serious were for the-edification of-the-hearers the-works his
misericordiæ et pietatis; sententiæ ejus, justitiæ et æquitatis.
of-mercy and of-piety the-judgments his of-justice and of-equity
Cilicio usque ad poplites asperrimo et vermibus scaturiente,
with-a-hair-shirt up-to to the-knees very-rough and with-worms swarming
et parco cibo carnem edomabat, et consueto potu
and with-sparing food the-flesh he-tamed and with-the-accustomed drink
aquæ, in qua coctum erat fœniculum. Vinum tamen
of-water in which cooked was fennel wine nevertheless
prægustabat, et dabat considentibus; et carnium appositarum
he-tasted-first and gave to-those-sitting-with and of-the-meats set-out
aliquid comedebat; sed pane reficiebat. Omnia tamen
something he-ate but with-bread he-refreshed-himself all-things nevertheless
munda mundis; et in culpa non est cibus, sed appetitus.
clean to-the-clean and in fault not is the-food but the-appetite
Verberibus disciplinalibus frequenter dorsum nudum exponebat.
to-the-blows disciplinary frequently the-back bare he-exposed
Proxime supra cilicium habuit habitum monachalem,
next above the-hair-shirt he-had the-habit monastic
quoniam monachorum erat abbas Cantuariensium; supremo,
since of-the-monks he-was abbot of-Canterbury on-top
canonicalem, ut clericis conformaretur. Stolam tamen,
a-canonical-one that to-the-clerks he-might-be-conformed the-stole nevertheless
jugum Christi suave, circa collum et diebus et noctibus
the-yoke of-Christ sweet around the-neck both by-days and by-nights

habebat. Facies ejus exterior similis erat multitudini, intus
he-had the-face his exterior like was to-the-multitude within
omnia dissimilia. Sancti Sebastiani et sanctæ Cæciliæ imitator;
all-things unlike of-Saint Sebastian and of-saint Cecilia imitator
quorum ille sub absconso chlamydis Christi militem gerebat
of-whom he under the-hiding of-the-cloak of-Christ the-soldier bore
absconditum, illa, cilicio carnem domans, desuper auratis
hidden she with-a-hair-shirt the-flesh taming above with-gilded
vestibus tegebatur. In esu et vestitu religiosior studebat esse
garments was-covered in eating and clothing more-religious he-strove to-be
quam videri. Orationi intentus, Spiritui creatori spiritum
than to-seem to-prayer intent to-the-Spirit creator spirit
suum creatum reconciliare, et quodammodo unire vacabat.
his created to-reconcile and in-a-certain-way to-unite he-devoted-himself
Dei et hominum quasi quidam interpres, commendabat
of-God and of-men as-if a-certain interpreter he-commended
oratione Deo homines, prædicatione Deum hominibus.
by-prayer to-God men by-preaching God to-men
Sacræ lectioni deditus, suum in divina pagina habebat
to-the-sacred reading devoted his-own in the-divine page he-had
eruditorem. Interdum post prandium cum sociis conferebat,
teacher sometimes after dinner with companions he-conferred
audiens et interrogans eos. Usus est convictoribus viris
hearing and questioning them used he-has as-table-companions men
religiosis, clericisque honestis et litteratissimis. Familiam
religious and-clerks honorable and most-lettered household
habuit similiter electam, bonorumque virorum receptui et
he-had likewise chosen and-of-good men for-the-reception and
venerationi devotam. In dandis erat eleemosynis munificus,
veneration devoted in giving was alms munificent

mittens hospitalibus domibus et pauperibus collegiis interdum
sending to-hospital houses and to-poor colleges sometimes
quatuor vel quinque marcas, interdum annonam et carnes.
four or five marks sometimes grain and meats

THE NEW ARCHBISHOP

Thomas doubles his predecessor's alms, washes the feet of thirteen poor men daily, feeds and clothes the needy, and studies among the monks. He is a second Moses, chaste and severe with himself, and changed so suddenly that all marvel. The devil stirs the king against him: Henry resents that the man he made chancellor and archbishop now withdraws from his service and opposes him, and clerks of the court, fearing for churches they hold, tell him the royal dignity will perish.

[Cum enim piæ memoriæ Theobaldus, decessor ipsius,
when for of-pious memory Theobald predecessor his
statutas decessorum suorum eleemosynas duplicare consuevit,
the-established of-predecessors his alms to-double was-accustomed
hic religiosa æmulatione etiam duplum ejus censuit
this-one with-religious emulation even the-double of-it judged
duplicandum. Ad hujus pii operis observantiam, omnium,
to-be-doubled for of-this pious work the-observance of-all-things
quæ ex quocunque titulo percipiebat, decimas consecrabat.
which from whatever title he-received the-tithes he-consecrated
In secretiori cellula tredecim pauperum pedes curvatis
in a-more-secret little-cell of-thirteen poor-men the-feet with-bent
genibus quotidie abluebat, in memoriam Christi, singulis
knees daily he-washed in memory of-Christ to-each
eorum, post plenam refectionem victualium, quatuor argenteos
of-them after full refreshment of-victuals four silver-pennies
largiens; quod si forte aliquando, raro tamen, in propria
bestowing which if perhaps sometimes rarely nevertheless in own

persona gerere prohibebatur, hoc diligentissime per vicarium
person to-do he-was-prevented this most-diligently through a-deputy
faciebat impleri. Solitarius agens usque in miraculum
he-had to-be-fulfilled alone acting up-to to a-miracle
lacrymis suffundebatur, et sic in altaris versabatur officio
with-tears he-was-suffused and so in of-the-altar was-engaged the-office
ac si præsentialiter in carne geri cerneret dominicam
as if present in the-flesh to-be-enacted he-saw of-the-Lord
passionem. Reverentissime divina sacramenta tractabat, ut
passion most-reverently the-divine sacraments he-handled that
intuentium fidem et mores ipsa contrectatio informaret.]
of-the-beholders the-faith and morals the-very handling might-shape
Amplius, vagos et egenos in domo sua reficiebat. Contra
further wanderers and the-needy in house his he-refreshed against
hyemem multos vestiebat. Cantuariæ plerumque in claustrum
winter many he-clothed at-Canterbury generally into the-cloister
se recipiebat, et sicut unus monachorum ibi sedentium
himself he-withdrew and as one of-the-monks there sitting
sedebat studens in aliquo libro diutile; post ibat visitare
he-sat studying in some book for-a-while after he-went to-visit
monachos infirmos, ut eorum audiret et impleret desideria.
monks sick that their he-might-hear and fulfill desires
Erat oppressorum consolator, viduarum maritus, pupillorum
he-was of-the-oppressed consoler of-widows husband of-orphans
adjutor. Erat præterea humilis et affabilis mansuetis, se
helper he-was besides humble and affable to-the-meek themselves
efferentibus severus. Contra injustitiam et insolentiam
to-those-exalting severe against the-injustice and insolence
potentum quasi turris erecta in Damascum firmabatur,
of-the-powerful as-if a-tower raised toward Damascus he-was-made-firm

neque ipsius regis preces vel litteræ cuiquam apud eum
nor of-the-very king the-prayers or letters to-anyone with him
prodesse poterant, nisi cum justitia.
avail could unless with justice
Pudore bono nunc maxime repletus fuit, qui jam pridem
with-shame good now most filled he-was who already long-since
etiam cancellarius metas pudicitiæ et honestatis non excessit.
even as-chancellor the-bounds of-chastity and of-honesty not exceeded
Alter quodammodo Moyses erat, tabernaculum Domini
another in-a-certain-way Moses he-was the-tabernacle of-the-Lord
crebro intrans et exiens; intrans tempore accepto ad Dei
often entering and going-out entering at-the-time accepted for of-God
contemplationem, exiens ad piam erga proximos actionem.
contemplation going-out for pious toward neighbors action
Alter Jacob nunc copulabat sibi Liam fructu fœcundam;
another Jacob now joined to-himself Leah with-fruit fruitful
nunc autem Rachelis pulchrioris hærebat amplexibus.
now however of-Rachel the-more-beautiful clung to-the-embraces
Erat quasi unus angelorum Dei, qui per scalam, cujus
he-was as-if one of-the-angels of-God who by the-ladder whose
summitas cælos tangebat, nunc descendebat ad sublevandas
summit the-heavens touched now descended for to-be-relieved
necessitates hominum, nunc ascendebat ad divinæ majestatis
the-necessities of-men now ascended to of-the-divine majesty
et supernæ claritatis intuitum: suspensus a terrenis et
and of-the-supernal brightness the-vision suspended from earthly and
transitoriis summopere intendebat in cælestia. Vacabat
transitory-things most-earnestly he-attended to heavenly-things he-devoted-himself
virtutibus, quæ vitam et præsentem beatificant, et
to-the-virtues which life both present make-blessed and
promerentur æternam. Aderat ei primo regina ratio, quæ,
merit eternal was-present to-him first queen reason which

ut domina ancillis, ita illa cupiditatibus et pravis animi
as a-mistress to-handmaids so it to-the-desires and depraved of-the-mind
motibus imperat. Itaque ductu rationis progressus est
movements commands so by-the-guidance of-reason advanced he-has
in virtutem; quæ sese diligens aspernatur contraria, et a
into virtue which itself loving spurns contraries and from
se oriens, rursus ad se revertitur, et omnia sua complexa
itself rising again to itself returns and all its-own embracing
nihil quærit aliunde. Aderant ei virtutis species quatuor:
nothing seeks from-elsewhere were-present to-him of-virtue the-species four
Prudentia, quæ eum reddidit discretum in rerum cognitione,
Prudence which him rendered discerning in of-things the-knowledge
personarum, loci, temporis æstimatione, in pravorum fuga,
of-persons of-place of-time in-the-estimation in of-the-wicked the-flight
in appetendorum electione; Justitia, qua Deo et cuique
in of-things-to-be-sought the-choice Justice by-which to-God and to-each
quod suum erat conservare studebat; Fortitudo, quæ eum
what his was to-keep he-strove Fortitude which him
in adversis vendicans, a malorum præsentium ægritudine
in adversities claiming from of-evils present the-sickness
et futurorum metu protegebat; Temperantia, quæ eum in
and of-future-ones the-fear protected Temperance which him in
prosperis nihil immoderate facere permittens, a libidine
prosperity nothing immoderately to-do permitting from lust
omni, et a cupiditate rerum temporalium revocabat, et
all and from the-desire of-things temporal recalled and
insolenti non sinebat alacritate gestire. Hæc est quadriga
with-insolent not allowed alacrity to-exult this is the-chariot
Aminadab, hæc est Diatessaron prima, hæc est in terris
of-Aminadab this is the-Diatessaron first this is on earth
summa harmonia; hic est in homine et inter homines dulcis
the-highest harmony this is in man and among men sweet

ille et suavis concentus, qui Dei etiam aures replet, et
that and pleasant concord which of-God even the-ears fills and
inducit hominem in vitæ beatitudinem, quæ est, secretis
leads man into of-life the-blessedness which is with-separated
malis omnibus, cumulata bonorum complexio.
evils all heaped-up of-goods the-embrace
Hac vitæ beatitudine affectus et beatus effectus archiepiscopus
by-this of-life blessedness affected and blessed made the-archbishop
Thomas curabat constanter, splendide, graviter, honeste agere
Thomas took-care constantly splendidly gravely honorably to-do
omnia; ad sapientiæ cuncta referre arbitrium; sibi imperare;
all-things to of-wisdom all-things to-refer the-judgment himself to-command
sapientiæ stare judiciis, non populi; fortunæ non timere
of-wisdom to-stand by-the-judgments not of-the-people of-fortune not to-fear
insidias; contra adversa septum, munitum, et inexpugnabilem
the-snares against adversities a-hedge fortified and unconquerable
se gerere; non sibi, sed omnibus ejus auxilio indigentibus,
himself to-show not for-himself but for-all of-his help in-need
se natum credere, maxime autem ecclesiæ suæ, quam
himself born to-believe most however for-church his which
regendam susceperat; in terris divina contemplari, Jesum
to-be-ruled he-had-undertaken on earth divine-things to-contemplate Jesus
Christum imitari natum et missum ad passiones, ipsumque
Christ to-imitate born and sent to sufferings and-him
vere diligere, et ejus observare mandata ad suam et
truly to-love and his to-keep commandments for his-own and
commissarum sibi animarum salutem. Hinc factum est, ut
of-the-entrusted to-him souls salvation hence done it-was that
consectaretur apud Deum gratiam, apud homines gloriam
he-attained with God favor with men glory
solidam quidem et expressam, consentiente laude bonorum
solid indeed and expressed with-agreeing praise of-good

virorum, voce incorrupta de eo bene judicantium; hæc
men with-voice incorrupt about him well of-those-judging this
quidem resonat virtuti recte, tanquam echo voci, tanquam
indeed resounds to-virtue rightly as an-echo to-the-voice as
imago exemplari. Et quia gloria recte viventium comes est,
an-image to-the-model and because glory rightly of-those-living companion is
bonis viris sicut nec appetenda, ita nec est respuenda, sed
by-good men as neither to-be-sought so nor is to-be-rejected but
Deo attribuenda. Siquidem ait apostolus, "Nam etsi voluero
to-God to-be-attributed indeed says the-apostle for even-if I-shall-wish
gloriari, non ero insipiens; veritatem enim dicam." Hanc
to-boast not I-shall-be foolish the-truth for I-shall-say this
tamen gloriam timuit et sprevit Thomas, ne forte surreperet
nevertheless glory feared and spurned Thomas lest perhaps might-creep-in
elatio, scriptum esse attendens, "Quantumlibet justus,
pride written to-be attending however-much just
nunquam tamen sis securus." Est alia quædam falsa et
never nevertheless be secure there-is another a-certain false and
vana gloria, quam appetunt homines superbi et vani, divites
vain glory which seek men proud and vain the-rich
et hypocritæ: adumbrata quædam imago gloriæ, cui
and hypocrites a-shadowed certain image of-glory under-which
nulla virtutis, quæ laudetur, subest soliditas; sed videtur
no of-virtue which be-praised lies solidity but it-seems
similitudo quædam apparens quidem specie, non exsistens
a-likeness certain appearing indeed in-appearance not existing
autem in re. Et sicut boni veræ laudis gloriam metuunt,
however in fact and as the-good of-true praise the-glory fear
ita mali et Thrasones hanc falsam gloriam appetunt; vel
so the-wicked and Thrasos this false glory seek or

etiam si quid recte fecerint, appetentes inde laudem vel
even if anything rightly they-shall-have-done seeking thence praise or
præmium, eo ipso virtutis amittunt et nomen et meritum.
reward by-that itself of-virtue they-lose both the-name and the-merit
Gloriosus archiepiscopus Thomas contra spem regis et
the-glorious archbishop Thomas against the-hope of-the-king and
omnium ita sæculum deseruit, ita repente mutatus est
of-all so the-world deserted so suddenly changed was
mutatione quæ est dexteræ Excelsi, ut omnes
by-the-change which is of-the-right-hand of-the-Most-High that all
mirarentur.
wondered
De tentatione diaboli per malos et injustos homines
about the-temptation of-the-devil through wicked and unjust men
facta.
made
Invidit antiquus hostis talem in ecclesia Domini erectam
envied the-ancient enemy such in the-church of-the-Lord raised
columnam, talem supra candelabrum Dei accensam lucernam.
a-column such on the-candlestick of-God kindled a-lamp
Inimicus homo seminat zizania. Primo ei regis
the-enemy man sows tares first from-him of-the-king
tollit benevolentiam, quasi indigne ferre rex debeat,
he-takes-away the-benevolence as-if unworthily to-bear the-king ought
quod, qui eum primo cancellarium, post archiepiscopum
that he-who him first chancellor afterward archbishop
fecerat, nunc et a suo se retrahit obsequio, et
had-made now both from his himself withdraws service and
in pluribus ei contradicit. Regis familiares, regi
in many-things him contradicts of-the-king the-familiars to-the-king

placere quærentes, et ejus prurientes auribus, archiepiscopo
to-please seeking and his itching in-ears the-archbishop
detrahebant, et eum odio gratis habebant.
disparaged and him with-hatred gratuitously held
[Præterea quidam aulici, clerici regis, timentes potius ecclesiis
moreover certain courtly clerks of-the-king fearing rather of-churches
suis aliquibus, quas male adquisierant, sub archiepiscopi justitia
their some which wrongly they-had-acquired under of-the-archbishop justice
destitui, quam aliis incardinari, vel ad majora beneficia ejus
to-be-deprived than to-others to-be-incardinated or to greater benefices in-his
tempore provehi; et per se et per episcopos aliquot
time to-be-advanced both through themselves and through bishops some
regem et suos adversus archiepiscopum incitare et commovere
the-king and his-men against the-archbishop to-incite and to-stir
intendebant. Nihil jam ab eo vel dici vel fieri poterat,
intended nothing now by him either to-be-said or to-be-done could
quod non malitia infelicium hominum depravaret. Adeo
which not the-malice of-unhappy men might-deprave so-much
quidem ut regi persuaderent, quod si archiepiscopi potestas
indeed that the-king they-persuaded that if of-the-archbishop the-power
procederet, regia dignitas esset proculdubio peritura;
proceeded the-royal dignity would-be without-doubt about-to-perish
et nisi sibi et hæredibus suis prospiceret, is demum
and unless for-himself and heirs his he-provided he at-length
futurus erat rex, quem clerus eligeret, et quamdiu placeret
about-to-be was king whom the-clergy should-choose and as-long-as it-pleased
archiepiscopo regnaturus. Nimirum ophthalmia vel lippitudine
the-archbishop about-to-reign surely with-ophthalmia or with-bleariness
laborantibus inimica est lux; et justus injustis gravis erat
to-those-laboring hostile is the-light and the-just-man to-the-unjust grievous was
ad videndum, et contrarius erat operibus illorum. Ipse soli
to see and contrary was to-the-works their he to-alone

Deo, et nemini, nisi in Deo, placere quærebat; illi magis
God and to-no-one except in God to-please sought they rather
regis terreni auribus faciebant insidias. Amicus Dei inimicus
of-the-king earthly in-the-ears made snares the-friend of-God enemy
mundi constituitur. Moratum morosi persequuntur.]
of-the-world is-made the-well-mannered the-ill-mannered persecute

CLARENDON

The bishops side with the king for fear of losing their lands, and Thomas angers the court by moving to reclaim Tonbridge from the earl of Clare and by excommunicating William of Eynsford. Henry had long resented clerical abuses: a dean extorted money from a burgess of Scarborough, a canon of Bedford insulted a royal justice, and a clerk in Worcestershire was said to have killed a girl's father. At Clarendon the king sets out in writing the ancestral customs, which subject clerks to the king's court, protect his barons from excommunication, and hold appeals to Rome behind the king's court.

Hæc prima infestationis archiepiscopi causa. Adduntur
this the-first of-the-hostility to-the-archbishop cause are-added
regi et regalibus in hac dissensione plurimi episcopi,
to-the-king and to-the-royal-party in this dissension very-many bishops
timore amittendi terram et terrena quæ possidebant.
from-fear of-losing land and earthly-things which they-possessed
Destituitur eorum consilio et auxilio archiepiscopus.
is-deprived of-their counsel and help the-archbishop
Accessit indignationi regis et militiæ regni,
there-was-added to-the-indignation of-the-king and of-the-knighthood of-the-kingdom
quod castrum Tunebregiæ, et totum illum honorem,
that the-castle of-Tonbridge and all that honor
pridem a Cantuariensi alienatum ecclesia, a comite de
long-ago from of-Canterbury alienated the-church from the-earl of

Clara Rogero revocare intendebat; quia secundum decreta
Clare Roger to-recall he-intended because according-to the-decrees
prædecessoribus et œconomis ecclesiæ prædia licuit
to-the-predecessors and to-the-stewards of-the-church the-estates it-was-lawful
colere et augere, non minorare vel alienare. Illi autem
to-cultivate and to-increase not to-diminish or to-alienate to-that however
comiti de Clara fere omnes nobiles Angliæ propinquitate
earl of Clare nearly all the-nobles of-England by-kinship
adhærebant, qui et pulcherrimam totius regni sororem
clung who also the-most-beautiful of-the-whole kingdom sister
habebat, quam rex aliquando concupierat. Et tamen
had whom the-king once had-desired and nevertheless
prius a rege petitam obtinuerat archiepiscopus licentiam
earlier from the-king asked had-obtained the-archbishop license
revocandi prædia ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, a prædecessoribus
of-recalling the-estates of-the-church of-Canterbury by predecessors
suis male alienata, vel a laicis occupata. Item ecclesiam de
his wrongly alienated or by laymen occupied likewise the-church of
Eynesfordia cuidam clerico Laurentio archiepiscopus donaverat;
Eynsford to-a-certain clerk Laurence the-archbishop had-given
ejus siquidem est tam baronum suorum quam monachorum
his indeed it-is both of-barons his and of-the-monks
Cantuariensium vacantes in villis donare ecclesias. Dominus
of-Canterbury vacant in the-towns to-give churches the-lord
villæ, Willelmus de Eynesfordia, reclamans, homines
of-the-town William of Eynsford protesting the-men
Laurentii expulit; archiepiscopus eum excommunicavit. Rex
of-Laurence drove-out the-archbishop him excommunicated the-king
aditus archiepiscopo scripsit, ut eum absolveret. Respondit
approached to-the-archbishop wrote that him he-should-absolve answered
archiepiscopus, non esse regis præcipere quemquam absolvi,
the-archbishop not to-be of-the-king to-command anyone to-be-absolved

sicut nec excommunicari. Rex contendit, de regali sua esse
as nor to-be-excommunicated the-king contended of royal his to-be
dignitate, quod non excommunicetur qui de eo in capite
dignity that not be-excommunicated he-who from him in chief
teneat, ipso inconsulto. Tandem ad regem mitigandum, qui
holds with-him unconsulted at-length for the-king to-be-mollified who
jam in eum excandescebat, et non nisi per nuncios ei
already against him blazed and not except through messengers to-him
loquebatur, archiepiscopus Willelmum absolvit. Et ait de eo
spoke the-archbishop William absolved and says about him
rex apud Windesoram, "Nunc ei inde gratiam non habeo."
the-king at Windsor now to-him for-it thanks not I-have
Præterea diu ante, tempore scilicet Theobaldi archiepiscopi,
moreover long before in-the-time namely of-Theobald archbishop
adversus clerum Angliæ generaliter rex aliqua conceperat,
against the-clergy of-England generally the-king some-things had-conceived
quorundam clericorum insolentia provocatus. Fuit siquidem
of-certain clerks by-the-insolence provoked was indeed
aliquotiens Eboraci, ubi ad eum quidam burgensis suus
several-times at-York where to him a-certain burgess his
de Scardeburgh accessit, questus quod quidam decanus
from Scarborough came complaining that a-certain dean
abstulerat ei viginti et duo solidos, uxorem ipsius in
had-taken-away from-him twenty and two shillings wife his in
capitulis plurimis vexans, et deferens sine alio accusatore
chapters very-many harassing and reporting without other accuser
ream adulterii; contra quam consuetudinem rex legem
guilty of-adultery against which custom the-king a-law
prohibitionis ediderat. Jussu regis decanus ille evocatus
of-prohibition had-issued by-the-order of-the-king the-dean that summoned
et coram rege conventus, præsente archiepiscopo suo, et
and before the-king arraigned with-present archbishop his and

episcopo Lincolniensi, et Dunelmensi, et Johanne tunc
bishop of-Lincoln and of-Durham and John then
Eboraci thesaurario, postea episcopo Pictavensi, respondit
of-York treasurer afterward bishop of-Poitiers answered
edoctus quod a diacono quodam et alio laico fuerat illa
instructed that by a-deacon certain and another layman had-been she
accusata; et cum neganti ei sua fuisset adjudicata purgatio,
accused and when to-denying to-her her had-been awarded the-purgation
ut mitius tractaretur, hunc virum ejus archidiacono
that more-mildly she-might-be-treated this husband her to-archdeacon
suo dedisse viginti solidos, et sibi duos. Cum hæc
his to-have-given twenty shillings and to-himself two when these-things
decanus ille coram rege testium astipulatione ibi
the-dean that before the-king by-the-testimony of-witnesses there
præsentium probare non posset, exigit rex de eo judicium,
present to-prove not could demands the-king from him judgment
dicens, quod archidiaconi et decani regni sui habitatoribus
saying that the-archdeacons and deans of-kingdom his from-the-inhabitants
hoc modo plus pecuniæ per annum extorqueant, quam
in-this way more of-money through a-year extort than
ipse recipiat. Ierunt cum clero illo et barones ejus ad
he-himself receives went with the-clergy that also the-barons his for
judicandum. Tandem Johannes thesaurarius dixit sibi videri
judging at-length John the-treasurer said to-himself to-seem
pecuniam esse reddendam burgensi, et decanum archiepiscopi
the-money to-be to-be-returned to-the-burgess and the-dean of-archbishop
sui subjiciendum misericordiæ, de officio suo. Ad hæc
his to-be-subjected to-the-mercy concerning office his to these-things
Ricardus de Luci, "Quid ergo domino regi judicabitis, in cujus
Richard of Lucy what therefore for-the-lord king will-you-judge into whose
iste incidit constitutionem?" Johannes, "Nihil, quia clericus
this-one has-fallen constitution John nothing because a-clerk

est." Ricardus, "Huic sententiæ non adero;" et relictis
he-is Richard to-this sentence not I-shall-be-present and with-left
illis, ad regem cum aliis baronibus rediit. Clerus postmodum
them to the-king with other barons returned the-clergy afterward
cum hac intrat sententia, qua ab eodem Johanne formatore
with this enters sentence which by the-same John as-framer
pronunciata, rex aversus ad archiepiscopum Theobaldum,
pronounced the-king turned-away to archbishop Theobald
diem præstituens, provocavit, et falsam esse sententiam iratus
a-day appointing appealed and false to-be the-sentence angry
oppido dixit. Sed infra diem, nuntiata sibi morte Gaufridi
very said but within the-day announced to-him the-death of-Geoffrey
fratris sui transfretans, appellationem non est prosecutus.
brother his crossing-the-sea the-appeal not has prosecuted
Item, erant regis justitiarii itinerantes aliquando apud
likewise were of-the-king the-justices itinerant once at
Dunstapulam: orta est aliqua altercatio inter Simonem filium
Dunstable arose was some altercation between Simon son
Petri et quendam canonicum Bedefordiæ, Philippum de
of-Peter and a-certain canon of-Bedford Philip of
Broi. Questus est postea Simon regi, quod eum Philippus,
Broi complained has afterward Simon to-the-king that him Philip
in obsequio ipsius et magna audientia, turpiloquio
in the-service his and great hearing with-foul-language
inhonorasset. Coram archiepiscopo Philippus super hoc
had-dishonored before the-archbishop Philip over this
a rege redargutus, cum negare non posset, respondit,
by the-king rebuked when to-deny not he-could answered
se convitiis provocatum calore iracundiæ dixisse, non
himself by-insults provoked in-the-heat of-anger to-have-spoken not
animi judicio. Exegit rex judicium. Clerus ad regem
of-mind by-the-judgment demanded the-king judgment the-clergy for the-king

mitigandum decrevit, per annum beneficio præbendæ suæ
to-be-mollified decreed for a-year of-the-benefice of-prebend his
simul et regni inhabitatione Philippum privandum. Ita
at-once and of-the-kingdom of-the-habitation Philip to-be-deprived so
factum est; nec tamen regi satisfactum est.
done it-was nor nevertheless the-king satisfied was
[Prima distantia regis et sancti Thomæ pro quodam
the-first difference of-the-king and of-saint Thomas for a-certain
clerico, qui in Wirecestriæ territorio dicebatur accubuisse
clerk who in of-Worcester the-territory was-said to-have-lain-with
filiam cujusdam probi hominis, et pro ea ipsum patrem
the-daughter of-a-certain honest man and for her the-very father
occidisse. Hunc clericum rex voluit judicio curiæ
to-have-killed this clerk the-king wished by-the-judgment of-the-court
laicæ examinari et judicari. Archiepiscopus renitebatur,
lay to-be-examined and to-be-judged the-archbishop resisted
et clericum illum in custodia episcopi fecit custodiri, ne
and clerk that in the-custody of-the-bishop he-had to-be-kept lest
regis justitiæ traderetur. Alia, pro clerico, qui, in ecclesia
of-the-king to-justice he-be-handed-over another for a-clerk who in the-church
ipsius archiepiscopi, quæ in Londonia est et dicitur ecclesia
of-the-very archbishop which in London is and is-called the-church
beatæ Mariæ in Foro, furatus est calicem argenteum;
of-blessed Mary in the-Market stole has a-chalice silver
quem comprehensum rex voluit judicio sæculari judicari.
whom caught the-king wished by-judgment secular to-be-judged
Archiepiscopus judicio ecclesiæ fecit eum exauctorari,
the-archbishop by-the-judgment of-the-church had him degraded
et ex abundanti ad regem mitigandum cauteriari.]
and from abundance for the-king to-be-mollified branded

De concilio apud Clarendone habito.

about the-council at Clarendon held

Itaque rex, conceptis pridem aliquibus adversus clerum

so the-king with-conceived long-ago some-things against the-clergy

communiter, et nunc adversus Thomam archiepiscopum

in-common and now against Thomas the-archbishop

personaliter, crescentibusque de die in diem, stimulatione

personally and-with-growing from day to day by-incitement

inimica, simultatibus, statuit de regalibus suis dignitatibus

hostile with-the-quarrels decided about royal his dignities

tractare. Convocatur generale concilium, et congregatur apud

to-treat is-summoned a-general council and is-gathered at

Clarendoniam. Rex proponit et scribit dignitates et

Clarendon the-king proposes and writes-down the-dignities and

consuetudines, quas avitas et in regno Angliæ esse debere

customs which ancestral and in the-kingdom of-England to-be ought

dixit. [Robertus archidiaconus Oxenfordensis, qui et postea

he-said Robert archdeacon of-Oxford who also afterward

episcopus Herefordensis, et Jordanus archidiaconus Cicestriæ,

bishop of-Hereford and Jordan archdeacon of-Chichester

domestici clerici domus archiepiscopi, et quidam alii,

household clerks of-the-house of-the-archbishop and certain others

intellecta a pridem domini regis ira, quæ, adversus eum

with-understood from long-ago of-the-lord king the-anger which against him

graviter concepta, quotidianis augebatur incrementis, accepta

gravely conceived with-daily grew increases with-received

licentia discesserant ab eo. Rex etiam statim a principio,

leave had-departed from him the-king also at-once from the-beginning

ex quo iram adversus eum altius conceperat, procuravit

from when anger against him more-deeply he-had-conceived procured

longius ab eo amovere duos probos et honestos clericos

farther from him to-remove two honest and honorable clerks

nutritos ab adolescentia de bonis ipsius archiepiscopi,
reared from youth on the-goods of-the-very archbishop
quorum unus erat thesaurarius Eboracensis, et alter
of-whom one was the-treasurer of-York and the-other
canonicus Sarum, et uterque Johannes dictus erat, ne
a-canon of-Salisbury and each John called was lest
in opportunitatibus suis archiepiscopus illorum consilio vel
in needs his the-archbishop their counsel or
auxilio uteretur; alterumque eligi et ordinari episcopum
help should-use and-the-one to-be-elected and ordained bishop
Pictavensem, alterum vero exsulare jussit. Sed et episcopum
of-Poitiers the-other however to-be-exiled he-ordered but also the-bishop
Herefordiensem Gilebertum propius ascitum obtinuit a
of-Hereford Gilbert nearer attached obtained from
domino papa transferri in Londoniensem episcopum, sicut
the-lord pope to-be-transferred into the-London bishop as
putabatur, ut ejus contra archiepiscopum uteretur consilio.]
was-thought that his against the-archbishop he-might-use counsel
Consuetudinum illarum plura capitula erant de libertatis
of-customs those several chapters were about of-liberty
ecclesiasticæ conculcatione, de cleri omnimoda oppressione.
ecclesiastical the-trampling about of-the-clergy all-kinds-of oppression
Ut clericus accusatus de furto, vel rapina, vel hujusmodi,
that a-clerk accused of theft or robbery or of-this-kind
primo veniat in curiam regis.
first come into the-court of-the-king
Item, ut pro quantocunque crimine non excommunicetur
likewise that for however-great a-crime not be-excommunicated
comes, vel baro, vel officialis regis, rege inconsulto.
an-earl or baron or official of-the-king with-the-king unconsulted

Item, ne appellationes fierent ad dominum papam, nisi
likewise that-not appeals be-made to the-lord pope except
post litem auditam ordine ecclesiastico in foro coram decano,
after a-suit heard in-order ecclesiastical in court before dean
archidiacono, episcopo, archiepiscopo, et tandem in curia
archdeacon bishop archbishop and finally in the-court
regis.
of-the-king

THE CUSTOMS AND NORTHAMPTON

More customs follow: no journey to the pope without leave, oaths and debts to the king's courts, bishops at royal judgments. Under threat of death, Thomas yields and seals them, then repents, suspending himself from the altar until the pope absolves him; turned away at Woodstock, he twice tries to cross the sea from Romney. At the council of Northampton the king refuses him the kiss; Thomas asks for the lodging William of Courcy has taken and says he has come on John the Marshal's claim, and the king puts the case off until John comes.

Ne ad dominum papam iter arriperent episcopi vel alii
that-not to the-lord pope a-journey should-take bishops or other
clerici, vocati ab eo, vel appellati, vel appellantes ad eum,
clerks called by him or appealed-against or appealing to him
nisi per licentiam regis.
except by license of-the-king
Ne omnis controversia de fidei vel sacramenti transgressione
that-not every controversy about of-faith or of-oath transgression
sit in foro ecclesiastico; sed tantum de fide adacta, pro
be in court ecclesiastical but only about faith pledged for
nuptiis, vel dote, vel hujusmodi, quæ non debent fieri
weddings or dowry or of-this-kind which not ought to-be-done

nisi in facie ecclesiæ. De aliter dato fidei sacramento, ut
except in the-face of-the-church about otherwise given of-faith oath as
de debitis vel sic, statuit rex causam esse in foro laico.
about debts or so decreed the-king the-case to-be in court lay
Item, ut episcopi assint omnibus sæcularibus judiciis regis,
likewise that bishops be-present at-all secular judgments of-the-king
præterquam judicio sanguinis.
except at-the-judgment of-blood
Et alia in hunc modum, quæ palam cum sacris
and other-things in this manner which openly with the-sacred
canonum constitutionibus dissonantiam resonabant. Sed scriptæ
of-the-canons constitutions dissonance resounded but written
nunquam prius fuerant, nec etiam omnino fuerant in
never before had-they-been nor even at-all had-they-been in
regno Angliæ, hæ consuetudines. Et etiam si fuissent, ne
the-kingdom of-England these customs and even if they-had-been lest
de antiquitate et usu potius quam de jure niteretur, rex,
on antiquity and use rather than on right it-might-rest the-king
in illis spuriis statutis firmandis, attendere debuisset quia
in those spurious statutes to-be-confirmed to-attend ought because
Dominus dicit, "Leges meas custodite." Item illud, "Væ
the-Lord says laws my keep likewise that woe
qui condunt leges iniquas." Item, nusquam invenitur
to-those-who make laws unjust likewise nowhere is-it-found
Dominum dixisse, "Ego sum consuetudo;" sed dixit, "Ego
the-Lord to-have-said I am custom but he-said I
sum veritas." Item, consuetudinis ususve longævi non tanta est
am the-truth likewise of-custom or-of-use long-lasting not so-great is
auctoritas ut aut rationem, ut ait imperator paganus, vincat
the-authority that either reason as says an-emperor pagan it-conquer
aut legem. Immo, revelatione facta æquitatis et veritatis, cedat
or law nay with-revelation made of-equity and of-truth let-yield

usus rationi, ut in decretis scripsere sancti patres; quorum
use to-reason as in the-decrees wrote the-holy fathers of-which
ergo contra rationem et ecclesiasticam libertatem statuit et
therefore against reason and ecclesiastical liberty decreed and
scripsit rex Christianus. Sed archiepiscopus Thomas, "integer
wrote the-king Christian but the-archbishop Thomas whole
vitæ scelerisque purus," alias non poterat attemptari. Immo
of-life and-of-crime pure otherwise not could be-attacked nay
exquisitissimo dolo et arte maligna hoc ei procuratum est,
by-most-exquisite guile and art malign this for-him procured was
ut vel has traditiones corroborans incideret in manus Dei,
that either these traditions confirming he-might-fall into the-hands of-God
vel respuens incideret in manus regis, et condemnaretur
or rejecting might-fall into the-hands of-the-king and be-condemned
turbator regiæ majestatis, inimicus coronæ, et occideretur.
as-disturber of-royal majesty enemy of-the-crown and be-killed
Dicebaturque hoc commentum fuisse Rogeri archiepiscopi
and-it-was-said this the-device to-have-been of-Roger archbishop
Eboracensis, et Hylarii Cicestrensis, et Gileberti Londoniensis,
of-York and of-Hilary of-Chichester and of-Gilbert of-London
et Jocelini Saresberiensis. Nam et postmodum super hoc a
and of-Jocelin of-Salisbury for also afterward over this by
domino papa severissime redarguti, se purgaverunt in facie
the-lord pope most-severely rebuked themselves cleared in the-face
hominum, præstitis sacramentis, Hilario tamen prius obito.
of-men with-given oaths with-Hilary nevertheless before dead
Exquirit itaque rex assensum cleri in his statutis
seeks therefore the-king the-assent of-the-clergy in these statutes
firmandis. Proponitur tandem archiepiscopo et contradicentibus
to-be-confirmed is-put at-length to-the-archbishop and to-the-gainsaying
episcopis discrimen a regis interpretibus, tanquam regi
bishops the-danger by of-the-king the-interpreters as-if from-the-king

coronam regni auferre velit, si hæc decreta confirmare
the-crown of-the-kingdom to-take-away he-wish if these decrees to-confirm
contradixerit. Archiepiscopus annitentibus episcopis diu
he-shall-have-refused the-archbishop with-supporting bishops long
restitit, diu contradixit. Tandem ultimi regis nuntii
resisted long gainsaid at-length the-last of-the-king messengers
venerunt, lacrymis et verbis expressis ei seorsum tracto
came with-tears and words expressed to-him apart drawn
significantes quid futurum erat, si non adquiesceret. Timore
signifying what about-to-be was if not he-acquiesced from-fear
mortis, et ut regem mitigaret, adquievit ad tempus
of-death and that the-king he-might-mollify he-acquiesced for a-time
assensu et in verbo veritatis stipulatione, et sigillorum
by-assent and in the-word of-truth by-stipulation and of-seals
suorum impressione, archiepiscopus, et ille Eboracensis, et
their by-the-impression the-archbishop and he of-York and
episcopi omnes, statuta illa firmaverunt servanda regi
the-bishops all statutes those confirmed to-be-kept for-the-king
legitime, sine dolo malo, et in bona fide. Rex eadem
lawfully without fraud evil and in good faith the-king the-same
postea decreta transmisit domino papæ confirmanda; quæ
afterward decrees sent to-the-lord pope to-be-confirmed which
ipse lecta et intellecta reprobavit, expavit, damnavit.
he-himself read and understood rejected dreaded condemned
Archiepiscopus Dei electus, post casum fortior erectus,
the-archbishop of-God chosen after the-fall stronger raised
spiritum resumpsit, pœnituit, et se ipsum austerioribus
the-spirit resumed repented and himself his-very-self with-harsher
alimentis et indumentis gravius cœpit affligere, et se
foods and clothes more-heavily began to-afflict and himself
ab officio altaris suspendit, donec per confessionem et
from the-office of-the-altar suspended until through confession and

condignos pœnitentiæ fructus a Romano pontifice absolutus
worthy of-penance fruits by the-Roman pontiff absolved
meruit relaxari. Vere pœnituit, quia, quantumcunque in eo
he-deserved to-be-released truly he-repented because as-much-as in him
erat, errata revocare et corrigere parat; coepiscopis revocare
was the-errors to-revoke and to-correct he-prepares the-fellow-bishops to-revoke
concessa vel nolentibus, vel regis timore, qui incubuit
the-concessions either unwilling or of-the-king from-fear which pressed
super eos, non audentibus. Ad familiare regis domicilium,
upon them not daring to the-familiar of-the-king residence
lapideo muro circumseptam indaginem de Wodestoke, ubi
with-a-stone wall surrounded park of Woodstock where
audierat esse regem, iter agit archiepiscopus, aliquid
he-had-heard to-be the-king a-journey makes the-archbishop something
ei locuturus; sed a janua repulsus redit Cantuariam. In
to-him about-to-say but from the-door repulsed returns to-Canterbury on
maritima apud Rumene, villam suam, archiepiscopus recedere
the-coast at Romney town his the-archbishop to-withdraw
deliberans, ut regis iram ad tempus declinaret, bis
deliberating that of-the-king the-anger for a-time he-might-avoid twice
attentavit mare; sed ventum vel nullum habuit vel contrarium.
tried the-sea but wind either none he-had or contrary
Quod auditum regis iram maxime inflammavit.
which heard of-the-king the-anger most inflamed
De concilio apud Norhamptonam habito.
about the-council at Northampton held
Unde rex postmodum aliud generale edicit concilium,
whence the-king afterward another general proclaims council
locum designans apud Norhamptonam, octavis sancti
the-place designating at Northampton on-the-octave of-saint
Michaelis, feria tertia. Concilii dicta dies aderat;
Michael on-the-day third of-the-council the-appointed day was-present

ipsa die venimus Norhamptonam. Regem ea die non
on-that-very day we-came to-Northampton the-king on-that day not
vidit archiepiscopus, quia rex circa rivos aquarum et
saw the-archbishop because the-king around streams of-waters and
fluenta in avibus cœli ludens veniendo, Norhamptonam
flowings with birds of-the-sky playing coming to-Northampton
sero intravit. Crastino mane, dicta missa et horis,
late entered the-next morning with-said mass and hours
archiepiscopus ad curiam venit, ad castrum regis. In
the-archbishop to the-court came to the-castle of-the-king into
cameram primam intromissus, sedit regem exspectans, qui
the-chamber first admitted he-sat the-king awaiting who
tunc missam audiebat; cui venienti venerabiliter assurgens,
then mass was-hearing to-whom coming venerably rising-up
vultum exhibuit constantem, placidum, ad osculi consuetam
a-face he-showed constant placid for of-the-kiss customary
Anglis gratiam offerendam verecunde recipiendam paratum,
to-the-English the-grace to-be-offered modestly to-be-received ready
si rex præoccuparet. Ad osculum non est receptus.
if the-king should-anticipate to the-kiss not he-was received
Primam sumpsit archiepiscopus loquendi materiam de
the-first took the-archbishop of-speaking matter about
Willelmo de Curci, qui unum hospitiorum suorum occupaverat;
William of Courcy who one of-lodgings his had-occupied
petebatque a rege, ut illud sibi vacuari præciperet.
and-he-asked from the-king that it for-himself to-be-vacated he-should-order
Præcepit. Secundus sermo ejus fuit, quod ad vocationem
he-ordered the-second speech his was that to the-summons
ipsius, pro verbo quod ei moverat Johannes Marescallus,
his for the-plea which against-him had-moved John the-Marshal
venerat. Siquidem Johannes petebat ab archiepiscopo terram
he-had-come indeed John sought from the-archbishop land

unam, membrum quoddam villæ archiepiscopalis Pageham.
one a-member certain of-the-town archiepiscopal Pagham
Et aliquot diebus pro causa illi sibi designatis, cum
and some days for the-case that to-himself appointed with
brevi regis in curiam archiepiscopi venerat; ubi cum non
the-writ of-the-king into the-court of-the-archbishop had-come where when not
proficeret, nullo siquidem jure munitus, quod tunc lex erat,
he-succeeded by-no indeed right fortified as then the-law was
probavit tandem defectum curiæ archiepiscopi, sed super
he-proved at-length the-default of-the-court of-the-archbishop but on
librum troporum extractum desub pallio suo, causantibus
the-book of-tropes drawn from-under cloak his with-objecting
justitiariis curiæ archiepiscopi, quod neque librum ad
the-justices of-the-court of-the-archbishop that neither a-book for
hoc, neque talem, attulisse deberet. Reversusque ad
this nor such to-have-brought he-ought and-having-returned to
regem, litteras citationis archiepiscopi in curia regis ei
the-king letters of-citation of-the-archbishop in the-court of-the-king to-him
responsuri emeruerat; præstituta liti die Exaltationis
about-to-answer he-had-obtained with-appointed for-the-suit the-day of-the-Exaltation
sanctæ Crucis. Ad diem autem illam archiepiscopus non
of-the-holy Cross on day however that the-archbishop not
venerat; sed miserat regi milites quatuor, cum litteris suis
had-come but had-sent to-the-king knights four with letters his
et vicecomitis Cantiæ, pariter attestantis injuriam Johannis,
and of-the-sheriff of-Kent equally attesting the-wrong of-John
et imperfectum probationis ejus. Sed quid? Indigne ferens
and the-imperfection of-proof his but what unworthily bearing
rex, quod ab eo citatus archiepiscopus in propria persona
the-king that by him cited the-archbishop in own person
non venerat, hoc, si vellet, allegaturus, male tractavit nuncios
not had-come this if he-wished about-to-allege badly treated messengers

ipsius, molestus eis in ira et minis; tanquam qui
his troublesome to-them in anger and threats as those-who
contra regis citationem in curiam ejus excusationem falsam,
against of-the-king the-citation into court his an-excuse false
nullam, et inutilem, attulerant; et tandem datis vadibus,
null and useless had-brought and at-length with-given pledges
vix eos relaxavit. Et aliam diem ad instantiam prædicti
scarcely them released and another day at the-instance of-the-aforesaid
Johannis, (primam scilicet concilii diem,) pro eadem causa
John the-first namely of-the-council day for the-same case
præfixit, litteris suis ad vicecomitem Cantiæ de archiepiscopo
he-appointed with-letters his to the-sheriff of-Kent about the-archbishop
citando emissis. Non tunc enim, nec diu ante, ei scribere
to-be-cited sent-out not then for nor long before to-him to-write
voluerat, quia eum salutare nolebat. Nec aliam per litteras
he-had-wished because him to-greet he-would-not nor another by letters
sibi directas solennem et primam, ut antiqui moris
to-himself directed solemn and first as of-ancient custom
erat, habuerat archiepiscopus ad concilium citationem. Dixit,
it-was had the-archbishop to the-council citation said
inquam, archiepiscopus se ex mandato regis pro causa
I-say the-archbishop himself by the-command of-the-king for the-case
Johannis venisse: ad quod rex ait, Johannem esse in ejus
of-John to-have-come to which the-king says John to-be in his
servitio Londoniæ; venturum autem in proximo, et tunc
service at-London about-to-come however in the-near-future and then
de eorum causa cognosceret. Erat siquidem Johannes ille
about their case he-would-take-cognizance was indeed John that
cum thesaurariis et cæteris fiscalis pecuniæ et publici æris
with the-treasurers and the-other of-fiscal money and of-public treasure
receptoribus Londoniæ, ad quadrangulam tabulam, quæ dicitur
receivers at-London at the-four-sided table which is-called

Calculis bicoloribus, vulgo Scaccarium; potius autem est
with-counters two-colored commonly the-Exchequer rather however it-is
regis tabula nummis albicoloribus, ubi etiam placita coronæ
of-the-king the-table with-coins white-colored where also the-pleas of-the-crown
regis tractantur. Ea die inter regem et archiepiscopum
of-the-king are-treated on-that day between the-king and the-archbishop
nil amplius actum est; sed dixit rex ei ut ad hospitium
nothing more done was but said the-king to-him that to the-lodging
iret, et in crastino ad causam suam reverteretur. Rediit.
he-should-go and on the-morrow to case his he-should-return he-returned

THE COUNCIL OF NORTHAMPTON

On the second day Thomas is condemned for contempt of the crown and fined; then he is charged for three hundred pounds from Eye and Berkhamsted. On the third day he is charged for loans from the Toulouse campaign and for all the revenues of sees and abbeys left vacant while he was chancellor. On the fourth day he consults the bishops and abbots: Henry of Winchester offers two thousand marks, the king refuses, and some urge him to put everything, the see included, at the king's mercy.

Secunda die, considentibus episcopis, comitibus, et baronibus
on-the-second day with-sitting-together the-bishops earls and barons
Angliæ omnibus, Normanniæ pluribus, præter Rophensem
of-England all of-Normandy very-many besides of-Rochester
episcopum, qui nondum venerat, et quendam alium,
the-bishop who not-yet had-come and a-certain other
archiepiscopus læsæ majestatis coronæ regiæ arguitur;
the-archbishop of-injured majesty of-the-crown royal is-charged
quia, scilicet, ut supra narratum est, a rege citatus pro
because namely as above told it-has-been by the-king cited for
causa Johannis, neque venisset neque idonee se excusasset.
the-case of-John neither had-he-come nor fittingly himself had-excused

Archiepiscopi depulsio nullum locum habuit, allegata Johannis
of-the-archbishop the-defense no place had with-alleged of-John
supradicta injuria, et jurisdictione hujus causa sua propria,
the-aforesaid wrong and the-jurisdiction of-this case his own
et curiæ suæ integritate. Rex exigit judicium. Archiepiscopi
and of-court his the-integrity the-king demands judgment of-the-archbishop
ratio nulla est approbata. Visum est omnibus ex reverentia
the-reason none was approved it-seemed has to-all from reverence
regiæ majestatis, et ex astrictione ligii homanagii, quod
of-the-royal majesty and from the-binding of-liege homage which
domino regi archiepiscopus fecerat, et ex fidelitate et
to-the-lord king the-archbishop had-done and from the-fealty and
observantia terreni ejus honoris, quam ei juraverat, quod
observance of-earthly his honor which to-him he-had-sworn that
parum esset defensus vel excusatus; quia citatus a rege
too-little he-was defended or excused because cited by the-king
neque venerat, neque corporis infirmitatem, vel necessariam,
neither had-he-come nor of-body infirmity or necessary
quæ differri non posset, ecclesiastici officii administrationem,
which to-be-put-off not could of-ecclesiastical office administration
per nuntios allegaverat; condemnandumque eum dixerunt in
through messengers had-alleged and-to-be-condemned him they-said to
pœnam pecuniariam omnium bonorum suorum mobilium ad
the-penalty pecuniary of-all goods his movable at
misericordiam regis. De proferendo judicio distantia fuit
the-mercy of-the-king about pronouncing the-judgment a-difference there-was
inter episcopos et barones, utrisque alteris illud imponentibus,
between the-bishops and barons with-each to-the-other it imposing
utrisque se excusantibus. Aiunt barones, "Vos episcopi
with-each themselves excusing say the-barons you bishops
pronuntiare debetis sententiam; ad nos non pertinet hoc: nos
to-pronounce ought the-sentence to us not pertains this we

laici sumus, vos personæ ecclesiasticæ, sicut ille, consacerdotes
laymen are you persons ecclesiastical as he fellow-priests
ejus, coepiscopi ejus." Ad hæc aliquis episcoporum,
his fellow-bishops his to these-things some-one of-the-bishops
"Immo, vestri potius est hoc officii, non nostri; non enim
nay yours rather is this of-office not ours not for
est hoc judicium ecclesiasticum, sed sæculare. Non sedemus
is this judgment ecclesiastical but secular not we-sit
hic episcopi, sed barones. Nos barones et vos barones pares
here as-bishops but as-barons we barons and you barons peers
hic sumus. Ordinis autem nostri rationi frustra innitimini;
here are of-order however our on-the-reason in-vain you-rely
quia si in nobis ordinationem attenditis, et in ipso similiter
because if in us the-ordination you-regard also in him likewise
attendere debetis. Eo autem ipso quod episcopi sumus, non
to-regard you-ought by-that however itself that bishops we-are not
possumus archiepiscopum et dominum nostrum judicare."
we-can the-archbishop and lord our judge
Sed quid? Rex, audita hac de pronunciando controversia,
but what the-king with-heard this about pronouncing controversy
motus est; et controversari super hoc desitum est. Dominus
moved was and to-dispute over this ceased it-was the-lord
Wintoniensis, impositus dicere, tandem et invitus pronunciavit.
of-Winchester charged to-say at-length and unwilling pronounced
Archiepiscopus autem, quia sententiæ vel recordationi curiæ
the-archbishop however because the-sentence or the-record of-the-court
regis Angliæ non licet contradicere, sustinuit, consilio
of-the-king of-England not it-is-lawful to-gainsay endured by-the-counsel
episcoporum; adacta ad mitigandum et honorandum regem
of-the-bishops brought for mollifying and honoring the-king
solemni in manum ipsius missione, quasi concessionis
with-solemn into the-hand his placing as-if of-concession

judicii, ut moris est ibi; et omnibus episcopis datis
of-the-judgment as custom is there and with-all the-bishops given
vadibus, præter Gillebertum illum Londoniensem, qui rogatus
as-pledges except Gilbert that of-London who asked
pro eo spondere noluit: quæ eum singularitas notum fecit.
for him to-pledge would-not which him singularity notorious made
Post, eadem die, conventus est archiepiscopus de
after on-the-same day sued was the-archbishop concerning
trecentis libris perceptis de castellaria Eye et Berchamstede.
three-hundred pounds received from the-castellany of-Eye and of-Berkhamsted
Archiepiscopus, litis declinatione præmissa, ut qui ad
the-archbishop of-the-suit the-declining premised as one-who for
hoc citatus non fuit, ait, non ut in lite, se hanc
this summoned not was says not as in suit himself this
pecuniam et multo plurem misisse ad reparationem
money and much more to-have-spent on the-repair
palatii Londoniæ et castrorum prædictorum, ut cernere
of-the-palace of-London and of-the-castles aforesaid as to-see
erat. Rex noluit esse auctor ejus, quod hoc per
it-was the-king would-not to-be the-warrant of-it that this through
eum factum esset. Exigit judicium. Archiepiscopus gratia
him done had-been demands judgment the-archbishop for-the-favor
regis reddere acquiescens pecuniam hanc, quoniam omnino
of-the-king to-repay acquiescing money this since wholly
nolebat ut quantalibet pecunia esset inter eos irarum
he-wished-not that however-much money should-be between them of-angers
causa, semotim laicos fidejussores, comitem Gloecestriæ et
the-cause separately lay sureties the-earl of-Gloucester and
Willelmum de Eisnesfordia, et tertium quendam, homines
William of Eynsford and a-third certain-one men
suos, interposuit. Sub hoc fine die illa discedunt.
his he-interposed under this end on-day that they-depart

Die tertia, Cerci condictione, convenitur archiepiscopus
on-day the-third of-a-fixed-sum by-the-claim is-sued the-archbishop
per internuncios de quingentis marcis ex causa
through intermediaries concerning five-hundred marks from the-cause
commodati in exercitu Tolosæ, et aliis quingentis marcis
of-a-loan in the-army of-Toulouse and other five-hundred marks
ex causa fidejussionis regis pro eo erga quendam
from the-cause of-the-surety of-the-king for him toward a-certain
Judæum ibidem. Item convenitur actione tutelæ
Jew there likewise be-is-sued with-the-action of-guardianship
de omnibus perceptis ab archiepiscopatu vacante, seu
concerning all-things received from the-archbishopric vacant or
aliis episcopatibus et abbatiis tempore cancellariæ ejus
other bishoprics and abbeys in-the-time of-the-chancellorship his
vacantibus; jubeturque super his omnibus regi rationem
vacant and-he-is-ordered over these all to-the-king an-account
exponere. Respondit archiepiscopus, se non ad hoc venisse
to-set-out answered the-archbishop himself not for this to-have-come
paratum vel citatum. Super hoc si conveniri deberet, loco et
prepared or summoned over this if to-be-sued he-ought in-place and
tempore, domino suo regi quod juris esset faceret. Exegit
time to-the-lord his the-king what of-right it-were he-would-do demanded
rex ab eo super hoc cautionem fidejussoriam. Dixit ille,
the-king from him over this surety of-guarantors said he
se oportere super hoc habere consilium suffraganeorum
himself to-need over this to-have the-counsel of-the-suffragans
et clericorum suorum. Rex sustinuit. Ille discessit, et ex
and of-clerks his the-king allowed-it he departed and from
illa die amplius ad hospitium ejus non venerunt eum videre
that day further to lodging his not came him to-see
barones vel alii milites, intellecto regis animo.
barons or other knights with-understood of-the-king the-mind

Quarta die, ad hospitium domini archiepiscopi venerunt
on-the-fourth day to the-lodging of-the-lord archbishop came
omnes personæ ecclesiasticæ. Cum episcopis semotim, cum
all persons ecclesiastical with the-bishops separately with
abbatibus semotim, super hujusmodi tractatum habuit,
the-abbots separately about of-this-kind discussion he-had
consilium captavit. Consilio nobilis Henrici Wintoniæ
counsel he-sought by-the-counsel of-the-noble Henry of-Winchester
episcopi, ordinatoris ejus, qui ei ad hoc auxilium validum
bishop ordainer his who to-him for this help strong
promisit, tentatum est, si regem pecunia posset delinire;
promised tried it-was whether the-king with-money he-could soothe
et obtulit ei duo millia marcarum. Rex noluit. Fuerunt
and he-offered to-him two thousand of-marks the-king would-not there-were
aliqui de clero, qui dicerent archiepiscopo, quod pro debito
some from the-clergy who said to-the-archbishop that for the-duty
officii suscepti ecclesiam Dei tueretur, personam suam
of-the-office undertaken the-church of-God he-should-protect the-person his
et dignitatem attenderet; regem honorificaret in omnibus,
and dignity regard the-king honor in all-things
salva Dei et ecclesiastici honoris reverentia; nihil adversi
with-saved of-God and of-ecclesiastical honor the-reverence nothing adverse
esse quod timere deberet, cum ei nullum crimen, nulla
to-be which to-fear he-ought since to-him no crime no
turpitudo imponeretur. Cantuariensi ecclesiæ redditus fuerat
baseness was-imputed to-the-Canterbury church returned he-had-been
liber a cancellaria et omni regis sæculari querela; cum
free from the-chancellorship and every of-the-king secular claim since
quælibet etiam abbatia vacans monachum alienum abbatem
any even abbey vacant a-monk foreign as-abbot
sibi electum recipere nolit, nisi immunem ab omni
for-itself elected to-receive would-not unless immune from all

obedientia abbatis ejus sibi dimissum. Aliis, secreto regis
obedience to-abbot his to-it released to-others secretly of-the-king
aure et mente inclinatioribus, longe alia mens erat,
to-the-ear and mind more-inclined far other mind was
dicentibus, "Dominus rex ei in ira molestus est. Ex
saying the-lord king against-him in anger troublesome is from
certis signis animum regis interpretamur hunc esse, quod
certain signs the-mind of-the-king we-interpret this to-be that
dominus archiepiscopus super omnibus, et super reddendo
the-lord archbishop concerning all-things and concerning surrendering
archiepiscopatu, omnino misericordiæ regis se supponat."
the-archbishopric wholly to-the-mercy of-the-king himself should-submit
Inter quos et Hylarius Cicestrensis, in partem regis
among whom also Hilary of-Chichester to the-side of-the-king
inclinatior, ait ei, "Utinam posses esse non archiepiscopus,
more-inclined says to-him would-that you-could be not archbishop
et remanere Thomas." Hic etiam alias dixit de eo, "Omnis
and remain Thomas this-one also elsewhere said about him every
plantatio, quam non plantavit Pater cælestis, eradicabitur;"
plant which not planted the-Father heavenly will-be-uprooted
quasi diceret, quia electionem ejus regis declarata voluntas
as-if he-said because the-election his of-the-king declared will
præcessit. De quo archiepiscopus postea in exsilio suo alicui
preceded about whom the-archbishop afterward in exile his to-someone
dixit, "Et hic inter fratres locum obtinuit Judæ proditoris."
said and this-one among the-brothers the-place obtained of-Judas the-traitor
Postmodumque, ante revocationem et pacem archiepiscopi,
and-afterward before the-recall and peace of-the-archbishop
quasi a Deo percussus, exspiravit. Iste Cicestrensis prosecutus,
as-if by God struck expired that of-Chichester continuing
pro se et aliis quibusdam complicibus suis, ait, "Ex
for himself and certain other accomplices his says from

convictu et familiaritate cancellariæ regem melius
the-companionship and familiarity of-the-chancellorship the-king better
nostis quam nos. Indubitatum est vobis, contendendo
you-know than we undoubted it-is to-you whether-by-contending
an cedendo melius vincatur, In cancellaria ei, et in
or by-yielding better he-be-conquered in the-chancellorship to-him and in
pace et in guerra, probe et laudabiliter officiosus, non
peace and in war uprightly and praiseworthily serviceable not
sine invidia tamen, laudem invenistis; qui vobis tunc
without envy nevertheless praise you-found those-who you then
inviderunt, nunc regem accendunt adversus vos. Quis de
envied now the-king inflame against you who for
tanto ratiocinio, de tam incerta pecunia, posset spondere pro
so-great an-account for so uncertain money could pledge for
vobis? Dicitur regem dixisse quod non amplius in Anglia
you it-is-said the-king to-have-said that not longer in England
simul eritis, ille rex, vos archiepiscopus. Ad misericordiam
together you-will-be he king you archbishop to the-mercy
ejus relinquere omnia tutius est; ne forte, (quod absit), vos
his to-leave all-things safer it-is lest perhaps which far-be-it you
tanquam cancellarium et rationalem suum, pro pecunia sua
as chancellor and accountant his for money his
conventum, tanquam reum repetundarum et fidejussoribus
sued as guilty of-extortion and sureties
carentem retineat, vel manum in vos mittat; unde ecclesia
lacking he-hold or hand on you lay whence the-church
Angliæ dolorem, et regni facies contrahat ruborem."
of-England pain and of-the-kingdom the-face contract blush
Dicebat aliquis, "Absit ut sic sibi et corporis sui saluti
said someone far-be-it that so for-himself and of-body his for-the-safety
consulat, et Cantuariensem ecclesiam, quæ eum sibi elegit,
he-provide and the-Canterbury church which him for-itself chose

inhonoret. Nullus hoc suorum fecit antecessorum; et tamen
dishonor no-one this of-his did predecessors and nevertheless
persecutiones in diebus illis passi sunt. Præterea beneficium
persecutions in the-days those suffered they-have besides the-benefice
archiepiscopale, villas et hujusmodi, in manu domini regis
archiepiscopal the-towns and of-this-kind into the-hand of-the-lord king
forte posset, salvo jure ecclesiæ, refutare ad tempus;
perhaps he-could with-saved the-right of-the-church renounce for a-time
suum officium vero nequaquam." Ita in varias consulti
his-own office however by-no-means so into various those-consulted
distrahebantur sententias; alius sic, alius vero non sic.
were-drawn opinions one so another however not so

THE SIXTH AND SEVENTH DAYS

After a Sunday spent in counsel, Thomas falls sick on the sixth day and stays in his lodging; the next morning he says the mass of Saint Stephen and goes to court carrying his own cross. Gilbert of London urges him to hand it to a clerk, and Roger of York arrives last with his own cross borne before him; the bishops are called in to the king. Herbert counsels excommunication if hands are laid on him, William son of Stephen counsels patience and, writing now, asks the king why a Christian king makes the son judge the father; Robert of Melun asks whether Thomas, if killed, would be a martyr.

Quinta dies, quæ et Dominica erat, tota consiliis dedita est;
the-fifth day which also Sunday was whole to-counsels given was
vix reficiendi hora respirare licebat. Archiepiscopus
scarcely of-refreshing at-the-hour to-breathe was-it-allowed the-archbishop
ab hospitio non discessit.
from the-lodging not departed

Sexta die, languor repente (ut fit) ortus eum moratus
on-the-sixth day a-sickness suddenly as happens having-arisen him delayed
est, quo minus ad curiam iret. Siquidem renes ejus frigore
has by-which less to the-court he-went indeed the-kidneys his with-cold
et dolore contremuerunt; oportuitque cervicalia calefacere, et
and pain shook and-it-behooved pillows to-warm and
vicissim apponere. Quo audito, rex misit omnes comites
in-turn to-apply which heard the-king sent all earls
suos, barones plurimos, responsum captati consilii quærens
his barons very-many the-answer of-the-taken of-counsel asking
ab eo, et proponens, velletne de reddenda ratione
from him and proposing whether-he-wished concerning rendering account
receptorum tempore cancellariæ de vacantibus ecclesiis
of-things-received in-the-time of-the-chancellorship concerning vacant churches
fidejussoriam præstare cautionem, et super hoc curiæ suæ
of-sureties to-give a-guarantee and over this of-court his
stare judicio. Respondit per episcopos archiepiscopus,
to-abide by-the-judgment answered through the-bishops the-archbishop
quod si liceret ei pro corporis adversa valetudine, in
that if it-were-allowed to-him for of-body adverse health on
crastino ad curiam veniret, facturus quod deberet.
the-morrow to the-court he-would-come about-to-do what he-ought
In crastino, mane ad quoddam altare sancti Stephani
on the-morrow in-the-morning at a-certain altar of-saint Stephen
protomartyris celebravit missam, Etenim sederunt principes.
the-protomartyr he-celebrated mass For sat princes
Illius missæ cantationem statim insidiantes ei regis delatores
of-that mass the-chant at-once lying-in-wait-for him of-the-king the-informers
ei nuntiant, maligne interpretantes, quod pro se, quasi
to-him announce maliciously interpreting that for himself as-if

altero Stephano protomartyre, contra regem et suos iniquos
another Stephen protomartyr against the-king and his-men unjust
eum persequentes, archiepiscopus illam missam celebraret.
him persecuting the-archbishop that mass celebrated
Post ad curiam vadit. Obiter præcedenti eum ait
after to the-court he-goes on-the-way to-the-one-preceding him he-says
Alexandro, crucis suæ bajulo, "Melius egissem, si in
to-Alexander of-cross his the-bearer better I-would-have-done if in
nostris instrumentis venissem." Proposuerat enim, quod nudis
our vestments I-had-come he-had-proposed for that with-bare
pedibus incedens, et revestitus, et crucem bajulans, ad regem
feet walking and vested and the-cross carrying to the-king
intraret, ei pro pace ecclesiæ supplicaturus. Sed ab
he-would-enter to-him for the-peace of-the-church about-to-supplicate but from
hoc proposito eum clerici sui averterunt, neque quod crucem
this purpose him clerks his turned nor that the-cross
tollere vellet putaverunt. Intraturus in aulam castri, cum
to-take-up he-wished did-they-think about-to-enter into the-hall of-the-castle when
equo descendisset, crucem, quam præviam bajulaverat
from-the-horse he-had-dismounted the-cross which before-him he-had-carried
Alexander Wallensis, in manus accepit. Aderat ibi ad ostium
Alexander the-Welshman into hands took was-present there at the-door
aulæ episcopus prædictus Gilebertus Londoniensis; cui
of-the-hall the-bishop aforesaid Gilbert of-London to-whom
Hugo de Nunant, quidam archidiaconus Lixoviensis, qui cum
Hugh of Nonant a-certain archdeacon of-Lisieux who with
archiepiscopo venerat et de domo ejus erat, "Domine præsul
the-archbishop had-come and of house his was lord prelate
Londoniensis, ut quod sustines quod crucem ipse bajulat?"
of-London why what you-endure that the-cross he-himself carries
Episcopus, "Bone homo, semper fuit stultus, et semper
the-bishop good man always he-was a-fool and always

erit." Omnes ei ingresso viam cedebant. In cameram
will-be all to-him having-entered the-way yielded into the-chamber
se recepit; loco solito sedit; episcopi juxta eum,
himself he-betook in-place accustomed he-sat the-bishops beside him
Londoniensis propius. Qui aderant, obstupuere omnes, et
the-London-one nearer those-who were-present were-astonished all and
in eum oculi omnium intendebant. Episcopus Londoniensis
on him the-eyes of-all were-intent the-bishop of-London
suadebat, ut crucem uni clericorum suorum traderet;
urged that the-cross to-one of-clerks his he-should-hand
paratum eum dicebat, quasi vellet totum regnum turbare.
prepared him he-said as-if he-wished the-whole kingdom to-disturb
"Crucem," ait Londoniensis, "in manibus tenetis; si modo
the-cross says the-London-one in hands you-hold if now
rex gladium suum accipiat, en bene ornatum regem, bene
the-king sword his should-take behold well equipped a-king well
ornatum archiepiscopum." Archiepiscopus, "Si fieri posset,
equipped an-archbishop the-archbishop if to-be-done it-could
meum," inquit, "esset semper eam in manibus propriis
mine he-says it-would-be always it in hands own
ferre; nunc autem scio quid faciam, equidem ut pacem
to-carry now however I-know what I-shall-do indeed that the-peace
Dei conservem personæ meæ et Anglorum ecclesiæ. Dicis
of-God I-may-keep for-person my and of-the-English for-the-church you-say
ut libet; tu si hic ego sis, aliter sentias. Si autem
as you-please you if here I you-were otherwise you-would-feel if however
dominus rex, ut dicis, modo gladium acciperet, hoc utique
the-lord king as you-say now the-sword should-take this certainly
signum pacis non esset." Forte memor erat archiepiscopus,
a-sign of-peace not would-be perhaps mindful was the-archbishop

in quam arcto res fuerat apud Clarendonam, quando,
in how narrow the-matter had-been at Clarendon when
erumpentibus lacrymis, nuncii regis ad eum venerunt.
with-bursting-forth tears the-messengers of-the-king to him came
Vocati ad regem omnes episcopi multam ibi introrsus moram
called to the-king all the-bishops long there within delay
faciunt; et cum eis Rogerus ille archiepiscopus Eboraci,
make and with them Roger that archbishop of-York
qui ultimus ad curiam veniebat, ut conspectior ingrederetur,
who last to the-court came that more-conspicuous he-might-enter
et de consilio illo regis esse non videretur; qui et suam
and of counsel that of-the-king to-be not he-might-seem who also his
e regione anticrucem sibi præferri faciebat, quasi
from opposite counter-cross before-himself to-be-carried made as-if

"pila minantia pilis."
"javelins threatening javelins."

Prohibitus etiam a domino papa, litteris sibi emissis, ne
forbidden also by the-lord pope by-letters to-him sent that-not
in provincia Cantuariensi crucem antesignatius ejus ferret;
in the-province of-Canterbury the-cross in-front his he-carry
sed accepta prohibitione, de falsa domini Cantuariensis
but with-received prohibition concerning false of-the-lord of-Canterbury
suggestione appellationem interposuerat, qua se tutum
suggestion an-appeal he-had-interposed by-which himself safe
gerebat. Nec mirum, si dolor, et gemitus, et contritio cordis
he-held nor wonder if pain and groaning and contrition of-heart
obsedissent archiepiscopum: nam audierat quod ea die vel
had-besieged the-archbishop for he-had-heard that on-that day either
per sententiam qualemcunque caperetur, vel si hoc evaderet,
through a-sentence whatever he-would-be-seized or if this he-escaped

facta contra eum pravorum conjuratione, occideretur,
with-made against him of-the-wicked conspiracy he-would-be-killed
congressus, quasi rege nesciente. Interim in silentio clam
attacked as-if with-the-king not-knowing meanwhile in silence secretly
ait archiepiscopo suus in divina pagina magister Herbertus,
says to-the-archbishop his in the-divine page master Herbert
"Domine, si forte miserint manus impias in vos, in
lord if perhaps they-shall-have-laid hands impious on you in
promptu habeatis excommunicationis in eos ferre sententiam;
readiness have of-excommunication against them to-bring the-sentence
ut tamen spiritus salvus fiat in die Domini." Cui
that nevertheless the-spirit saved be in the-day of-the-Lord to-whom
Willelmus filius Stephani, qui ad pedes archiepiscopi assidebat,
William son of-Stephen who at the-feet of-the-archbishop sat
aliquantulum clare dixit, ut audiret archiepiscopus, "Absit hoc
somewhat clearly said that might-hear the-archbishop far-be this
ab eo; non ita fecerunt sancti apostoli et martyres Dei, cum
from him not so did the-holy apostles and martyrs of-God when
caperentur et raperentur sublimes; potius, si hoc contigerit,
they-were-seized and snatched aloft rather if this shall-have-happened
oret pro eis et ignoscat, et in sua patientia animam
let-him-pray for them and pardon and in his patience soul
suam possideat. Si enim eum pro causa justitiæ et libertatis
his possess if for him for the-cause of-justice and of-liberty
ecclesiasticæ pati contigerit, præstante Domino, anima
ecclesiastical to-suffer it-shall-have-happened with-granting the-Lord soul
ejus erit in requie, memoria in benedictione. Si sententiam
his will-be in rest memory in blessing if a-sentence
in eos proferret, videretur omnibus quod ex ira et
against them he-should-pronounce it-would-seem to-all that from anger and
impatientia hoc quod posset in ultionem sui fecisset. Et
impatience this which he-could in vengeance of-himself he-had-done and

proculdubio contra decreta ageret; ut scribit beatus Gregorius
without-doubt against the-decrees he-would-act as writes blessed Gregory
Januario archiepiscopo: 'Nil te ostendis de cælestibus cogitare,
to-Januarius archbishop nothing you show about heavenly-things to-think
sed terrenam te habere conversationem significas, dum pro
but earthly yourself to-have conversation you-signify while for
vindicta propriæ injuriæ, quod sacris regulis prohibetur,
vengeance of-own injury which by-the-sacred rules is-forbidden
maledictionem anathematis invexisti.'" Johannes Planeta,
the-curse of-anathema you-have-brought-in John Planeta
hæc audiens, lacrymas erumpentes laborabat retinere.
these-things hearing tears bursting labored to-hold-back
Similiter et Radulphus de Dicito, archidiaconus Londoniensis
likewise also Ralph of Diceto archdeacon of-the-London
ecclesiæ, plurimum ea die ibi lacrymatus est. Archiepiscopus
church very-much on-that day there wept has the-archbishop
talia audiens conferebat in corde suo. Post modicum,
such-things hearing pondered in heart his after a-little
idem Willelmus filius Stephani, volens loqui archiepiscopo,
the-same William son of-Stephen wishing to-speak to-the-archbishop
et a quodam marescallo regis, qui cum virga sua
and by a-certain marshal of-the-king who with rod his
astabat, prohibitus, dicente quod nullus ei loqueretur, post
stood-by forbidden with-saying that no-one to-him should-speak after
intervallum, intendens in archiepiscopum, erectione oculorum et
an-interval intent on the-archbishop by-the-raising of-the-eyes and
motu labiorum signum fecit ei, quod crucis suæ exemplum,
the-motion of-the-lips a-sign made to-him that of-cross his the-example
et Crucifixi, quam tenebat, imaginem respiceret, et quod in
and of-the-Crucified which he-held the-image he-should-regard and that in
oratione esset. Archiepiscopus signum illud intellexit bene,
prayer he-should-be the-archbishop sign that understood well

et fecit sic, confortatus in Domino. Quod, post plures annos,
and did so strengthened in the-Lord which after several years
archiepiscopus in Galliis exsul apud Sanctum Benedictum
the-archbishop in the-Gauls an-exile at Saint Benedict
supra Ligerim, eidem Willelmo, ad dominum papam eunti,
upon the-Loire to-the-same William to the-lord pope going
inter cæteram angustiarum suarum recordationem memoravit.
among the-other of-distresses his recollection mentioned
Sed, rex Christiane, quid agis? Ratione baroniæ et
but king Christian what are-you-doing by-reason of-barony and
possessionis, in curia tua laica judicare facis filius patrem,
of-possession in court your lay to-judge you-make the-son the-father
subditus archiepiscopum, ovis pastorem, cum in curia laica
the-subject the-archbishop the-sheep the-shepherd when in a-court lay
nec minimus clericus respondere teneatur obnoxius? Ais
not-even the-least clerk to-answer be-held bound you-say
non, sed rex baronem. Ad quod: Majus est in te quod
not but the-king the-baron to which greater is in you that
Christianus es, quod ovis Dei es, quod filius adoptionis
Christian you-are that a-sheep of-God you-are that son of-adoption
Dei es, quam quod rex es. Et in illo majus est, quod
of-God you-are than that king you-are and in him greater is that
archiepiscopus, quod vicarius Jesu Christi, quam quod baro
archbishop that vicar of-Jesus Christ than that baron
tuus est. Attende status. Minoris est ejus possessio quam
your he-is regard the-statuses lesser is his possession than
ejus ordo, sed præjudicat majus minori, dignius indigniori.
his order but prejudges the-greater the-lesser the-worthier the-less-worthy
Ergo fortior et efficacior debet esse ordo, ut eum a foro
therefore stronger and more-effective ought to-be the-order that him from court
tuo eximat, quam baronia et possessio ut eum ibi obnoxium
your it-exempt than the-barony and possession that him there bound

retineat. Et, si altius attendas ipsam ejus possessionem,
it-retain and if more-deeply you-regard the-very his possession
non est ejus sed ecclesiæ. Fuit sæcularis: data Deo, facta
not it-is his but of-the-church it-was secular given to-God made
est ecclesiastica. Absorpta est in ea sæcularitas a titulo
it-is ecclesiastical absorbed is in it secularity by the-title
divini juris. Unde nec ratione ejus sæculari judicio tenetur
of-divine right whence neither by-reason of-it to-secular judgment is-held
archiepiscopus obnoxius. Itaque nec ratione personæ, nec
the-archbishop bound so neither by-reason of-person nor
ratione rei quam possidebat, tenetur judicio curiæ
by-reason of-thing which he-possessed he-is-held by-the-judgment of-the-court
judicandus. Archiepiscopus reservandus est judicio solius
to-be-judged the-archbishop to-be-reserved is for-the-judgment alone
papæ; papa, solius Dei. Si quid habebas adversus eum
of-the-pope the-pope alone of-God if anything you-had against him
quod concordiæ et caritatis interventu non posset mitigari,
which of-concord and of-charity by-the-intervention not could be-mitigated
domino papæ segregasse debueras; juri ab eo avocatus
to-the-lord pope to-have-referred you-ought for-justice by him called-away
nunciis nostris episcopis et clericis ibi responderet: vel a
to-envoys our bishops and clerks there he-would-answer or from
latere domini papæ in regnum vestrum impetrasses
the-side of-the-lord pope into kingdom your you-should-have-obtained
mitti legatos cum judiciariæ potestatis plenitudine. Episcopus
to-be-sent legates with of-judicial power fullness the-bishop
Herefordensis, magister Robertus de Milidono, qui amplius
of-Hereford master Robert of Melun who more
quam quadraginta annos Parisius docuerat dialecticam
than forty years at-Paris had-taught dialectic
et divinam paginam, una dierum in quodam consessu
and the-divine page one of-the-days in a-certain session

episcoporum aliquot et plurium clericorum lacrymabilem
of-bishops some and of-many clerks a-tearful
quæstionem proposuit, “Si contingat,” inquiens, “(quod absit),
question proposed if it-happen saying which far-be-it
dominum archiepiscopum in hac causa pro libertate ecclesiæ
the-lord archbishop in this cause for the-liberty of-the-church
occidi, numquid martyrem eum habebimus? Pro matre fide
to-be-killed whether a-martyr him shall-we-hold for mother faith
occumbere est esse martyrem.” Ad quod aliquis, “Proculdubio
to-fall is to-be a-martyr to which someone without-doubt
si, (quod absit), ita contingeret, dicendum esset eum
if which far-be-it so it-happened to-be-said it-would-be him
martyrii coronam gloriosissime adeptum. Non sola fides
of-martyrdom the-crown most-gloriously to-have-gained not alone faith
est causa martyrii; sed plures sunt causæ, veritas, libertas
is the-cause of-martyrdom but several are causes truth the-liberty
ecclesiæ, caritas patriæ vel proximorum, unaque sufficiens
of-the-church the-love of-the-fatherland or of-neighbors and-one sufficient
causa, dum Deus sit in causa. Beatus Joannes Baptista de
cause while God be in the-cause blessed John the-Baptist about
fidei articulis cum Herode vel Herodiade non tractaverat, sed
of-faith the-articles with Herod or Herodias not had-dealt but
pro veritate occubuit, quia dixit, ‘Non licet tibi habere
for truth fell because he-said not it-is-lawful for-you to-have
uxorem fratris tui.’ Similiter et iste dicit, ‘Non licet tibi,
the-wife of-brother your likewise also this-one says not it-is-lawful for-you
rex, ecclesiam hac opprimere servitute, ut constitutionibus
king the-church with-this to-oppress servitude that by-constitutions
tuis, quæ sunt contra canones, ecclesiastici viri, ordinati
your which are against the-canons ecclesiastical men ordained
Dei, teneantur obnoxii.’ Item, septem fratres, inspectante et
of-God be-held bound likewise the-seven brothers with-watching and

hortante matre ut starent viriliter, martyrii genera diversa
exhorting the-mother that they-stand manfully of-martyrdom kinds various
passi sunt, quia de esu carnis porcinæ mandatum
suffered have because concerning the-eating of-flesh of-swine the-command
Dei et observantias patrum noluerunt prævaricari. Beatus
of-God and the-observances of-the-fathers they-would-not transgress blessed
quoque Lanfrancus archiepiscopus sanctum Anselmum, tunc
also Lanfranc archbishop saint Anselm then
abbatem, consuluit de sancto Alfego, si inter martyres
abbot consulted about saint Alphege whether among the-martyrs
Dei esset habendus; proponens quod ideo ab alienigenis
of-God he-was to-be-held proposing that for-this-reason by foreign
hostibus, Angliam navigio ingressis, esset occisus, quia
enemies England by-ship having-entered he-had-been killed because
aurum quod filiis et hominibus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ
the-gold which on-the-sons and men of-the-Canterbury church
indixerant noluerit dare. Beatus Anselmus: 'In illo
they-had-imposed he-would-not give blessed Anselm in that-matter
præcipuus est habendus, qui pro vitæ suæ defensione vel
outstanding is to-be-held he-who for of-life his the-defense or
prolongatione noluit filios et proximos suos vexari in
prolongation would-not the-sons and neighbors his to-be-harassed in
æris, quod hostes indixerant, solutione. Pro libertate quidem
of-money which the-enemies had-imposed the-payment for liberty indeed
et salute proximorum occubuit. Majorem hac caritatem
and the-safety of-neighbors he-fell greater than-this charity
nemo habet, quam ut animam suam ponat quis pro amicis
no-one has than that soul his lay-down one for friends
suis. Et titulus innocentiæ, ubi nullum certamen præcessit,
his and the-title of-innocence where no contest preceded

martyrem facit.' Unde et Abel dicitur primus coronatus in
a-martyr makes whence also Abel is-called first crowned in
martyrio. Sane etiam paganorum hæc sana fuit sententia:
martyrdom truly even of-the-pagans this sound was opinion

"… acerba fata Romanos agunt
"… bitter fates the-Romans drive
Scelusque fraternæ necis:
And-the-crime fraternal of-death:
Ut immerentis fluxit in terram Remi
Since of-the-guiltless flowed onto the-earth of-Remus
Sacer nepotibus cruor."
Sacred to-the-descendants blood."

THE ARCHBISHOP'S ANSWER

The clerks and knights speak of contempt of the world while Thomas sits alone with his cross. The bishops tell the king he rebuked them for condemning him, and the barons come to ask whether he stands by his appeal and his prohibition, and whether he will give sureties for the chancellorship's account. He answers that his fealty is sworn saving his obedience to God, that he was released from all secular claims before his consecration, that he cannot give sureties for an account he was never summoned to render, and that he appeals to the pope. Courtiers mutter that King William and Geoffrey of Anjou knew how to tame their clerks.

Deus bone, quam multi clericorum et militum, qui aderant,
God good how many of-the-clerks and of-the-knights who were-present
veras et luculentas de contemptu mundi proferebant
true and brilliant about contempt of-the-world uttered
sententias, cum solus ibi crucem tenens sedebat archiepiscopus,
sentences when alone there the-cross holding sat the-archbishop

et omnes suffraganei episcopi ejus et comites et barones ad
and all suffragan bishops his and earls and barons to
regem evocati essent, et elongati ab eo. Dicebat aliquis, "O
the-king summoned had-been and withdrawn from him said some-one O
sæculum captiosum! cujus, tanquam maris tranquilli, quamvis
world captious whose as of-a-sea calm although
aliquando serena sit superficies, intus tamen tempestates
sometimes serene be the-surface within nevertheless storms
habet absconditas." Alius aliquis: "Omnium rerum vicissitudo
it-has hidden another some-one of-all things change
est. Amor Domini feudum non est. O honores mundi!
there-is the-love of-a-lord a-fief not is O honors of-the-world
in quibus etiam quæ sperantur timenda sunt."
in which even the-things-which are-hoped to-be-feared are
Episcopi introrsus cum rege colloquentes inter cætera
the-bishops within with the-king conferring among other-things
dixerunt ei, quod ipsa die cum venissent ad
said to-him that on-that-very day when they-had-come to
archiepiscopum, malæ tractationis redarguti sunt ab eo, quod
the-archbishop of-bad treatment rebuked were by him that
scilicet nuper eum inimicitius tractassent cum baronibus,
namely lately him more-hostilely they-had-treated with the-barons
et severius justo judicassent, et inaudito more; quoniam
and more-severely than-just had-judged and in-unheard-of manner since
etsi pro una absentia, quam supersisam regis dicunt,
even-if for one absence which oversight of-the-king they-call
non tamen contumacia judicari deberet, non deberent eum
not nevertheless by-contumacy to-be-judged he-ought not they-ought him
condemnasse ad misericordiam regis, in pœnam pecuniariam
to-have-condemned to the-mercy of-the-king to the-penalty pecuniary
omnium bonorum mobilium. Hoc enim modo destrui
of-all goods movable in-this for way to-be-destroyed

posset Cantuariensis ecclesia, si rex immisericors eum
could the-Canterbury church if the-king merciless him
obdurare vellet, et ipsis episcopis baronibusque captiosum
to-harden wished and for-themselves the-bishops and-barons captious
tale in tali casu posset esse judicium. Sed constitutum esse in
such in such case could be judgment but established to-be in
singulis comitatibus summam unam pecuniæ, condemnatis in
single counties a-sum one of-money for-the-condemned to
pœnam pecuniariam ad misericordiam regis solvendam. In
the-penalty pecuniary at the-mercy of-the-king to-be-paid in
Londonia siquidem centum solidi constituti sunt. In Cantia,
London indeed a-hundred shillings established are in Kent
quæ, mari propius admota, piratas a littore Angliæ habet
which to-the-sea nearer brought pirates from the-shore of-England has
arcere, et primum sibi ictum in bellis contra hostes
to-keep-off and the-first for-itself blow in wars against enemies
alienigenas vindicat, quo majus ei est onus, major
foreign claims by-as-much-as greater on-it is the-burden greater
est ei data libertas; et ibi quadraginta solidi constituti
is to-it given liberty and there forty shillings established
sunt taliter condemnatis. Ipseque, domicilium et sedem
are thus for-the-condemned and-he-himself residence and seat
suam habens in Cantia, saltem ad legem Cantiæ judicari et
his having in Kent at-least by the-law of-Kent to-be-judged and
taxari deberet. Dicebant etiam episcopi quod adhuc ipsa
to-be-assessed ought said also the-bishops that still on-that-very
die, infra decem dies datæ sententiæ, eos ad dominum
day within ten days of-the-given sentence them to the-lord
papam appellaverat; et ne de cætero eum judicarent
pope he-had-appealed and that-not about the-rest him they-judge

pro sæculari querela, quæ de tempore ante archiepiscopum
for secular claim which from the-time before archbishop
ei moveretur, auctoritate domini papæ prohibuerat.
to-him might-be-moved by-the-authority of-the-lord pope he-had-forbidden
Motus rex misit ei comites suos et barones plurimos,
moved the-king sent to-him earls his and barons very-many
quærere ab eo, si hujus appellationis et prohibitionis
to-ask from him whether of-this appeal and prohibition
se gereret auctorem; maxime cum homo ejus ligius esset,
himself he-held the-author especially since man his liege he-was
tenereturque ei et communi sacramento et speciali apud
and-was-bound to-him both by-common oath and by-special at
Clarendonam stipulatione in verbo veritatis, quod regales suas
Clarendon stipulation in the-word of-truth that royal his
dignitates in bona fide, sine dolo malo, et legitime conservaret.
dignities in good faith without fraud evil and lawfully he-would-keep
Inter quas hæc una est, ut episcopi ejus omnibus assint
among which this one is that bishops his at-all be-present
judiciis, præterquam judicio sanguinis. Quærere etiam ab
judgments except at-the-judgment of-blood to-ask also from
eo, si vellet cavere, datis vadibus, de ratiocinio
him whether he-wished to-give-surety with-given pledges about the-account
cancellariæ reddendo, et super hoc curiæ ejus stare
of-the-chancellorship to-be-rendered and over this of-court his to-abide
judicio. Ad quod ille, respecta Crucifixi imagine, animum
by-the-judgment to which he with-regarded of-the-Crucified the-image mind
et vultum firmans, et residens, ut suam archiepiscopi
and face steadying and remaining-seated that his of-archbishop
conservaret dignitatem, luculentam et æqualem, ut nec
he-might-keep dignity brilliant and even so-that not-even
in uno verbo subsisteret, orationem habuit hujusmodi.
at one word he-stopped a-speech had of-this-kind

"Viri fratres, domini regis comites et barones, ego
men brothers of-the-lord king earls and barons I
equidem domino nostro regi ligio, homanagio, fidelitate
indeed to-lord our king by-liege homage by-fealty
et sacramento adstrictus sum; sed sacramentum maxime
and by-oath bound am but an-oath especially
sacerdotale comites habet justitiam et æquitatem. Honori
priestly as-companions has justice and equity to-the-honor
et fidelitati domini regis teneor, tam devota quam
and fealty of-the-lord king I-am-bound with-so devoted as
debita subjectione, propter Deum obsequium in omnibus
due subjection on-account-of God service in all-things
præstare, salva Dei obedientia, et dignitate ecclesiastica,
to-render with-saved of-God the-obedience and the-dignity ecclesiastical
et personæ meæ honore archiepiscopali, litem declinans, ut
and of-person my the-honor archiepiscopal the-suit declining as
qui neque ad exponendum ratiocinium, neque ad causam
one-who neither for setting-forth an-account nor for case
aliquam, præterquam ad causam Johannis, vocationem habui,
any except for the-case of-John summons have-had
neque alii in causa responsioni faciendæ vel judicio
nor to-another in case for-an-answer to-be-made or a-judgment
audiendo teneor hic obnoxius. Fateor et recolo me plurimas
to-be-heard am-I-held here bound I-confess and recall myself very-many
administrationes et dignitates a domino rege suscepisse; in
administrations and dignities from the-lord king to-have-received in
quibus ei fideliter deservivi, citra et ultra mare: et etiam,
which him faithfully I-served on-this-side and beyond the-sea and even
reditibus meis propriis omnibus in servitio ejus expensis,
with-revenues my own all in the-service his spent
quod gaudeo, æris plurimi debitorem me creditoribus
which I-rejoice-in of-money much a-debtor myself to-creditors

obligavi. Cum autem ex permissione divina, et domini regis
I-bound when however from the-permission divine and of-the-lord king
gratia, archiepiscopus electus consecrari deberem, ante
by-the-favor archbishop elected to-be-consecrated I-ought before
consecrationem a rege immunis dimissus sum, et ecclesiæ
the-consecration by the-king immune released I-was and to-the-church
Cantuariensi redditus liber, quietus, et solutus ab omni
of-Canterbury returned free quit and released from every
regis querela sæculari, licet modo in ira hoc diffiteatur;
of-the-king claim secular although now in anger this he-deny
quod probe plurimi vestrum noverunt, omnesque ecclesiasticæ
which well very-many of-you know and-all the-ecclesiastical
regni hujus personæ. Vosque hujus veritatis conscios oro,
of-kingdom this persons and-you of-this truth conscious I-pray
obsecro, et obtestor, ut domino regi hæc suggeratis, contra
I-beseech and I-adjure that to-the-lord king these-things you-suggest against
quem testes nominare, etiamsi est licitum, non est tutum,
whom witnesses to-name even-if it-is lawful not it-is safe
nec modo opus est, quia non litigo. Post consecrationem,
nor now need is because not I-litigate after consecration
disposui honorem et onus susceptum opera et opere
I-planned the-honor and burden undertaken by-works and by-work
excolere, et ecclesiæ Dei aliquatenus prodesse, cui
to-cultivate and to-the-church of-God in-some-measure to-be-of-use over-which
conspiciebar præesse. Qua in re si non datur prodire, si
I-was-seen to-preside which in matter if not it-is-given to-advance if
nequeo proficere, reflante adversitate, non domino regi,
I-cannot to-make-progress with-blowing-against adversity not to-the-lord king
non alii cuiquam, sed principaliter peccatis meis id imputo.
not to-other anyone but chiefly to-sins my this I-impute
Potens est Deus augere gratiam cui et cum voluerit.
able is God to-increase grace to-whom and when he-shall-have-wished

"De reddendo ratiocinio fidejussores dare non possum. Omnes
about rendering the-account sureties to-give not I-can all
episcopos et opitulares amicos meos jam hic obligavi; neque
the-bishops and helping friends my already here I-have-bound nor
ad hoc cogi debeo, quia mihi hoc adjudicatum non
to this to-be-compelled I-ought because to-me this adjudged not
est. Neque in causa sum ratiocinii, quia ad causam illam
was nor in the-case am-I of-the-account because to case that
non vocatus fui, neque aliquam habui ad causam citationem,
not summoned I-was nor any had-I to case summons
præterquam ad causam cum Johanne Marescallo. Quod autem
except to the-case with John the-Marshal what however
de prohibitione facta hodie episcopis seu appellatione mihi
about the-prohibition made today to-the-bishops or appeal me
instatis, recognosco equidem me coepiscopis meis dixisse,
you-press I-acknowledge indeed myself to-fellow-bishops my to-have-said
quod pro una absentia, non tamen contumacia, severius
that for one absence not nevertheless contumacy more-severely
justo me condemnaverunt, et præter morem et exemplum
than-just me they-condemned and beyond the-custom and example
longe retro vetustatis. Unde et eos appellavi, prohibens ne
far back of-antiquity whence also them I-appealed forbidding that-not
de sæculari querela temporis ante susceptum archiepiscopium
about secular claim of-the-time before the-assumed archbishopric
me iterum, hac pendente appellatione, judicent; et adhuc
me again with-this pending appeal they-judge and still
appello; et tam personam meam quam Cantuariensem
I-appeal and as-much person my as the-Canterbury
ecclesiam sub Dei et domini papæ colloco protectione."
church under of-God and of-the-lord pope I-place the-protection

Finierat: proceres alii cum silentio ad regem revertebantur,
he-had-finished the-nobles some with silence to the-king returned
verba ejus pensiculantes et examinantes. Alii dicebant,
words his pondering and examining others said
"Ecce prohibitionis ex ore ejus audivimus blasphemiam."
behold of-prohibition from the-mouth his we-have-heard blasphemy
Aliqui baronum et stipatorum lateris regii, obtorto collo
some of-the-barons and of-the-attendants of-the-side royal with-twisted neck
incedentes, et obliquis oculis respicientes eum, loquebantur
going and with-sidelong eyes looking-at him spoke
inter se aliquantulum clare, et ut ipse audiret:
among themselves somewhat clearly and that he-himself might-hear
"Rex Willelmus, qui subegit Angliam, novit clericos suos
king William who subdued England knew clerks his
domare. Ipsum fratrem suum Odonem, Baiocensem episcopum,
to-tame the-very brother his Odo of-Bayeux bishop
rebellem sibi, cepit. Stigandum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum,
rebellious to-him he-seized Stigand of-Canterbury archbishop
nigranti injectum puteo, perpetuo carceri damnavit. Pater
into-a-black thrown pit to-perpetual prison condemned the-father
etiam domini nostri regis, Goffridus, comes Andegaviæ, qui
also of-the-lord our king Geoffrey count of-Anjou who
et Normanniam in manu forti sibi subdidit, Arnulfum
also Normandy in hand strong to-himself subjected Arnulf
Sagiensem electum et plures clericorum ejus fecit evirari,
of-Sées elect and several of-the-clerks his made to-be-castrated
et eunuchatorum ante se in pelvi afferri membra;
and of-the-eunuchs before himself in a-basin to-be-brought the-members
quia citra assensum ejus electioni Sagiensis ecclesiæ de
because without assent his to-the-election of-the-Sées church about
se factæ assensum præbuit, et se electum gerebat."
himself made assent he-gave and himself elect bore

The king orders the bishops to judge him with the barons; caught by his prohibition, they appeal against him to the pope while obeying it, he answers that nothing at Clarendon was granted but saving the Church's honor, and the king excuses them. The earl of Leicester comes to pronounce the sentence; Thomas refuses to hear judgment from his sons and walks out carrying his cross while courtiers jeer. At Saint Andrew's William calls it a bitter day and he answers that the last will be bitterer; the king forbids any harm to him, his knights take leave of him, and the king puts off his answer on a safe-conduct.

Rex, responso archiepiscopi accepto, instat episcopis,
the-king with-the-answer of-the-archbishop received presses the-bishops
præcipiens et obtestans per homanagium et fidelitatem
ordering and adjuring by the-homage and fealty
sibi debitam et juratam, ut simul cum baronibus de
to-himself owed and sworn that together with the-barons about
archiepiscopo sibi dictent sententiam. Illi se excusare
the-archbishop for-him they-dictate the-sentence they themselves to-excuse
cœperunt per interpositam archiepiscopi prohibitionem. Rex
began by the-interposed of-the-archbishop prohibition the-king
non adquievit; asserens, quod non teneat hæc ejus simplex
not acquiesced asserting that not holds this his simple
prohibitio contra hoc quod Clarendonæ factum et juratum
prohibition against that which at-Clarendon done and sworn
fuerat. E contra regi ingerunt episcopi, quod apponere,
had-been on-the contrary on-the-king urge the-bishops that to-add
et in quo super eos manum aggravare, possit archiepiscopus,
and in which over them the-hand to-make-heavy can the-archbishop
si ab eis prohibitioni et appellationi paritum non fuerit;
if by them to-the-prohibition and the-appeal obeyed not it-shall-have-been
et pro bono regis et regni, velle et debere
and for the-good of-the-king and of-the-kingdom to-wish and to-be-obliged

prohibitioni factæ adquiescere. Tandem rege suaso,
to-the-prohibition made to-acquiesce at-length with-the-king persuaded
episcopi captato consilio suo ad archiepiscopum intrant.
the-bishops with-taken counsel their to the-archbishop enter
Flebat Robertus Lincolniensis, et quidam alii lacrymas
wept Robert of-Lincoln and certain others tears
vix continebant. Tunc præfatus Cicestriensis sic orsus est:
scarcely held-back then the-aforesaid of-Chichester thus began has
"Domine archipræsul, salva gratia vestra, habemus quod de
lord archprelate with-saved favor your we-have what about
vobis plurimum queramur. Plurimum nos episcopos vestros
you very-much we-complain very-much us bishops your
offendistis; in angiportu magno nos inclusistis, quasi inter
you-have-offended in a-narrow-alley great us you-have-shut as-if between
malleum et incudem nos misistis, hac prohibitione vestra;
the-hammer and the-anvil us you-have-put by-this prohibition your
cui si non paruerimus, inobedientiæ, si paruerimus,
which if not we-shall-have-obeyed of-disobedience if we-shall-have-obeyed
constitutionis et offensæ regiæ, vinculis illaqueamur. Nuper
of-the-constitution and of-offense royal by-the-chains we-are-ensnared lately
enim apud Clarendonam vobiscum congregati, a domino rege
for at Clarendon with-you gathered by the-lord king
conventi fuimus de observandis regalibus suis dignitatibus; et
sued we-were about to-be-observed royal his dignities and
ne forte hæsitare possemus, ipsas de quibus loquebatur
lest perhaps to-hesitate we-could the-very-ones about which he-spoke
consuetudines suas regales scriptas nobis ostendit. Tandem
customs his royal written to-us he-showed at-length
illis spopondimus assensum, promisimus observantiam; vos
to-them we-pledged assent we-promised observance you
primo loco, nos suffraganei vestri postmodum, ex vestro
in-the-first place we suffragans your afterward by your

præcepto. Ad hæc cum super hoc exigeret a nobis dominus
command to these when over this demanded from us the-lord
rex cautionem juratoriam, et per sigillorum nostrorum
king a-guarantee sworn and by of-seals our
impressionem, diximus, sufficere sibi debere pro sacramento
the-impression we-said to-suffice for-him it-ought for the-oath
sacerdotali, quod dicebamus ei, in verbo veritatis, regales
priestly which we-said to-him in the-word of-truth royal
suas illas dignitates nos observaturos in bona fide, sine dolo
his those dignities we about-to-observe in good faith without fraud
malo, et legitime. Dominus rex persuasus adquievit. Quo
evil and lawfully the-lord king persuaded acquiesced which
contra nunc nos venire compellitis, interdicendo ne ei,
against now us to-come you-compel by-forbidding that-not to-him
quod de nobis exigit, adesse possimus judicio. Ab
which from us he-demands to-be-present we-can at-the-judgment from
hoc gravamine, et ne quid ad læsionem nostram addatis,
this burden and lest anything to injury our you-add
dominum papam appellamus, et hac vice prohibitioni
the-lord pope we-appeal and on-this occasion to-prohibition
vestræ præstamus obedientiam."
your we-render obedience
Archiepiscopus: "Quod dicitis, audio, et Deo propitio
the-archbishop what you-say I-hear and with-God propitious
appellationis prosecutioni adero. Clarendonæ autem nihil
of-the-appeal at-the-prosecution I-shall-be-present at-Clarendon however nothing
concessum est a me, vel a vobis per me, nisi salvo
granted was by me or by you through me except with-saved
honore ecclesiastico. Ut enim vos ipsi dicitis, has tres ibi
honor ecclesiastical as for you yourselves say these three there
retinuimus determinationes, in bona fide, sine dolo malo, et
we-retained determinations in good faith without fraud evil and

legitime; per quas salvæ sunt ecclesiis nostris dignitates, quas
lawfully through which saved are to-churches our the-dignities which
e jure pontificio habemus. Quod enim contra fidem ecclesiæ
from right pontifical we-have what for against the-faith to-the-church
debitam et contra leges Dei est, non potest in bona fide
owed and against the-laws of-God is not can in good faith
et legitime observari; item, non est Christiani regis dignitas,
and lawfully be-observed likewise not is of-a-Christian king dignity
ubi ecclesiastica, quam observandam juravit, perit libertas.
where ecclesiastical which to-be-observed he-swore perishes liberty
Ad hæc, easdem quas dicitis dignitates regales, scriptas
to these-things the-same which you-call dignities royal written
dominus rex summo pontifici confirmandas transmisit; et
the-lord king to-the-supreme pontiff to-be-confirmed sent and
reportatæ sunt ab eo potius improbatæ quam approbatæ.
brought-back were by him rather disapproved than approved
Exemplum nobis dedit in doctrinam, ut et nos ita faciamus,
an-example to-us he-gave for teaching that also we so may-do
parati cum ecclesia Romana recipere quæ recipit, respuere quæ
ready with the-church Roman to-receive what it-receives to-reject what
respuit. Præterea si lapsi sumus Clarendonæ, (caro enim est
it-rejects besides if fallen we-are at-Clarendon the-flesh for is
infirma,) spiritum resumere debemus, et in virtute Spiritus
weak the-spirit to-resume we-ought and in the-power of-the-Spirit
Sancti contra hostem antiquum eniti; qui utrumque procurat,
Holy against the-enemy ancient to-strive who both procures
ut et qui stat cadat, et qui cecidit non resurgat. Si sub
that both he-who stands fall and he-who has-fallen not rise-again if under
stipulatione in verbo veritatis ibi concessimus vel juravimus
stipulation in the-word of-truth there we-granted or swore
injusta, nostis quia illicita jurantes nullo jure obligantur."
unjust-things you-know that unlawful-things swearing by-no right are-bound

Redeunt ad regem episcopi, et ejus pace a judicando
return to the-king the-bishops and with-his peace from judging
archiepiscopum excusati, a baronibus summoti seorsum
the-archbishop excused from the-barons removed apart
sedent; nec minus a comitibus et baronibus suum
sit nor less from the-earls and barons his
exigit rex de archiepiscopo judicium. Evocantur quidam
demands the-king about the-archbishop judgment are-called-in certain
vicecomites et secundæ dignitatis barones, antiqui dierum, ut
sheriffs and of-second rank barons ancient of-days that
addantur eis et assint judicio. Post aliquantam moram
they-be-added to-them and be-present at-the-judgment after some delay
ad archiepiscopum redeunt proceres. Comes Legecestriæ
to the-archbishop return the-nobles the-earl of-Leicester
Robertus, qui maturitate ætatis et morum aliis præminebat,
Robert who in-maturity of-age and of-morals the-others excelled
quibusdam aliorum imponens ut pronunciarent, renitentibus
on-certain of-the-others imposing that they-pronounce with-them-resisting
cœpit negotium Clarendonæ habitum articulatim commemorare,
began the-business at-Clarendon held point-by-point to-recall
ut superius fecerat; at archiepiscopo minus hilaris Hylarius
as above had-done but toward-the-archbishop less cheerful Hilary
Cicestrensis episcopus, quasi inde manifesta erat regiæ
of-Chichester bishop as-if thence manifest was of-the-royal
majestatis læsio, et promissionis in verbo veritatis ibi factæ
majesty the-injury and of-the-promise in the-word of-truth there made
transgressio: dicebatque archiepiscopo, quod suum audiret
the-transgression and-he-said to-the-archbishop that his he-should-hear
judicium. Sed non plura passus, ait archiepiscopus, “Quid
judgment but not more enduring says the-archbishop what
est quod facere vultis? Venistis me judicare? non debetis.
is-it that to-do you-wish have-you-come me to-judge not you-ought

Judicium est sententia lata post controversiam. Ego hodie
judgment is a-sentence passed after controversy I today
nihil dixi, ut in causa. Ad nullam causam huc vocatus fui,
nothing said as in a-case to no case hither summoned I-was
præterquam ad causam Johannis, qui mecum non est expertus.
except to the-case of-John who with-me not has tried-it
Ad hæc me judicare non potestis. Ego qualiscunque pater
to these-things me to-judge not you-can I whatever-sort father
vester sum; vos autem proceres palatii, laicæ potestates,
your am you however nobles of-the-palace lay powers
sæculares personæ. Judicationem vestram non audiam."
secular persons judgment your not I-shall-hear
Recedunt proceres. Post intervallum surgens archiepiscopus,
withdraw the-nobles after an-interval rising the-archbishop
et crucem suam bajulans, ostium petebat, quod tota die
and cross his carrying the-door sought which the-whole day
strictissime obseratum, quasi ultro apertum est ei.
most-tightly bolted as-if spontaneously opened was to-him
Aliquis maliloquus prosequens eum ut perjurum regis
someone evil-speaking following him as a-perjurer of-the-king
exire dixit; aliquis, tanquam proditorem eum recedere, et
to-go-out said someone as a-traitor him to-withdraw and
domini sui regis judicium asportare. Ille in aula hominibus
of-lord his the-king the-judgment to-carry-off he in the-hall with-men
plena ad fascem lignorum non visum sibi offendit, sed
full against a-bundle of-wood not seen by-him stumbled but
non cecidit. Ad ostium, ubi equi sui erant, venit. Suum
not fell to the-door where horses his were he-came his-own
ascendens, magistrum Herbertum, qui equum proprium,
mounting master Herbert who a-horse own
propter pressuram nimiam, tam cito habere non poterat,
on-account-of the-crush excessive so quickly to-have not could

secum ad hospitium transvexit, ad monasterium Sancti
with-himself to the-lodging he-carried to the-monastery of-Saint
Andreæ. O quantum sustinuit in illa die in spiritu martyrium!
Andrew O how-much he-endured on that day in spirit martyrdom
sed felicior rediit a conspectu concilii, quoniam dignus
but happier he-returned from the-sight of-the-council since worthy
habitus est ibi pro nomine Jesu contumeliam pati.
held he-was there for the-name of-Jesus insult to-suffer
Facta oratione ante altare, crucem postea secus aram beatæ
with-made prayer before the-altar the-cross afterward beside the-altar of-blessed
Mariæ deposuit. Sedit, et domestici ejus circa eum; tunc ait
Mary he-set-down he-sat and household his around him then says
ei Willelmus filius Stephani, "Ista equidem, ista fuit amara
to-him William son of-Stephen this indeed this was a-bitter
dies." Cui ille, "Ultima erit amarior." Et post modicum, suos
day to-whom he the-last will-be more-bitter and after a-little his-men
hortatus, ait, "Quisque vestrum in silentio et in pace sua se
exhorting he-says each of-you in silence and in peace his himself
habeat, Amarum verbum de ore vestro non exeat. Nulli
let-hold a-bitter word from mouth your not let-go-out to-no-one
maledico quicquam respondeatis; sinite eos conviciari. Superioris
cursing anything answer let them revile of-a-superior
personæ est hoc pati; inferioris, hoc facere. Ut illi suarum
person it-is this to-suffer of-an-inferior this to-do as they of-their
linguarum, ita nos nostrarum aurium domini simus. Non mihi
tongues so we of-our ears masters let-us-be not on-me
maledicitur; sed ei qui quod mali dicitur in se recognoscit."
is-a-curse-spoken but on-him who what of-evil is-said in himself recognizes
Rex, audito ipsius archiepiscopi discessu, et quod eum
the-king with-heard of-the-very archbishop the-departure and that him
sui aulici turpiloquio prosequerentur, rogatus a Roberto
his courtiers with-foul-language pursued asked by Robert

de Melidono, Herefordiensi episcopo, vel forte ab aliquo alio
of Melun of-Hereford bishop or perhaps by some other
edoctus, dum adhuc non perrexisset, misit, præcipiens ut post
instructed while still not he-had-gone-on sent ordering that after
eum voce præconia per vicos clamaretur, ne quis
him with-voice of-a-herald through the-streets it-be-cried that-not anyone
eum turpiloquio vel convicio læderet; ne quis omnino
him with-foul-language or insult injure that-not anyone at-all
ei, vel alicui suorum, in aliquo molestus esset articulo.
to-him or to-any of-his in any troublesome be particular
Archiepiscopus illo sero inter suos, ubi solebat, comedit.
the-archbishop that evening among his-men where he-was-wont ate
Post cœnam, milites ejus omnes qui aderant, reddito ei
after supper knights his all who were-present with-rendered to-him
homanagio suo, et impetrata licentia, cum lacrymis ab
homage their and obtained leave with tears from
eo discesserunt. Postea tres episcopos, Walterum Roffensem,
him departed afterward three bishops Walter of-Rochester
capellanum suum, et duos quos ordinaverat, Robertum
chaplain his and two whom he-had-ordained Robert
Herefordiensem, Rogerum Wigorniensem, misit regi
of-Hereford Roger of-Worcester sent to-the-king
archiepiscopus, quærere ab eo licentiam et conductum
the-archbishop to-ask from him leave and safe-conduct
præstari sibi in crastino recessuro. Regem illi invenerunt
to-be-granted to-himself on the-morrow about-to-withdraw the-king they found
hilarem; sed distulit in crastinum mane eis respondere.
cheerful but put-off until the-morrow morning to-them to-answer
Responso nunciorum accepto, archiepiscopus moram illam
with-the-answer of-the-messengers received the-archbishop delay that
responsi regis aliquid sibi afferre periculi veritus est.
of-the-answer of-the-king something to-himself to-bring of-danger feared has

THE FLIGHT

That night Thomas leaves the council with two companions, and the king, leaving the see's lands in peace, sends the archbishop of York, four bishops, and others after him to the pope; the envoys race to Dover. Thomas hides among God-fearing friends until All Souls, when he and the envoys both cross; he lands secretly at Gravelines, walks to a barn of the monks of Clairmarais, is carried by skiff to Clairmarais, and goes on to Saint-Omer, where the count of Flanders grants him safe-conduct and Richard of Lucy renounces his homage. Louis of France takes pity on him; before Pope Alexander at Sens the envoys praise the king, and the pope silences Thomas's clerks, since nothing is said against their lord.

Qualiter archiepiscopus discessit a curia, die septima
how the-archbishop departed from the-court on-the-day seventh
concilii, non impetrata licentia.
of-the-council not with-obtained leave
Nox erat; hora ad complendum dicta. Dixit sociis
night it-was the-hour for compline called said to-the-companions
archiepiscopus, se velle in ecclesia vigilare. Una quidem
the-archbishop himself to-wish in the-church to-keep-vigil one indeed
præteritarum noctium in vigiliis et orationibus pernoctaverat
of-the-past nights in vigils and prayers he-had-spent-the-night
in ecclesia cum clericis suis, facta afflictione, positisque
in the-church with clerks his with-made affliction and-with-placed
genibus, ad invocationem uniuscujusque sancti vel sanctæ
knees at the-invocation of-each male-saint or female-saint
in letania sua nominatæ. Aiunt ei quidam de clericis suis,
in litany his named say to-him certain of clerks his
"Volumus et nos vobiscum in ecclesia vigilare." Ille, "Ne
we-wish also we with-you in the-church to-keep-vigil he no
utique; nolo vos vexari." In noctis intempestæ silentio
certainly I-do-not-wish you to-be-troubled in of-the-night dead the-silence

tertius recessit, nullo clericorum, nullo militum, suorum
as-one-of-three he-withdrew with-no of-the-clerks with-no of-knights his
comitatus. Quod cum in crastino rex et omne concilium
accompanied which when on the-morrow the-king and all the-council
cognovissent, captato quid factu opus esset consilio, omnes
had-learned with-taken what to-be-done need was counsel all
possessiones Cantuariensis ecclesiæ archiepiscopo in pace
the-possessions of-the-Canterbury church to-the-archbishop in peace
remanere dimisit, nullo ejus officialium amoto, quia in
to-remain he-allowed with-no of-his officials removed because in
appellatione hinc inde erant. Et qui causas istas
appeal on-this-side on-that they-were and those-who causes these
prosequerentur, ad dominum papam misit incontinenti post
should-prosecute to the-lord pope he-sent immediately after
eum ad calces ejus, archiepiscopum Eboracensem et episcopos
him at heels his the-archbishop of-York and bishops
quatuor, Gilebertum Londoniensem, Hylarium Cicestrensem,
four Gilbert of-London Hilary of-Chichester
Bartholomæum Exoniensem, Rogerum Wigorniensem, et
Bartholomew of-Exeter Roger of-Worcester and
comites duos et barones duos, et clericos domesticos domus
earls two and barons two and clerks household of-house
suæ tres. Reliquum diei et concilii insumitur in tractando
his three the-rest of-the-day and of-the-council is-spent in treating
de copiis pedestribus in Gwalliam rebellem et regem Resum
about forces foot into Wales rebellious and king Rhys
fœderifragum ducendis; scribiturque a singulis personis, tam
treaty-breaking to-be-led and-is-written-down by single persons as-well
ecclesiasticis quam sæcularibus, in regis rogantis auxilium
ecclesiastical as secular in of-the-king asking help
promissa bellatorum peditum multitudo. Solvitur concilium.
promised of-warriors foot a-multitude is-dissolved the-council

Crastino mane nuncii tot et tanti ad portum maris
next morning the-envoys so-many and so-great to the-port of-the-sea
Dovram tendunt, ocyus accelerantes, et putantes quod
Dover head very-quickly hastening and thinking that
archiepiscopus eos prævenire deberet. Archiepiscopus inter
the-archbishop them to-forestall would the-archbishop among
timoratos Dei et suos necessarios latitando, et nocturnum
the-fearing of-God and his familiars by-hiding and nocturnal
quandoque iter agendo, a decimo quinto die post sancti
sometimes journey making from the-tenth fifth day after saint
Michaelis, usque ad secundam diem mensis Novembris in
Michael up-to to the-second day of-the-month of-November in
Anglia est moratus; usque dum navis, cujus gubernatori
England he-has stayed up-to while a-ship to-whose helmsman
et nautis se crederet, sibi pararetur. Eademque
and sailors himself he-might-entrust for-him should-be-prepared and-on-the-same
die, commemorationis scilicet fidelium defunctorum, et
day of-the-commemoration namely of-the-faithful departed both
ipse et nuncii contra eum missi transfretaverunt; illi
he-himself and the-envoys against him sent crossed they
ad Portum Magnum, multa tamen acti tempestate, ut
to the-Port Great much nevertheless driven by-storm so-that
Londoniensis episcopus capam et cucullam exueret, appulsi
of-London the-bishop cope and cowl took-off landed
sunt; archiepiscopus secretius ad Graveningas. Inde pedes
have the-archbishop more-secretly at Gravelines thence on-foot
ivit, et pauper cum duobus tantum conversis usque ad
he-went and poor with two only lay-brothers up-to to
quoddam horreum Cistellensium monachorum de Claro
a-certain barn of-the-Cistercian monks of Clair
Marisco. Magnitudine tamen animi spretor erat fortunæ
Marais with-greatness nevertheless of-mind a-despiser he-was of-fortune

modo ringentis, ut prius ridentis. Obiter agnovit eum
now snarling as before smiling on-the-way recognized him
aliquis, et dixit, "Hic equidem est ille olim cancellarius
someone and said this indeed is that once chancellor
Angliæ, modo Cantuariensis archiepiscopus." Respondit,
of-England now of-Canterbury archbishop he-answered
"Solentne sic ire Cantuariæ archiepiscopi?" In villula
are-they-accustomed so to-go of-Canterbury archbishops in a-little-town
quadam conduxit equum, cum ulterius pedes ire non posset;
certain he-hired a-horse since further on-foot to-go not he-could
quem ascendit absque sella. O Jesu bone! multæ quidem
which he-mounted without saddle O Jesus good many indeed
sunt tribulationes justorum et passiones hujus temporis, nec
are the-tribulations of-the-just and the-sufferings of-this time nor
tamen condignæ præmiis quæ reservas tuis ad tempora
nevertheless worthy of-the-rewards which you-reserve for-yours for the-times
retributionis. Ecce hic servus tuus archiepiscopus reliquit
of-retribution behold here servant your the-archbishop has-left
omnia; et pauper et opis indigus secutus est te.
all-things and poor and of-help needy followed has you
Quam honorifice suscepit eum pius comes Flandriæ et
how honorably received him the-pious count of-Flanders and
personæ terræ illius; et postmodo rex Franciæ et tota
the-persons of-land that and afterward the-king of-France and all
illa nobilis Gallia.
that noble Gaul
Ventum est ad horreum illud. Inde cymba vectus est
come it-was to barn that thence by-skiff carried he-was
ad Clarum Mariscum. Inde ad Sanctum Audomarum; ubi
to Clair Marais thence to Saint Omer where
ab abbate Sancti Bertini et conventu, piis erumpentibus
by the-abbot of-Saint Bertin and the-convent with-pious bursting

lacrymis, cum gaudio uberiore suscipitur. Ab Philippo filio
tears with joy more-abundant he-is-received by Philip son
Tierrici, illustri comite Flandriæ, rogato conductum ei et
of-Thierry illustrious count of-Flanders asked safe-conduct to-him and
securitatem eundi ad dominum regem Francorum præstare,
security of-going to the-lord king of-the-French to-grant
cum debita compassione et veneratione susceptus, desiderata
with due compassion and veneration received the-desired-things
impetravit. Moram aliquam faciens cum abbate Sancti Bertini,
he-obtained delay some making with the-abbot of-Saint Bertin
suos consacerdotes et clericos et laceri agminis sui aliquot ibi
his fellow-priests and clerks and of-torn troop his some there
exspectabat. Ibi equi, capella, vestimenta et omnia necessaria
he-awaited there horses chapel vestments and all necessaries
sibi et suis, qui ad eum ibi venerunt, munificentia
to-himself and his-men who to him there came by-the-munificence
comitis, liberalitate abbatis et vicinarum personarum, ad
of-the-count by-the-liberality of-the-abbot and of-neighboring persons to
plenum ministrantur. Ibi Ricardus de Luci, nuncius regis
the-full are-supplied there Richard of Lucy envoy of-the-king
Anglorum, a domino rege Francorum rediens, ei, facta
of-the-English from the-lord king of-the-French returning to-him with-made
prius multa persuasione repatriandi, homanagium suum
earlier much persuasion of-returning-home homage his
reddidit. Inde cum prosequeretur iter ad dominum regem
renounced thence when he-continued the-journey to the-lord king
Franciæ, jam quadraginta equos ad præbendam suam habebat.
of-France already forty horses at provender his he-had
Significato clericis suis, quos plures in Galliis habebat, ejus
with-signified to-clerks his whom many in the-Gauls he-had his
adventu, festinant et adduntur ei. Occurrunt undique
arrival they-hasten and are-added to-him meet from-everywhere

ei ad stratam venerabiles personæ Gallicanæ ecclesiæ. Ipse
him at the-road venerable persons of-the-Gallican church he-himself
etiam archiepiscopus Remensis, frater regis Francorum
also the-archbishop of-Reims brother of-the-king of-the-French
Henricus, et episcopi et abbates, archidiaconi, præpositi
Henry and bishops and abbots archdeacons provosts
ecclesiarum, qui tanto exsuli debita veneratione aggratulantur,
of-churches who so-great an-exile with-due veneration congratulate
et ei se et sua liberaliter exponunt, et recipere
and to-him themselves and theirs liberally lay-open and to-accept
necessaria quadam devotæ caritatis instantia compellunt.
necessaries with-a-certain of-devoted charity insistence compel
Innotuit adventus ipsius domino regi Francorum Ludovico,
became-known the-arrival his to-the-lord king of-the-French Louis
Ludovici regis filio, qui pie in Domino et compassus est
of-Louis king the-son who piously in the-Lord also sympathized has
contumeliam passo et congaudebat elapso. Tandem
insult having-suffered and rejoiced having-escaped at-length
rumor hic domino papæ Alexandro tertio divulgatus est,
rumor this to-the-lord pope Alexander third spread was
qui erat Senonis. Schisma siquidem erat in sancta Romana
who was at-Sens schism indeed was in the-holy Roman
ecclesia, proh dolor! et Fredericus, strenuus, si Deum amaret,
church oh pain and Frederick vigorous if God he-loved
imperator, cum tota sequela omnium terrarum suarum
emperor with all the-following of-all lands his
schismaticos unum, alium, et tertium fovebat. Sed et
schismatics one another and a-third fostered but also
nunciorum regis Angliæ adventus domino papæ innotuit;
of-the-envoys of-the-king of-England the-arrival to-the-lord pope became-known
qui debita compassione condolens archiepiscopo exsuli, et
who with-due compassion grieving-with the-archbishop exile and

congratulans pro libertate ecclesiæ decertanti, scripsit ei,
congratulating for the-liberty of-the-church contending wrote to-him
quod pausaturus et respiraturus seorsum secederet,
that about-to-rest and about-to-breathe apart he-should-withdraw
donec ad eum vocatus veniret. Pietate mota universa Gallia
until to him called he-came by-piety moved all Gaul
archiepiscopo compatiebatur; et contra regis Anglorum
with-the-archbishop sympathized and against of-the-king of-the-English
nuncios spiritus omnium incitabatur, maxime contra episcopos.
the-envoys the-spirits of-all were-roused especially against the-bishops
Quod intelligentes omnes, Eboracensis archiepiscopus et
which understanding all of-York the-archbishop and
quatuor episcopi et alii comitem Arundelli, Willelmum de
four bishops and others the-earl of-Arundel William of
Albenni, ducem suum faciunt; et interrogati obiter, cujus
Aubigny leader their make and asked on-the-way whose
esset tanta familia, tantus comitatus, dicunt comitis Arundelli;
was so-great a-household so-great a-retinue they-say of-the-earl of-Arundel
suppressis nominibus episcoporum, proh pudor! Veniunt
with-suppressed the-names of-the-bishops oh shame they-come
tandem ad dominum papam. Affluxere undique quicunque
at-length to the-lord pope flocked from-everywhere whoever
ad curiam domini papæ venire poterant, de regno
to the-court of-the-lord pope to-come could from the-kingdom
Franciæ, de Burgundia, videre et audire tot et tantos
of-France from Burgundy to-see and to-hear so-many and so-great
nuncios regis Anglorum; quod genus causæ haberent, quid
envoys of-the-king of-the-English what kind of-cause they-had what
essent dicturi facturive. In consistorio celebri archiepiscopus
they-were about-to-say or-about-to-do in consistory crowded the-archbishop
Eboracensis et omnes episcopi præter Rogerum Wigorniensem;
of-York and all the-bishops except Roger of-Worcester

sed et comes Arundelli et Reginaldus de Sancto Walerico, —
but also the-earl of-Arundel and Reginald of Saint Valéry
isti omnes coram domino papa locuti sunt. Omnium fere erat
these all before the-lord pope spoken have of-all nearly was
una sententia de commendatione illustris regis Anglorum,
one opinion about the-commendation of-the-illustrious king of-the-English
tanquam catholici principis, devoti filii et benefactoris domini
as a-catholic prince devoted son and benefactor of-the-lord
papæ, et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ pro parte sua patroni,
pope and of-the-holy Roman church for part his patron
honesti viri, amatoris pacis, magnifici principis, veneratoris
an-honorable man lover of-peace a-magnificent prince venerator
personarum ecclesiasticarum, et donatoris ecclesiarum regni
of-persons ecclesiastical and giver of-the-churches of-kingdom
sui secundum Deum et sine simonia. Et si modo esset
his according-to God and without simony and if now there-were
inter eum et archiepiscopum suum distantia, non esse culpam
between him and archbishop his a-difference not to-be the-fault
regis. Deus pacis et dilectionis, annitente domino papa et
of-the-king the-God of-peace and of-love with-striving the-lord pope and
ecclesia Romana, cum placeret ei, ipsam bene sedaret, et
the-church Roman when it-pleased him it well would-settle and
nubilum eorum serenaret. Aliquis eorum, inter cætera, regis
cloud their would-clear some-one of-them among other-things of-the-king
Anglorum potentatus et divitias diligenter commemorabat.
of-the-English the-power and riches diligently recounted
Nullus omnino contra personam archiepiscopi, vel quod eam
no-one at-all against the-person of-the-archbishop or what it
vel causam regis et ejus tangeret, aliquid dicebat. Singulis
or the-case of-the-king and his would-touch anything said to-each
eodem modo respondit dominus papa, "Placet nobis regem
in-the-same way answered the-lord pope it-pleases us the-king

Anglorum esse talem, tam bonum. Utinam augeat in eo
of-the-English to-be such so good may he-increase in him
Deus incrementa virtutum." Erant ibi ad pedes domini papæ
God the-increases of-virtues were there at the-feet of-the-lord pope
in uno consessu tres vel quatuor clericorum archiepiscopi, quos
in one session three or four of-the-clerks of-the-archbishop whom
volentes pro domino suo loqui dominus papa repressit, dicens
wishing for lord their to-speak the-lord pope restrained saying
non esse opus, cum adversus archiepiscopum nihil diceretur.
not to-be need since against the-archbishop nothing was-said

BEFORE THE POPE

The earl of Arundel argues the king's case before the pope; the envoys seek Thomas's deposition and fail. Thomas arrives with over three hundred horsemen. The king seizes the see and gives it to Ranulf of Broc, and banishes the archbishop's kin, who must swear to go to him in exile. Thomas is said to have confessed to the pope that he was elected by the king's will and consented at Clarendon, and to have resigned his see; the pope restores it and sends him to Pontigny.

Comes Arundelli efficacius cæteris et magis rhetorice,
the-earl of-Arundel more-effectively than-the-others and more rhetorically
prosequente omni favore, locutus est, et omne tulit
with-following every favor spoke has and every carried
punctum. In secreto domini papæ auribus immurmurabant
point in secret of-the-lord pope into-the-ears they-murmured
de archiepiscopi depositione, temptantes eum maximis
about of-the-archbishop the-deposition tempting him with-very-great
promissis; tandem etiam adjecto quod denarium annuum
promises at-length even with-added that the-penny annual
beati Petri, qui nunc a solis ascriptis glebæ, nec tamen
of-blessed Peter which now by alone the-bound to-the-soil nor nevertheless

ab omnibus, datur in Anglia, rex faceret et confirmaret
by all is-given in England the-king would-make and confirm
in perpetuum, ab omni habitatore terræ, ab omni domo
for ever by every inhabitant of-the-land by every house
a qua fumus exit in urbibus, castris, burgis, et villis
from which smoke goes-out in cities castles boroughs and towns
donari; cresceret quidem Romanæ ecclesiæ redditus in Anglia
to-be-given would-grow indeed of-the-Roman church the-revenue in England
annuus, præter quod modo est, ad mille libras argenti. Sed
annual beyond what now it-is to a-thousand pounds of-silver but
cum dominum papam immotum et rigidi servatorem honesti
when the-lord pope unmoved and of-rigid a-keeper honor
invenirent, ut eis jussum fuerat ultra triduum non morari
they-found as to-them ordered it-had-been beyond three-days not to-stay
in curia, neque archiepiscopum ad causas prosequendas
in the-court nor the-archbishop for causes to-be-prosecuted
exspectare, accepta licentia et benedictione redeunt.
to-await with-received leave and blessing they-return
Qualiter archiepiscopus venit ad curiam domini papæ,
how the-archbishop came to the-court of-the-lord pope
videntibus aliquibus ex nunciis domini regis Anglorum; nam
with-seeing some of the-envoys of-the-lord king of-the-English for
ad curiam illam miserat.
to court that he-had-sent
Cum ecce una dierum ex altera parte fluminis cujusdam
when behold one of-the-days from the-other side of-the-river a-certain
vident plures quam trecentos in equis de comitatu
they-see more than three-hundred on horses of the-retinue
archiepiscopi ad dominum papam euntes; consilioque communi
of-the-archbishop to the-lord pope going and-by-counsel common
remittunt unum clericorum regis, Widonem decanum de
they-send-back one of-the-clerks of-the-king Guy dean of

Waltham, videre et audire, quomodo acceptus debeat esse in
Waltham to-see and to-hear how received ought to-be in
curia Romana ipsius Cantuariensis adventus. Cantuariensi
the-court Roman of-the-very Canterbury-man the-arrival to-the-Canterbury
archiepiscopo Senonim appropinquanti obviam exiit in equis
archbishop to-Sens approaching to-meet went-out on horses
magna pars cardinalium, cum gaudio eum recipientium.
a-great part of-the-cardinals with joy him receiving
Dominus papa intranti ad se ei assurrexit in osculo
the-lord pope to-the-one-entering to him to-him rose in a-kiss
et lacrymis, et brachiis eum paterna miseratione suscipiens,
and tears and arms him with-paternal pity receiving
et plurima eum veneratione et exhortatione consolans.
and with-very-much him veneration and exhortation consoling
Ad vigiliam sequentis Natalis Domini, rex Anglorum
at the-vigil of-the-following Nativity of-the-Lord the-king of-the-English
nuncios suos apud Merlebergam recepit, et quendam nuncium
envoys his at Marlborough received and a-certain envoy
proprium domini papæ. Inefficax propositi jubet in crastino
own of-the-lord pope ineffective of-purpose orders on the-morrow
Natalis statim archiepiscopum omnibus possessionibus
of-the-Nativity at-once the-archbishop of-all possessions
destitui, et ecclesiam Cantuariensem, cum omnibus terris
to-be-deprived and the-church of-Canterbury with all lands
et accessionibus ejus, et omnes ecclesias et reditus omnium
and accessions its and all churches and revenues of-all
clericorum ipsius, in manum suam recipi; omnesque
clerks his into the-hand his to-be-received and-all
propinquos archiepiscopi, et clericos seu laicos de ipsius
relatives of-the-archbishop and clerks or laymen from his
familia, proscribi, et a regno suo ejici. Secundo
household to-be-proscribed and from the-kingdom his to-be-cast-out on-the-second

die Natalis, veniunt Londoniam apparitores et officiales
day of-the-Nativity come to-London attendants and officials
regis; inter quos quidam Randulphus de Broch,
of-the-king among whom a-certain Ranulf of Broc

"scelere ante alios immanior omnes;"
"in-crime beyond others more-savage all;"

cui etiam laico crudelissimo et archiepiscopi inimicissimo
to-whom also a-layman most-cruel and to-the-archbishop most-hostile
sanctam illam ecclesiam Cantuariensem, primariam Anglorum
holy that church of-Canterbury the-first of-the-English
sedem, custodiendam, immo potius destruendam, commisit.
see to-be-guarded nay rather to-be-destroyed be-entrusted
Iste cum aliis quibusdam regii mandati est exsecutor;
this-one with other certain of-the-royal mandate is the-executor
faciunt imperata et pejora imperatis. Evocati extra
they-do the-commands and worse-things than-the-commands summoned outside
urbem, apud Lamhetham, in ipsa domo archiepiscopi, jurant
the-city at Lambeth in the-very house of-the-archbishop swear
in exsilium omnes ejus propinqui in urbe Londonia inventi,
into exile all his relatives in the-city London found
ad primum ventum a terra venientem, a portu maris, et
at the-first wind from the-land coming from the-port of-the-sea and
a natali solo exituri, et ad ipsum archiepiscopum directo
from native soil about-to-go-out and to himself the-archbishop by-direct
itinere ituri; scilicet ut et ipsi caro ejus carnem ejus
route about-to-go namely that even they-themselves flesh his flesh his
macerent, doloribus ejus dolores addant; et quot suorum pro
may-afflict to-pains his pains may-add and as-many-as of-his for
ipso ejecti ei appareant, tot animam ejus ejectionis eorum
him cast-out to-him may-appear so-many soul his of-the-expulsion their

gladii pertranseant. Non tam cumulus bonorum jucundus
swords may-pierce not so-much a-heap of-goods pleasant
esse potest, quam molesta discessio. Emigrant utriusque sexus
be can as troublesome departure emigrate of-each sex
propinqui ipsius, et infantes, in cunis alii, alii pendentes
relatives his and infants in cradles others others hanging
ab uberibus. Omnes etiam inventi clerici ejus et servientes
from breasts all also found clerks his and servants
similiter, sed et qui eum vagum in Anglia a facie regis
likewise but also those-who him wandering in England from the-face of-the-king
et profugum una nocte hospitio susceperant. Sed quid?
and a-fugitive for-one night in-hospitality had-received but what
nobilis illa Gallia miserata omnes recipit; rex ipse Francorum
noble that Gaul pitying all receives the-king himself of-the-French
aliquos, archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores, comites,
some archbishops bishops abbots priors earls
barones, præpositi, castellani, singuli aliquos. Sanctimoniales
barons provosts castellans each some the-nuns
fœmineum sexum et cunabula recipiunt. Partiti sunt nobiles
the-female sex and the-cradles receive divided have noble
viri inter se inopes Jesu Christi coexsules, boni
men among themselves the-destitute of-Jesus Christ fellow-exiles of-the-good
archiepiscopi lacerum agmen, familiam desolatam, nec quisquam
archbishop the-torn troop the-household desolate nor anyone
eorum egens erat inter illos nobiles Francos, beneficentiæ et
of-them needy was among those noble French of-beneficence and
communionis non oblitos. Qualibus hostiis promeretur Deus.
of-fellowship not forgetful with-such victims is-won God

De confessione sancti Thomæ domino papæ facta, et
about the-confession of-saint Thomas to-the-lord pope made and
quomodo archiepiscopium refutavit.
how the-archbishopric he-resigned
Bonus exsul, servus Jesu Christi, Thomas archiepiscopus,
the-good exile servant of-Jesus Christ Thomas archbishop
in secreto confessus domino papæ se peccasse, quod
in secret having-confessed to-the-lord pope himself to-have-sinned that
præcedente voluntate regis Anglorum electus est, item
with-preceding will of-the-king of-the-English elected he-was likewise
quod Clarendonæ consensit in ipsius decreta, decretis
that at-Clarendon he-consented to his decrees to-decrees
divinis contraria, dicitur archiepiscopatum in manum domini
divine contrary is-said the-archbishopric into the-hand of-the-lord
papæ refutasse, quasi ob hæc eo indignum;
pope to-have-resigned as-if on-account-of these-things of-it unworthy
dominumque papam ita triduo sustinuisse, posteaque ei
and-the-lord pope so for-three-days to-have-kept-it and-afterward to-him
resignasse. Intellectaque in confessione vita archiepiscopi
to-have-restored-it and-understood in the-confession the-life of-the-archbishop
et pœnitentia interiore et duriore, eum in ulteriorem et
and penitence inner and harsher him into further and
sinceriorem dilectionem admisit, sciens eum virum justum
purer love he-admitted knowing him a-man just
et sanctum, et ad summum perfectionis gratia Dei et
and holy and to the-summit of-perfection by-the-grace of-God and
domesticarum virtutum enitentem suffragiis.
of-domestic virtues striving by-the-supports
Post aliquantam cum domino papa moram factam,
after some with the-lord pope delay made
archiepiscopus de consilio et voluntate ejus Pontiniacum
the-archbishop by the-counsel and will his to-Pontigny

moraturus descendit, ad abbatiam scilicet Cistellensis ordinis
about-to-stay went-down to the-abbey namely of-the-Cistercian order
monachorum, qui ei et clericis suis plurimis, et familiæ
of-monks who to-him and to-clerks his very-many and to-the-household
necessariæ, in necessariorum administratione hospitales fuere
necessary in of-necessaries the-provision hospitable were
et liberales. Archiepiscopus, toto tempore exsilii sui fere
and liberal the-archbishop the-whole time of-exile his nearly
septennis vacans pœnitentiæ suæ excolendæ, conscientiæ
seven-year devoting-himself penitence his to-be-cultivated conscience
mundandæ, vitæ sanctificandæ, post missarum celebrationem
to-be-cleansed life to-be-sanctified after of-masses the-celebration
et divinorum contemplationem, etiam studio litterarum,
and of-divine-things contemplation also to-the-study of-letters
et maxime divinæ paginæ, operam dabat; libris etiam
and especially of-the-divine page attention gave to-books also
conscribendis, et perquirendis a domino papa privilegiis. In
to-be-copied and to-be-sought from the-lord pope privileges in
quarumcunque ecclesiarum omnibus armariis nullum audiebat
of-whatever churches all book-chests none did-he-hear
in Galliis esse antiquitatis vel approbatæ auctoritatis librum,
in the-Gauls to-be of-antiquity or of-approved authority book
quem transcribi non faceret, nullum privilegium quod ecclesiæ
which to-be-copied not he-had no privilege which for-church
suæ non perquireret, ut omni retro tempore optimis
his not he-sought so-that in-all past time with-best
voluminibus et privilegiis ecclesia Cantuariensis ita ditata et
volumes and privileges the-church of-Canterbury so enriched and
nobilitata non fuerit, sicut tandem eam refersit. Archiepiscopus
ennobled not had-been as at-length it he-stuffed the-archbishop
exsilii sui et suorum necessitatem æquanimiter ferre studuit,
of-exile his and of-his-men the-necessity with-equanimity to-bear strove

bonis omnibus suis destitutus, et alienæ misericordiæ manum
of-goods all his deprived and of-another's mercy the-hand
exspectans; anteponens exsilii libertatem domesticæ servituti,
awaiting preferring of-exile the-liberty to-domestic servitude
patienter tulit. Jactabat in Domino curam suam, et ipse eum
patiently bore he-cast on the-Lord care his and he him
enutriit. Ipse dedit ei gratiam in conspectu omnis carnis.
nourished he gave to-him favor in the-sight of-all flesh
Archiepiscopi exsulis eadem quæ Teucri fuit sententia, "Patria
of-the-archbishop exile the-same which of-Teucer was opinion fatherland
est, ubicunque homini bene est:" eademque quæ et Nasonis,
is wherever for-a-man well it-is and-the-same which also of-Naso

"Omne solum forti patria."
"Every soil to-the-brave a-fatherland."

O Anglia, quanti æstimanda es, ex qua boni et
O England at-how-much to-be-esteemed are-you from which the-good and
religiosi pelluntur; cum bonis prælatis debita negatur
religious are-driven when to-good prelates the-due is-denied
libertas, emigrandi sæva imponitur necessitas? Albutius
liberty of-emigrating savage is-imposed necessity Albutius
æquissimo animo Athenis exsul philosophabatur. Id ei non
with-most-even mind at-Athens an-exile philosophized this to-him not
accidisset, si in republica quiescens, Epicuri legibus
would-have-happened if in the-commonwealth resting of-Epicurus to-the-laws
paruisset. Archiepiscopo exsuli cum nunciabatur alicujus vel
he-had-obeyed to-the-archbishop exile when was-announced of-someone either
nepotum vel propinquorum ipsius mors, non movebatur; cum
of-nephews or of-relatives his the-death not he-was-moved when
alicujus clericorum suorum, nunciorum ad dominum papam,
of-some-one of-clerks his envoys to the-lord pope

male dissimulabat. Ibi consolabatur communi necessitate
badly he-dissembled then he-consoled-himself by-the-common necessity
ferendæ conditionis humanæ, vitam omnibus metendam
of-bearing of-the-condition human life for-all to-be-reaped
ut fruges, reddendam esse terræ terram; hic propriam
as crops to-be-returned to-be to-the-earth the-earth here proper
cujusque virtutem collaudabat, fatum deplorabat.
of-each the-virtue he-praised the-fate he-lamented
Clericorum ejus alii cum eo coexsules extra solum natale
of-the-clerks his some with him fellow-exiles outside soil native
erant. Illorum patres, matres, fratres et ditiores propinqui
were of-them the-fathers mothers brothers and richer relatives
post eos coacti sunt jurare in exsilium et quod archiepiscopo
after them compelled were to-swear into exile and that to-the-archbishop
se repræsentarent. Alii remanserunt eum non secuti;
themselves they-should-present others remained him not following
quorum Willelmus de Salesberia sacerdos captus et in castro
of-whom William of Salisbury priest seized and in the-castle
Crof tentus est anni dimidio. Tres ditiores de redemptione
of-Corfe held was of-a-year for-half three richer-ones about ransom
constituerunt; Stephanus de Everatona centum libras; post
agreed Stephen of Everton a-hundred pounds after
alia vice Aluredus de Wathemestede centum libras;
on-another occasion Alfred of Wheathampstead a-hundred pounds
Turstanus de Croindona centum marcas, et etiam uno die
Thurstan of Croydon a-hundred marks and also for-one day
integro in uno et sordido latronum carcere fuit Londoniæ.
whole in one and filthy of-robbers prison he-was at-London
Alii vagi et profugi habitabant in Anglia, quorum
others wandering and fugitive dwelt in England for-whose
propinquis et amicis diu fuit eos videre formidolosum,
relatives and friends long it-was them to-see fearful

cum eis loqui periculosum, eos hospitio vel cibo juvare
with them to-speak dangerous them with-hospitality or food to-help
nefas. Pro coexsulibus ejus junioribus vel mediæ manus
forbidden for the-fellow-exiles his younger or of-middle rank
immerito proscriptis plurimi Franci pia compassione regem
undeservedly proscribed very-many French with-pious compassion the-king
rogaverunt. Rex Francorum aliquibus, imperatrix, regis
asked the-king of-the-French for-some the-empress of-the-king
Anglorum mater, aliquibus, comes Flandrensis aliquibus,
of-the-English the-mother for-some the-count of-Flanders for-some
alii quidem episcopi et comites Galliæ aliquibus.
others indeed bishops and counts of-Gaul for-some

William wins the king's peace with a rhymed prayer he wrote and gave Henry in the chapel at Brill, here given whole: the king confesses his sins, asks God to rule the king who cannot rule himself, and prays for heirs on his throne, a pure clergy, a people at peace, harvests, and mercy on the living and the dead. Thomas writes to the king and the bishops; Gilbert of London takes and then resigns his exiled clerks' churches.

Willelmus filius Stephani per orationem unam quam fecerat,
William son of-Stephen by prayer one which he-had-made
et regi in capella de Bruhulla dederat, pacem habuit.
and to-the-king in the-chapel of Brill had-given peace had
Hæc autem est illa oratio, propria domini regis Anglorum.
this however is that prayer proper of-the-lord king of-the-English

Rex cunctorum sæculorum, Rex arcis ætheriæ,
King of-all ages, King of-the-citadel ethereal,
Rector poli, rector soli, regum Rex altissime:
Ruler of-the-sky, ruler of-the-earth, of-kings King most-high:
Qui et maris dominaris, conturbas et excitas,
Who also of-the-sea you-are-lord, you-disturb and rouse,
Et cum placet, stratum jacet, motum ejus mitigas.
And when it-pleases, leveled it-lies, the-motion its you-soften.
Tu creasti, Tu formasti, cælos, terras, maria:
You created, You formed, heavens, lands, seas:
Quæ fecisti, condidisti, Tu gubernas omnia.
What you-made, you-founded, You govern all-things.
Omne bonum tuum donum, Omnipotentissime.
Every good your gift, Most-Almighty.
Cuncta grata tua data, dominorum Domine.
All pleasing-things your gifts, of-lords Lord.

Hos coronas atque donas gloria multiplici,
These you-crown and you-present with-glory manifold,
Qui in mundo, corde mundo, vita vivunt simplici.
Who in the-world, with-heart pure, with-life live simple.
Hi beantur, coronantur in superlunaribus
These are-blessed, are-crowned in the-places-above-the-moon
Quorum mentes sunt ferventes igne Sancti Spiritus.
Whose minds are burning with-the-fire of-the-Holy Spirit.
Peccatorum adjutorem qui non ponit Dominum
Of-sinners helper who not sets the-Lord
Exaltatum, elevatum super cedros Libanum,
Exalted, raised above the-cedars of-Lebanon,
Infernalem, gehennalem demergis in clibanum,
Infernal, of-Gehenna you-plunge into the-furnace,
In Averni, in inferni tenebroso carcere
In of-Avernus, in of-hell the-dark prison
Habes clausos reos ausos Te Deum contemnere.
You-have shut the-guilty having-dared You God to-despise.
Ibi rei, jussu Dei, pro forma sententiæ
There the-guilty, by-the-command of-God, according-to the-form of-the-sentence
Lugent, rigent, ardent, strident, et torquentur undique.
Mourn, stiffen, burn, gnash, and are-tortured on-all-sides.
Ibi metus, ibi fletus, ibi stridor dentium.
There fear, there weeping, there the-gnashing of-teeth.
Ibi pœnæ omnes plenæ vocibus gementium.
There punishments all full of-the-voices of-the-groaning.
Hic dolores acriores aliis doloribus,
Here pains sharper than-other pains,
Hic tortores nequiores aliis tortoribus.
Here torturers more-wicked than-other torturers.
Deus meus, ego reus Tibi me humilio.
God my, I guilty to-You myself humble.

Deus vere, miserere adoptivo filio.

God true, have-mercy on-the-adoptive son.

Supplex tuus, servus tuus, Deus clementissime,

Suppliant your, servant your, God most-merciful,

Te adoro, et imploro tuæ donum gratiæ.

You I-adore, and I-implore of-your the-gift grace.

Rex cælorum, me Anglorum dictum regem suscipe.

King of-the-heavens, me of-the-English called king receive.

Regem rege, sua lege qui se nequit regere.

The-king rule, by-his law who himself cannot rule.

Est regnare ministrare toto tibi animo,

It-is to-reign to-minister with-whole to-you mind,

Obedire et servire tuo sub imperio.

To-obey and to-serve your under command.

Tuus miles actus viles declinem peccaminum.

Your soldier the-acts vile may-I-avoid of-sins.

Incentiva rediviva exstinguam libidinum.

The-incentives revived may-I-extinguish of-lusts.

Falsa læta consueta devitem excessuum.

The-false joys accustomed may-I-shun of-excesses.

Non procuro corde puro quod Te Deum diligam:

Not I-see-to with-heart pure that You God I-may-love:

Parvi pendo, vix attendo, quomodo me habeam.

Little I-weigh-it, scarcely I-attend, how myself I-conduct.

Hujus lucis in caducis rebus nimis glorior:

Of-this light in perishing things too-much I-glory:

In peccatis supra satis immorans immorior.

In sins beyond enough lingering I-die-in-them.

Aberravi et peccavi, fateor, mi Domine.

I-have-strayed and I-have-sinned, I-confess, my Lord.

Temeravi, violavi jura castimoniæ.

I-have-profaned, I-have-violated the-laws of-chastity.

Putuerunt, putruerunt cicatrices criminum
Have-stunk, have-rotted the-scars of-crimes
Æstimati simulati in lacum descendentium.
Reckoned likened into the-pit of-those-descending.
Honestatis, castitatis, legem fregi tutius.
Of-honor, of-chastity, the-law I-broke more-safely.
Est sopita mea vita in malis diutius.
Is lulled-asleep my life in evils longer.
Me immundum non secundum peccata corripias;
Me unclean not according-to sins may-you-rebuke;
Qui elatos vulneratos hos et hos humilias:
Who the-proud wounded these and these you-humble:
Sed correcto et respecto tua, Deus, gratia,
But with-me-corrected and regarded by-your, God, grace,
Te laudare et amare da mihi cælestia.
You to-praise and to-love grant to-me heavenly-things.
Emundare, emendare quæ commisi omnia.
To-cleanse, to-amend what I-have-committed all.
Spem salutis, rem virtutis, vitæ innocentiam,
The-hope of-salvation, the-substance of-virtue, of-life innocence,
Castitatis, puritatis, dona mihi gratiam.
Of-chastity, of-purity, give to-me grace.
Cum in ira mente dira interdum efferveo,
When in anger with-mind dreadful sometimes I-boil,
Deus care, moderare in me quod non valeo.
God dear, moderate in me what not I-can.
Nec sit cura mihi jura cuiquam sua tollere
Nor be care to-me the-rights from-anyone his to-take-away
Vel suorum vicinorum terminos revellere.
Or of-his neighbors the-boundaries to-tear-up.

Licet censu, armis, sensu me queant devincere
Though in-wealth, arms, sense me they-could overcome
In bragmani, in pagani regis est apicibus,
In of-the-Brahman, in of-the-pagan king it-is the-writings,
Quod "habemus, possidemus, quæcunque non cupimus;"
That "we-have, we-possess, whatever-things not we-covet;"
Urbes illas, castra, villas, nisi prius capiam
Cities those, castles, towns, unless first I-capture
Non abesse vel deesse eas mihi sentiam.
Not to-be-away or to-be-lacking them to-me may-I-feel.
Regum turres, pauperum res, simili interitu
Of-kings the-towers, of-the-poor the-things, by-like ruin
Opum plenus et egenus æquo cadunt obitu.
Of-wealth full and needy by-equal fall death.
Regni sedes da hæredes meos post me scandere,
Of-the-kingdom the-seat grant the-heirs my after me to-ascend,
Et pacatum regni statum te tutante regere.
And the-pacified of-the-kingdom state with-you guarding to-rule.
Meum clerum da sincerum fas et jus eligere,
My clergy grant sincere the-divine-right and law to-choose,
Et devota mente tota te Deum diligere.
And with-devoted mind whole you God to-love.
Vivant ita bona vita ut tibi complaceant;
May-they-live so with-good life that you they-may-please;
Nobis normam atque formam vivendi se præbeant.
To-us the-rule and form of-living themselves may-they-offer.
Populique meo quique commissi regimini
And-the-people to-my who-ever entrusted government
Dirigantur et subdantur tuo moderamini.
May-be-directed and be-subjected to-your guidance.

His intende, hos defende, his Te præbe clypeum,
To-these attend, these defend, to-these You offer as-shield,
Sceptrum tuum, regnum tuum, dominaris gentium.
Scepter your, kingdom your, you-are-lord of-the-nations.
Aufer bella et flagella tuæ iracundiæ
Take-away the-wars and scourges of-your wrath
Nobis parce, hostes arce, pacem nobis tribue.
Us spare, the-enemies keep-off, peace to-us grant.
Est humana virtus vana: scis quid est in homine.
Is human virtue vain: you-know what is in man.
Nam in parvis nostris armis non salvamur, Domine.
For in small our arms not we-are-saved, Lord.
Sæpe visa et confisa se gratis auxilii,
Often seen and trusting itself without help,
Retro vadit, in se cadit vis expers consilii,
Back goes, on itself falls force devoid of-counsel,
Sed de throno tuo dono virtus adest cælica,
But from throne your by-gift virtue is-present heavenly,
Per quem datur, procuratur de hoste victoria.
Through which is-given, is-procured over the-enemy victory.
Nostra sata decuplata nos fruge lætificent:
Our sown-fields tenfold us with-crop may-gladden:
Nostra culta messe multa copiam multiplicent.
Our tilled-lands with-harvest great abundance may-multiply.
Sic utamur, sic fruamur bonis temporalibus
So let-us-use, so let-us-enjoy goods temporal
Ut lætemur, jocundemur Tecum in cælestibus.
That we-may-rejoice, be-merry with-You in the-heavenly-places.
Et meorum propinquorum miseratus animas
And of-my relatives having-pitied the-souls
Has absolve et evolve delictorum maculas.
These absolve and unroll of-offenses the-stains.

Vivis cunctis et defunctis, Domine, fidelibus
To-the-living all and to-the-dead, Lord, faithful
Da pacatam et beatam vitam in cælestibus.
Grant a-peaceful and blessed life in the-heavenly-places.
Amen!
Amen!

Circa primum elapsum exsilii sui annum, cum jam
around the-first elapsed of-exile his year when already
deferbuisse deberet regis excandescentia, scripsit ei
to-have-cooled-down ought of-the-king the-blazing wrote to-him
bonus archiepiscopus exhortatorias literas illas: "Desiderio
the-good archbishop exhortatory letters those with-desire
desideravi," etc.
I-have-desired etc
Aliqui religiosi viri Franciæ regem Anglorum in Normanniam
some religious men of-France the-king of-the-English into Normandy
et partes illas reducem pro archiepiscopo rogabant; sed
and parts those returned for the-archbishop asked but
eum inexorabilem inveniebant. Plurimas scripsit archiepiscopus
him inexorable they-found very-many wrote the-archbishop
epistolas coepiscopis suis; interdum omnibus communiter,
letters to-fellow-bishops his sometimes to-all in-common
aliquando semotim singulis; ut spiritum Dei resumerent,
sometimes separately to-each that the-spirit of-God they-should-resume
et pro domo Dei, terreno abjecto timore, murum se
and for the-house of-God with-earthly cast-off fear as-a-wall themselves
opponerent. Gillebertus Londoniensis ei sæpius rescripsit;
they-should-oppose Gilbert of-London to-him rather-often wrote-back
sæpius pro causa illa etiam domino papæ persuadere intendens
rather-often for cause that even the-lord pope to-persuade intending

regium sanguinem, cum vicerit, vinci, ut in
the-royal blood when it-shall-have-conquered to-be-conquered that to
partem regis papa ferretur inclinatior, et ne asperum
the-side of-the-king the-pope might-be-borne more-inclined and that-not harsh
quid adversum regem loqueretur occasione archiepiscopi, ne
anything against the-king he-should-say on-the-occasion of-the-archbishop lest
forte in schismate illo generali rex cum omnibus terris suis
perhaps in schism that general the-king with all lands his
parti adversæ, cum imperatore apostatam fovente, adderetur;
to-the-side adverse with the-emperor the-apostate fostering be-added
et tunc in threnos, ut verbo ejus utar, dominus papa totus
and then into lamentations that the-word his I-may-use the-lord pope wholly
ire posset. Satis invenirentur qui episcoporum regis Angliæ
to-go might enough would-be-found who of-the-bishops of-the-king of-England
ecclesias et baculos de manu et obedientia idoli reciperent.
the-churches and staffs from the-hand and obedience of-the-idol would-receive
Hic idem episcopus proscriptorum clericorum archiepiscopi
this same bishop of-the-proscribed clerks of-the-archbishop
reditus et ecclesias custodiendas de manu regis receperat;
the-revenues and churches to-be-kept from the-hand of-the-king had-received
et cum plurimis eorum consolationem plurimam potuisset
and though to-very-many of-them consolation very-much he-could
impune impendisse, vel palam dispertiens et donans sua
with-impunity have-given either openly distributing and giving his-own
pauperibus clericis et destitutis, vel saltem sub absconso
to-the-poor clerks and destitute or at-least under the-cover
chlamydis eorum animas confortans, neque Laurentius fuit
of-the-cloak their souls comforting neither Laurence was-he
neque Sebastianus. Robertus Uscarl, clericus ejus et officialis
nor Sebastian Robert Huscarl clerk his and official
in reditibus ecclesiarum illarum colligendis, frugi homo,
in the-revenues of-churches those to-be-collected a-thrifty man

ecclesias ad minorem dabat pensionem, ut majorem perciperet
the-churches at a-lesser gave rent that a-greater he-might-receive
sibi propter firmas donationem, et xenia inde majora
for-himself on-account-of the-farms the-donation and gifts thence greater
ei provenirent, quæ regis fisco non inferrentur.
to-him came which of-the-king to-the-treasury not were-brought
Archiepiscopus autem excommunicaverat omnes, qui vel bona
the-archbishop however had-excommunicated all who either the-goods
Cantuariensis ecclesiæ vel ecclesias seu bona clericorum suorum
of-the-Canterbury church or the-churches or goods of-clerks his
propria temeritate vel regis occuparent auctoritate. Illi autem,
by-own rashness or of-the-king might-occupy by-the-authority they however
proh dolor! non se gerebant excommunicatos; posteaque
oh pain not themselves they-held excommunicate and-afterward
in flore juventutis suæ plurimi ita obierunt, ut ille Robertus,
in the-flower of-youth their very-many so died as that Robert
et Nigellus de Salcavilla, regis sigillifer: aliqui autem
and Nigel of Sackville of-the-king the-seal-bearer some however
excommunicatorum archiepiscopi in carne sua gravi ulcere
of-the-excommunicated of-the-archbishop in flesh their by-grave ulcer
vulnerati, quasi percussi a Deo, exspiraverunt; ut Robertus
wounded as-if struck by God expired as Robert
vice-archidiaconus Cantuariensis et sacerdos de Chierlewda.
vice-archdeacon of-Canterbury and the-priest of Chierlewda
Episcopus autem Londoniensis ecclesiarum illarum curam
the-bishop however of-London of-churches those the-care
suam, a domino papa plurimum redargutus, circa anni
his from the-lord pope very-much rebuked about of-the-year
finem regi resignavit. Archiepiscopus, inquam, suos
the-end to-the-king resigned the-archbishop I-say his
suffraganeos litteris emissis studiosissime exhortabatur,
suffragans with-letters sent most-zealously exhorted

ut ei et Cantuariensi matri ecclesiæ suæ in unitate
that to-him and to-the-Canterbury mother church their in unity
adhærerent, ne rex eorum conniventia vel dissimulatione
they-should-cling lest the-king by-their connivance or dissembling
ita in Cantuariensem desæviret ecclesiam, et ita legibus
so against the-Canterbury rage church and so with-laws
iniquis clerum Angliæ opprimeret.
unjust the-clergy of-England oppress

PONTIGNY AND SENS

At Pontigny Thomas hears in prayer that he will die for the Church. He condemns the Constitutions of Clarendon, and the king has him driven out, the monks fearing for their whole order; Louis of France takes him in at Sens. The pope writes to the king again and makes Thomas legate in England, and Gilbert of London, ordered to announce it, refuses. Roger of Worcester follows him into exile and, banished by the king for shunning the excommunicated Geoffrey Ridel, is recalled; the bishop of Hereford is stopped from crossing and dies of grief.

[Ibi apud Pontiniacum cum quadam die missam idem beatus
there at Pontigny when on-a-certain day mass the-same blessed
Thomas celebrasset, et post missam ante altare prostratus
Thomas had-celebrated and after mass before the-altar prostrate
in orationibus, fletibus et gemitibus, sicut mos illi erat,
in prayers weepings and groans as the-custom to-him was
aliquamdiu moraretur, audivit vocem, "O Thoma, Thoma!"
for-some-time he-lingered he-heard a-voice O Thomas Thomas
Et ille, "O Domine, quis es?" Et Dominus ad eum, "Ego
and he O Lord who are-you and the-Lord to him I
sum Jesus Christus, Dominus tuus et frater tuus; ecclesia
am Jesus Christ Lord your and brother your the-church

mea in sanguine tuo glorificabitur, et tu gloriaberis in Me."
my in blood your will-be-glorified and you will-be-glorified in Me
Post modicum exsurgens, et inde iturus, qui solum se
after a-little rising and thence about-to-go who alone himself
putabat hoc audisse, vidit abbatem loci, qui erat ei
thought this to-have-heard he-saw the-abbot of-the-place who was to-him
a secretis, prope adstantem, et eum exspectantem sub
among the-secrets near standing and him awaiting under
quadam ecclesiæ illius columna. Et cum cognovisset eum
a-certain of-church that column and when he-had-learned him
hoc audiisse, exegit ab eo ut nemini diceret se
this to-have-heard he-demanded from him that to-no-one he-should-tell with-himself
superstite. Post archiepiscopi martyrium ille hæc revelavit.]
surviving after of-the-archbishop the-martyrdom he these-things revealed
Leges etiam illas Clarendonæ scripto damnavit, et omnes,
the-laws also those of-Clarendon in-writing he-condemned and all
qui eis consenserant, ab earum observatione absolvit.
who to-them had-consented from their observance he-absolved
Rex his et hujusmodi motus archiepiscopum summoveri
the-king by-these and of-this-kind moved the-archbishop to-be-removed
fecit a Pontiniaco; timentibus monachis, ne omnes sui
made from Pontigny with-fearing the-monks lest all of-his
ordinis, quos in terris suis rex Angliæ infinitos habebat,
order whom in lands his the-king of-England countless had
a terris suis ejiceret, si archiepiscopum quasi inimicum
from lands his he-should-cast-out if the-archbishop as-if the-enemy
regis amplius retinerent.
of-the-king longer they-retained
In capella domini regis, in cantico illo festivo, Christus
in the-chapel of-the-lord king in canticle that festal Christ
vincit, non dicebant, archiepiscopo, cum ventum esset ad
conquers not they-said for-the-archbishop when come it-was to

illum versum; sed archiepiscopus, pax, salus et vita. Item
that verse but the-archbishop peace salvation and life likewise
dominus Londoniensis episcopus ad preces solemnes, post
the-lord of-London bishop at the-prayers solemn after
sermones suos, vel in synodis suis, ad clerum, vel in diebus
sermons his or in synods his to the-clergy or on days
festis, ad populum, cum non erat spes pacis regis et
festal to the-people when not there-was hope of-peace of-the-king and
archiepiscopi, non nominabat archiepiscopum, ut oratio fieret
of-the-archbishop not he-named the-archbishop that prayer be-made
ab ecclesia ad Deum pro eo. Cum rumor erat de eorum
by the-church to God for him when rumor was about their
concordia, tunc faciebat de archiepiscopo memoriam; quod
concord then he-made of the-archbishop mention which
multi auditores notabant. Similiterque post fecit: cum
many hearers noted and-likewise afterward he-did when
reges Anglorum, pater et filius, erant concordes, dicebat
the-kings of-the-English father and son were in-concord he-said
in oratione ad missam, Da regibus nostris; cum vero
in the-prayer at mass grant to-kings our when however
discordes, dicebat, Da regi nostro, scilicet seniori, possessori
at-discord he-said grant to-king our namely to-the-elder the-possessor
regni, triumphum virtutis tuæ scienter excolere, etc. Nec
of-the-kingdom the-triumph of-power your knowingly to-cultivate etc nor
deerant, qui talia sæpe notabant.
were-lacking those-who such-things often noted

Qualiter rex Francorum suscepit sanctum Thomam postquam
how the-king of-the-French received saint Thomas after
summotus fuerat a Pontiniaco, fervescente ira regis
removed he-had-been from Pontigny with-blazing the-anger of-the-king
Anglorum.
of-the-English
Tunc eum piissimus et Deo dignus Ludowicus, rex
then him the-most-pious and of-God worthy Louis king
Francorum, quod quidem a principio voluerat, et sancto
of-the-French which indeed from the-beginning he-had-wished and to-saint
Thomæ obtulerat, in suam curam recepit, et ei de reditu
Thomas had-offered into his care received and to-him from revenue
suo Senonico ad exhibendum se donavit nummos, annonam,
his of-Sens for maintaining himself gave coins grain
vina, quantum servientes ipsius volebant accipere: sed et in
wines as-much-as the-servants his wished to-receive but also in
xeniis et muneribus eum frequenter coluit, et in propriæ
gifts and presents him frequently honored and in of-own
visitationis præsentia; dicebatque aliquando ei vel ejus
visitation the-presence and-he-said sometimes to-him or to-his
clericis grates sibi exsolventibus, "Non reddatis mihi gratiam;
clerks thanks to-him paying not render to-me thanks
nunquam alicui vel aliquibus panem meum dedi, unde mihi
never to-anyone or to-any bread my I-gave whence to-me
ita gratum fuisset." Sed et ille archiepiscopus Senonensis
so pleasing it-had-been but also that archbishop of-Sens
Willelmus, filius comitis Theobaldi nepotis senioris Henrici
William son of-count Theobald of-the-nephew of-the-elder Henry
regis Angliæ, frater reginæ et trium comitum Franciæ, ætatem
king of-England brother of-the-queen and of-three counts of-France age
juvenculus morum gravitate transgrediens, qui meritorum
a-youth of-morals in-gravity surpassing who of-merits

favore duas nobiles habere meruit ecclesias, Senonensem
by-the-favor two noble to-have deserved churches of-Sens
titulatam et Carnotensem commendatam, archiepiscopum in
titled and of-Chartres commended the-archbishop in
vera coluit dilectione; et omnis clerus et militia Galliæ.
true honored love and all the-clergy and knighthood of-Gaul
Extra urbem Senonicam apud Sanctæ Columbæ morabatur.
outside the-city of-Sens at Saint Colombe he-stayed
Jam dominus papa regi Anglorum sollicitius cœpit
now the-lord pope to-the-king of-the-English more-anxiously began
scribere pro eo, tanto tempore elapso, ut exspirasse jam
to-write for him with-so-much time elapsed that to-have-expired already
debuissent, si mortale fuisset, odium et indignatio. Post
they-ought if mortal had-been hatred and indignation after
multas suavissimasque exhortationes epistolares, nuncios aliquos
many and-most-sweet exhortations epistolary envoys some
mittebat. Ita alternando, regem a mentis calore revocare
he-sent so alternating the-king from of-mind the-heat to-recall
intendebat. Cum autem pulsanti ei non aperiretur, aliquando,
he-intended when however to-knocking him not it-was-opened sometimes
sed temperate, minas addebat, diligenter ei ingerens, quod
but moderately threats he-added diligently to-him urging that
diutius eum supportaverat, patientia eum ad emendationem
longer him he-had-borne with-patience him to amendment
provocaverat; amplius eum ita sustinere non posse, contra
had-invited further him so to-bear not to-be-able against
animæ suæ salutem. Interdum etiam et archiepiscopo consilium
of-soul his the-salvation sometimes also both to-the-archbishop counsel
dabat et licentiam animadvertendi in rebelles sibi filios suos;
he-gave and license of-punishing in rebellious to-himself sons his
etiam et archiepiscopum honoravit et exaltavit legatione et
also and the-archbishop he-honored and exalted with-the-legation and

primatu Angliæ, ut quantum deerat illi in possessionum
the-primacy of-England that as-much-as was-lacking to-him in of-possessions
suarum amissione, suppleretur ei in dignitatum accessione;
his the-loss be-supplied to-him in of-dignities the-accession
et quod minus habebat in reditibus, recuperaret in honoribus.
and what less he-had in revenues he-might-recover in honors
Episcopo Londoniensi misit litteras domini papæ de
to-the-bishop of-London he-sent the-letters of-the-lord pope about
sua legatione, et suas proprias tanquam legatus, utrasque
his legation and his own as legate both
præceptorias, ut episcopis Angliæ eum esse domini papæ
mandatory that to-the-bishops of-England him to-be of-the-lord pope
legatum tanquam ejus decanus denunciaret, et quas
legate as his dean he-should-announce and which
singulis scribebat episcopis litteras mittebat. Episcopus hanc
to-each he-wrote to-the-bishops letters he-sent the-bishop this
obedientiam recusavit. Item eundem episcopum aliquando prius
obedience refused likewise the-same bishop sometime earlier
evocaverat, litteris ad eum directis commonefaciens, mandans,
he-had-summoned by-letters to him directed reminding commanding
et præcipiens ut ad eum veniret, et tanquam ejus
and ordering that to him he-should-come and as his
suffraganeus et Cantuariensis ecclesiæ professus eum consilio
suffragan and of-the-Canterbury church professed him with-counsel
et auxilio in causa ecclesiæ juvaret. Episcopus noluit.
and help in the-cause of-the-church should-help the-bishop refused
Idem episcopus quondam excommunicatum archiepiscopi
the-same bishop once excommunicated of-the-archbishop
Alanum de Nova Villa, Jerosolyma iturum, absolvit citra
Alan of Ne- ville to-Jerusalem about-to-go absolved without
domini papæ vel ipsius archiepiscopi conscientiam, juratum
of-the-lord pope or of-the-very of-the-archbishop the-knowledge sworn

tamen quod obiter dominum papam adiret, et ab
nevertheless that on-the-way the-lord pope he-should-approach and from
eo pœnitentiæ injungendæ susciperet remedia.
him of-penance to-be-enjoined should-receive the-remedies
Episcopus Wigorniensis Rogerius evocatus et statutus sequi
the-bishop of-Worcester Roger summoned and appointed to-follow
archiepiscopum, et cum patre et domino suo in consilio esse,
the-archbishop and with father and lord his in counsel to-be
et auxilio in causa ecclesiæ, et impetrata semel transfretandi
and help in the-cause of-the-church and with-obtained once of-crossing-the-sea
licentia, quasi studiorum causa, quorum ætate junior erat,
leave as-if of-studies for-the-sake for-which in-age younger he-was
morabatur in transmarinis interdum ad curiam regis,
stayed in overseas-parts sometimes at the-court of-the-king
quod ei cognatione fuit conjunctissimus. Hujus laus
because to-him by-kinship he-was most-closely-joined of-this-one the-praise
celebris, hæc est præclara memoria, qui solus inter episcopos
famous this is the-illustrious memory who alone among the-bishops
Angliæ ausus est et voluit patri exsuli coexsulare, cum
of-England dared has and wished with-the-father exile to-share-exile with
paupere paupertatem tolerare, pro libertate stare ecclesiæ,
the-poor-man poverty to-bear for the-liberty to-stand of-the-church
et in die nubis et caliginis regi in erratis resistere.
and in the-day of-cloud and darkness the-king in errors to-resist
Quisquis amico in errore resistit, fit resipiscentis amicus
whoever to-a-friend in error resists becomes of-the-penitent a-friend
jocundior. Archiepiscopus pro inobedientia sæpius correptum
more-pleasant the-archbishop for disobedience often rebuked
et vocatum archidiaconum suum, Galfridum Ridellum, tandem
and summoned archdeacon his Geoffrey Ridel at-length
excommunicaverat, significaveratque hoc regi, id tamen
had-excommunicated and-had-signified this to-the-king it nevertheless

dissimulanti et non curanti. Itemque episcopus Wigorniensis,
dissembling and not caring and-likewise the-bishop of-Worcester
qui multo post ad curiam venit, a rege benigne susceptus
who much afterward to the-court came by the-king kindly received
est, quippe eum libenter audiebat, licet ejus non adquiesceret
was indeed him gladly he-heard although his not he-acquiesced
consilio. Una dierum intraverunt in capellam; rex missam
in-counsel one of-the-days entered into the-chapel the-king mass
erat auditurus; loco suo stetit, episcopus interius in loco suo.
was about-to-hear in-place his stood the-bishop farther-in in place his
Non multo post intravit archidiaconus Cantuariensis; episcopus
not much after entered the-archdeacon of-Canterbury the-bishop
eo viso exivit. Rex miratus est, causam tamen intellexit,
with-him seen went-out the-king wondered has the-cause nevertheless understood
et in ira fervore stimulante actus est. Misit tamen
and in anger by-heat goading driven he-was he-sent nevertheless
nuntium statim rediturum dicere ei cur exiisset. Cum
a-messenger at-once about-to-return to-say to-him why he-had-gone-out when
episcopus plane causam dixisset, misit iterum post eum rex
the-bishop plainly the-cause had-told sent again after him the-king
qui diceret ei, quod a terra ejus ocius exiret.
one-who should-say to-him that from land his more-quickly he-should-go-out
Episcopus misit pro sociis [et] pro hominibus suis ut eum
the-bishop sent for companions and for men his that him
sequerentur, et statim recessit, regique nuntiavit quod
they-should-follow and at-once withdrew and-to-the-king announced that
jam pedem habebat in strepa (vel orbe tenente pedem,
already the-foot he-had in the-stirrup or with-the-ring holding the-foot
seu quo alio dignatur nomine), a terra sua exiturus,
or by-what other it-is-deigned name from land his about-to-go-out
et abiit. Sui collectis sarcinis et impedimentis eum
and went-away his-men with-gathered packs and baggage him

jam sequebantur. Post magnum intervallum cum rex
already followed after a-great interval when the-king
iratus in verba contumeliæ et minarum prorumperet, fuit
angry into words of-insult and of-threats burst-out there-was
qui diceret ei, "Domine, quid fecisti? Episcopum
one-who said to-him lord what have-you-done a-bishop
conjunctissimum tibi fide et sanguine a terris tuis
most-closely-joined to-you by-faith and blood from lands your
eliminasti. Si dicere fas est, non bene fecisti. Præterea
you-have-banished if to-say lawful it-is not well you-have-done besides
archiepiscopus obsequium acceptissimum et desiderantissimum
to-the-archbishop a-service most-acceptable and most-desired
ei addidisti. Dominus papa non prius animadvertendi in
to-him you-have-added the-lord pope not before of-punishing against
te nimis justam et evidentem causam habuit: nunc utetur
you too just and evident cause had now he-will-use
occasione non quæsita sed oblata. Tuis te das dolorem
the-occasion not sought but offered to-yours yourself you-give a-pain
amicis, gaudium inimicis, qui proscribis innocentem, expellis
to-friends a-joy to-enemies who you-proscribe the-innocent you-expel
episcopum." His et hujusmodi rex suasus et revocatus
the-bishop by-these and of-this-kind the-king persuaded and recalled
misit qui equum urgens calcaribus episcopum revocaret.
sent one-who the-horse urging with-spurs the-bishop should-recall
Noluit episcopus redire. Rex denuo misit alios in dextrariis
would-not the-bishop return the-king again sent others on chargers
agillimis, et tertios nuntios, inter quos et comitem unum,
most-agile and third messengers among whom also an-earl one
qui episcopum vel delinitum revocarent, vel renitentem
who the-bishop either soothed should-recall or resisting
coactumque reducerent. Rediit, et regi deliberius locutus
and-compelled bring-back he-returned and to-the-king more-freely spoke

est. Et eo in curia morante, nunquam archidiaconus
has and with-him in the-court staying never archdeacon
ille capellam intravit, neque episcopo præsente regis se
that the-chapel entered nor with-the-bishop present of-the-king himself
ingessit præsentiæ. Sed et Herefordiensis episcopus similiter
did-he-thrust into-the-presence but also of-Hereford the-bishop likewise
a domino archiepiscopo litteris evocatus ad mare venit ut
by the-lord archbishop by-letters summoned to the-sea came that
transfretaret; sed transfretare prohibitus, altius indoluit, et
he-might-cross but to-cross forbidden more-deeply grieved and
cum rediisset ad propria, in illa doloris vehementia etiam
when he-had-returned to his-own in that of-grief vehemence also
correptus infirmitate, suffocatus efflavit extremum.
seized by-infirmity choked breathed-out the-last

THE EXCOMMUNICATION OF GILBERT

On Palm Sunday at Clairvaux Thomas excommunicates Gilbert of London for threefold disobedience. Gilbert proclaims the rumor to his clergy yet does not hold himself excommunicate, claims he owes Canterbury no obedience and that London was once the metropolitan see. On Ascension Day a layman, Berenger, kneels at the altar of Saint Paul's and hands the sentence to the priest Vitalis as an offering, then slips away through the crowd. When Gilbert and the dean return, Vitalis gives them the letters, which are read in public.

Dominus archiepiscopus una dominica Palmarum, post
the-lord archbishop on-one Sunday of-Palms after
processionem et sermonem, episcopum Londoniensem pro
the-procession and sermon the-bishop of-London for
trina inobedientia revocatum, sed irrevocabilem, in multa
threefold disobedience recalled but irrecoverable in great

præsentia religiosorum et fidelium Dei apud Claram
presence of-religious and faithful of-God at Clair-
Vallem excommunicavit, et quosdam alios in Anglia
vaux excommunicated and certain others in England
vel in curia regis commorantes pro causis quas in
or in the-court of-the-king staying for causes which in
litteris suis quæ habentur manifestabat. Quoscunque enim
letters his which are-extant he-made-plain whomever for
excommunicabat archiepiscopus, in litteris emissis eorum
excommunicated the-archbishop in letters sent their
crimina exprimebat, et excommunicationis rationes et leges
crimes he-expressed and of-the-excommunication the-reasons and laws
vel decreta subjungebat, ut appareret ex iracundiæ calore
or decrees he-subjoined that it-might-appear from of-anger the-heat
vel inimicitiarum causa eum nihil agere severitatis, qui
or of-enmities for-the-sake him nothing to-do of-severity who
super eorum excessibus potius movebatur pio affectu
over their excesses rather was-moved by-pious affection
paternitatis. Rumor statim in Anglia[m] venit; fama
of-fatherhood the-rumor at-once into England came fame

"Mobilitate viget viresque acquirit eundo."
"By-mobility it-thrives and-strength acquires by-going."

Episcopus Londoniensis audito statim in urbem ad
the-bishop of-London with-it-heard at-once into the-city to
cathedralem ecclesiam venit; convocat canonicos et clerum
the-cathedral church came convokes the-canons and clergy
urbis Londoniensis, abbates quoque et priores et personas
of-the-city of-London abbots also and priors and persons
vicinarum ecclesiarum; rumorem talem de se publicat, se
of-neighboring churches rumor such about himself he-publishes himself

excommunicatum prædicat, et tamen se excommunicatum
excommunicated he-proclaims and nevertheless himself excommunicated
non gerebat, mirantibus sapientibus. Nec multo post convocat
not he-held with-wondering the-wise nor much after he-convokes
synodum generalem, eadem prædicabat, sed ex nullo,
a-synod general the-same-things he-proclaimed but from no-one
adversario nullo respondente, quasi quia absens et indefensus
with-adversary none answering as-if because absent and undefended
et non vocatus fuerat. Sed qui archiepiscopi litteras
and not summoned he-had-been but one-who of-the-archbishop letters
trinæ citationis vel alias vocationis deferret, non facile
of-threefold citation or of-other summons should-bring not easily
inveniretur, quippe chaos magnum, non tantum maris et
would-be-found since a-chasm great not only of-sea and
terrarum, sed regis iræ et minarum, inter eos firmatum
of-lands but of-the-king of-anger and threats between them fixed
erat. Nec potuit solennitas ista citationum per nuntium
was nor could the-solemnity this of-citations through a-messenger
fieri, ubi nuntius non audebat suum vel archiepiscopi
be-made where a-messenger not dared his or of-the-archbishop
nomen profiteri. Insuper et se non obnoxium vel
name to-profess moreover also himself not bound or
subjectum Cantuariensi archiepiscopo vel ecclesiæ contendebat.
subject to-the-Canterbury archbishop or church he-contended
Pridem fuisse se dicebat Herefordiensem episcopum, et
formerly to-have-been himself he-said of-Hereford bishop and
nomine illius episcopii Cantuariensi ecclesiæ professum, sed
in-the-name of-that bishopric to-the-Canterbury church professed but
modo illa obedientia solutum, quia ad Londoniensem
now from-that obedience released because to the-London
ecclesiam translatus fuerat, et Londoniensis episcopus
church translated he-had-been and the-London bishop

nullam Cantuariensi ecclesiæ professionem fecerat. Ad hæc
no to-the-Canterbury church profession had-made to these-things
se archiepiscopum esse debere ex chronicorum ratione
himself archbishop to-be ought from of-the-chronicles the-reckoning
asserebat, siquidem temporibus Britonum, ante subactam ab
he-asserted since in-the-times of-the-Britons before subdued by
Anglis insulam, sedes quidem metropolitana Londonia fuit.
the-English the-island the-see indeed metropolitan London was
Ita declamabat; sed causa assistata est nullo adversario.
so he-declaimed but the-cause pleaded was with-no adversary
Eo audito et sibi relicto, quisque rediit ad propria.
with-him heard and to-himself left each returned to his-own
Ipse se non gerebat excommunicatum. Fuit tamen
he-himself himself not he-held excommunicated there-was nevertheless
qui ei in secreto diceret rumoribus credi oportere
one-who to-him in secret said rumors to-be-believed it-behooves
et non oportere. Nondum audierat vel viderat litteras
and not it-behooves not-yet had-he-heard or seen the-letters
sententiæ in eum datæ; et pro solis rumoribus ita extra
of-the-sentence against him given and for alone rumors so out-of
se rapiebatur, et in tantum se jactabat periculum
himself he-was-carried and to so-much himself he-tossed the-danger
animæ super inobedientia laboris, super talis causæ de
of-soul over disobedience of-labor over of-such cause about
archiepiscopo prosecutione. Exspectaret donec litteras sententiæ
the-archbishop the-prosecution let-him-wait until the-letters of-the-sentence
datæ audiret, si effugere non posset ne audiret, et interim
given he-should-hear if to-avoid not he-could that he-hear and meanwhile
catholicum se gerens, tunc consilio uteretur. Norunt episcopi
catholic himself conducting then counsel he-should-use knew the-bishops
et justiciarii Angliæ quod quærebatur qui tales litteras
and justiciars of-England that was-sought one-who such letters

in Angliam portarent; faciunt portus marinos districtissime
into England should-carry they-make the-ports maritime most-strictly
observari. Et prior Cantuariensis ecclesiæ ab ecclesia recedit;
to-be-watched and the-prior of-the-Canterbury church from the-church withdraws
episcopus Roffensis similiter; Londoniensis episcopus similiter
the-bishop of-Rochester likewise the-London bishop likewise
et decanus: ne inter regem et archiepiscopum fluctuantes,
and the-dean lest between the-king and the-archbishop wavering
et in neutram partem fidi, si tales litteras venientes ad
and to neither side faithful if such letters coming to
se recipiant, [in Scyllæam] voraginem cadant; si non
themselves they-receive into the-Scyllaean whirlpool they-fall if not
recipiant, absorbeat eos Charybdis. Unum juvenem, non
they-receive swallow them Charybdis one young-man not
litteratum sed laicum, invenit archiepiscopus, qui sententiæ
lettered but a-layman found the-archbishop who of-the-sentence
hujus litteras, periculo multo se exponens, sed pro Deo
this the-letters to-danger much himself exposing but for God
mori non veritus, in Angliam detulit. In celebri festo die
to-die not fearing into England carried on the-crowded feast day
Ascensionis Dominicæ, cum quidam vicarius, Vitalis nomine,
of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord when a-certain vicar Vitalis by-name
homo timoratus et honestus sacerdos, celebraret ad magnum
a-man God-fearing and honorable priest was-celebrating at the-great
altare episcopalis ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli in Londonia, et cum
altar of-the-episcopal church of-Saint Paul in London and when
cantaretur offerenda, et sacerdos ille hostiam panis et vini
was-sung the-offertory and priest that the-host of-bread and of-wine
obtulisset et calicem composuisset, adest Berengarius, et
had-offered and the-chalice had-arranged is-present Berengar and
positis genibus porrexit sacerdoti litteras quasi oblationem
with-placed knees held-out to-the-priest the-letters as-if offering

suam. Ille attonitus et ad oblationem primo manum extendit
his he astonished and to the-offering first the-hand stretched
et recepit. Ait ille, "Non est hic hujus sedis episcopus,
and received says he not is here of-this see the-bishop
sed neque decanus: video te hic ministrum Jesu Christi;
but nor the-dean I-see you here a-minister of-Jesus Christ
tibi ex parte Dei et domini papæ trado hic litteras
to-you on behalf of-God and of-the-lord pope I-hand here the-letters
archiepiscopi Cantuariensis de sententia data in episcopum
of-the-archbishop of-Canterbury about the-sentence given upon the-bishop
hujus ecclesiæ, et litteras etiam ejusdem ad decanum, ut
of-this church and the-letters also of-the-same to the-dean that
ipse et clerus hujus ecclesiæ hanc observent sententiam.
he and the-clergy of-this church this may-observe sentence
Et tibi dico Dei auctoritate ut præter hanc missam
and to-you I-say of-God by-the-authority that beyond this mass
amplius non celebres, donec episcopo suas, et decano suas
further not you-celebrate until to-the-bishop his and to-the-dean his
litteras ostendas." Hæc dixit et abiit inter densas
letters you-show these-things he-said and went-away among the-thick
turmas populi, ut moris est, post Evangelium die festo
crowds of-the-people as custom is after the-Gospel on-the-day festal
ad propria recedentes; siquidem mane ad parochianas
to their-own withdrawing indeed in-the-morning at parish
ecclesias missas suas audivit. Factum est murmur aliquod ab
churches masses their they-heard made was a-murmur some from
illis qui altari propius aderant admoti, quærentibus a
those who to-the-altar nearer were-present brought asking from
sacerdote si interdicta esset in urbe divinorum celebratio.
the-priest whether forbidden were in the-city of-divine-things the-celebration
Cumque respondisset sacerdos, "Non," siluit populus, et
and-when had-answered the-priest no was-silent the-people and

ab iis ille quæsitus non est. Sacerdote prosequente missæ
by them he sought not was with-the-priest continuing of-the-mass
celebrationem, ab officialibus quidem regis in urbe et
the-celebration by the-officials indeed of-the-king in the-city and
extra ad transitus viarum ille tacite et sollicite quæsitus,
outside at the-crossings of-roads he silently and anxiously sought
sed minime inventus est. Idem Berengarius postea ad
but by-no-means found was the-same Berengar afterward to
Eboracum venit cum litteris domini papæ amaras historias
York came with letters of-the-lord pope bitter stories
continentibus, et tamen indemnis evasit.
containing and nevertheless unharmed escaped
Episcopus Londoniensis et decanus post dies aliquot in urbem
the-bishop of-London and the-dean after days some into the-city
veniunt; in ecclesiam clerus urbis et civium majores natu
come into the-church the-clergy of-the-city and of-the-citizens the-elder by-birth
evocantur. Ibi in publico omnium aspectu sacerdos ille, Vitalis,
are-summoned there in public of-all sight priest that Vitalis
acta narrat episcopo; suas offert literas, quæ hoc continebant:
the-acts tells to-the-bishop his he-offers letters which this contained
“Excessus vestros, dum licuit, supportavimus; et utinam
excesses your while it-was-permitted we-have-borne and would-that
mansuetudo patientiæ nostræ, quæ nobis ultra modum damnosa
the-mildness of-patience our which to-us beyond measure damaging
exstitit, in totius ecclesiæ perniciem non redundet. Sed
has-proved into of-the-whole church ruin not overflow but
quia patientia nostra semper abusi estis, et nec dominum
because patience our always abused you-have and neither the-lord
papam nec nos in verbo salutis vestræ voluistis audire,
pope nor us in the-word of-salvation your have-you-wished to-hear
sed obduratio vestra in deteriora semper excrevit, nos urgente
but hardness your into worse-things always has-grown we with-urging

necessitate officii, et ratione juris persuadente, ex justis et
the-necessity of-office and the-reason of-law persuading from just and
manifestis caussis, anathematis sententia percellentes vos
manifest causes of-anathema with-the-sentence striking you
excommunicavimus, et a corpore Christi, quod est ecclesia,
we-have-excommunicated and from the-body of-Christ which is the-church
donec condigne satisfaciatis, amputavimus. Præcipimus ergo
until worthily you-satisfy we-have-cut-off we-command therefore
in virtute obedientiæ, et in periculo salutis, dignitatis
in virtue of-obedience and in danger of-salvation of-dignity
et ordinis, quatenus, prout ecclesiæ forma præscribit,
and of-order that as of-the-church the-form prescribes
ab omni communione fidelium abstineatis, ne participatio
from all communion of-the-faithful you-abstain lest participation
vestra gregem Dominicum contaminet ad ruinam, qui vestra
your the-flock of-the-Lord contaminate to ruin which by-your
doctrina erudiendus, [et exemplis informandus] erat ad vitam."
teaching to-be-instructed and by-examples to-be-formed was to life
Decano etiam offert suas, quæ hæc continebant; et,
to-the-dean also he-offers his which these-things contained and
utræque literæ in publico lectæ sunt.
both letters in public read were
"Vestram non debet latere prudentiam, quod fere totus
your not ought to-escape prudence that nearly the-whole
Latinus orbis agnovit, quam inique, sumpta opportunitate
Latin world has-recognized how unjustly with-seized opportunity
ex caussa schismatis generalis, Gilbertus Londoniensis
from the-cause of-the-schism general Gilbert of-London
episcopus, frater noster, utinam verus, in caussa ecclesiæ
bishop brother our would-that true in the-cause of-the-church
versatus sit, et pacem ejus studuerit perturbare. Supportavimus
behaved has and the-peace its has-striven to-disturb we-have-borne

[enim] eum in multa patientia hactenus, qua ille semper
for him with much patience hitherto which he always
abutens, jugis inobedientiæ crimen multiplicans excessibus
abusing of-continual disobedience the-crime multiplying with-excesses
incorrigibiliter cumulavit. Nos ergo, cui ultra dissimulare
incorrigibly has-heaped-up we therefore to-whom further to-dissemble
non licuit, eum urgente necessitate officii, et ratione juris
not was-permitted him with-urging the-necessity of-office and the-reason of-law
persuadente, publice excommunicavimus, et vobis præcipimus
persuading publicly have-excommunicated and to-you we-command
in virtute obedientiæ, et in periculo ordinis et salutis, ut
in virtue of-obedience and in danger of-order and of-salvation that
a communione ejus, sicut decet Christi fideles, prorsus
from communion his as befits of-Christ the-faithful wholly
abstineatis. Similiter et alios sub eadem interminatione
you-abstain likewise also others under the-same threat
præcipimus evitari, quorum nomina inferius scripta sunt.
we-command to-be-avoided whose names below written are
Simili quoque sententia, Deo auctore, eos qui a nobis
with-like also sentence with-God as-author those who by us
solemniter citati sunt, nisi interim satisfaciant, condemnabimus
solemnly cited were unless meanwhile they-satisfy we-shall-condemn
in die Ascensionis Domini, scilicet Gaufredum Cantuariensem
on the-day of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord namely Geoffrey of-Canterbury
archidiaconum, [et] Robertum vicarium ejus, [Ricardum de
archdeacon and Robert vicar his Richard of
Ivelcestre, Ricardum de Luci,] Willelmum Giffard, Adam de
Ilchester Richard of Lucy William Giffard Adam of
Cherr[inges], et eos qui [ope vel consilio domini regis, vel]
Charing and those who by-help or counsel of-the-lord king or
mandato, vel propria temeritate, nostra vel clericorum nostrorum
by-mandate or by-own rashness our or of-clerks our

bona occupaverunt, et eos, qui ope vel consilio domini
the-goods have-occupied and those who by-help or counsel of-the-lord
regis animum adversus libertatem ecclesiæ, et innocentium
king the-mind against the-liberty of-the-church and of-the-innocent
proscriptionem et depopulationem instigasse noscuntur, et qui
the-proscription and devastation to-have-incited are-known and who
nuncios domini papæ et nostros, ne prosequantur necessitates
the-envoys of-the-lord pope and ours lest they-pursue the-needs
ecclesiæ, impediunt. Non turbetur cor vestrum in his
of-the-church hinder not let-be-troubled heart your in these-things
neque formidet, quoniam contra malignantium tergiversationes
nor fear since against of-the-malignant the-evasions
et appellationum subterfugia, Deo propitio, apostolicæ sedis
and of-appeals the-subterfuges with-God propitious of-the-apostolic see
munimine tuti sumus. Hæc sunt nomina excommunicatorum:
by-the-defense safe we-are these are the-names of-the-excommunicated
Jocelinus Saresberiensis episcopus, comes Hugo, Randulphus
Jocelin of-Salisbury bishop earl Hugh Ranulf
de Broch, Thomas filius Bernardi, Robertus de Broch,
of Broc Thomas son of-Bernard Robert of Broc
clericus, Hugo de S. Claro, Letardus clericus de Norfleta,
clerk Hugh of Saint Clare Letard clerk of Northfleet
Nigellus de Sacavilla, Ricardus frater Willelmi de Hastinga,
Nigel of Sackville Richard brother of-William of Hastings
qui ecclesiam nostram de Monocotona occupavit. Valete."
who church our of Monkton occupied farewell

Gilbert submits, the king writes him in anger at the traitor Thomas, and he is absolved by the archbishop of Rouen and the bishop of Exeter on the pope's word. Thomas excommunicates Bishop Jocelin of Salisbury, who had given the deanery to the king's clerk John of Oxford against the pope's letters, and others of the king's men; the king has them absolved, stops Peter's pence and closes the ports, and the bishops renew their appeals year by year. Six English sees lie vacant. Louis and the pope press for peace, and at Planches the cardinals and the archbishop of Rouen work on Thomas.

Ex tunc episcopus communi consilio excommunicatum se
from then the-bishop by-common counsel excommunicated himself
gessit et regi acta significat. Rex ei rescribit in
held and to-the-king the-acts signifies the-king to-him writes-back in
hunc modum:
this manner
"Audivi gravamen quod ille Thomas proditor et adversarius
I-have-heard the-grievance which that Thomas traitor and adversary
meus intulit in te, et in alias personas regni mei,
my has-brought against you and against other persons of-kingdom my
quod non minus ægre de persona tua fero, quam si in
which not less ill about the-person your I-bear than if against
meam propriam personam virus suum evomuisset. Et ideo pro
my own person venom his he-had-vomited and therefore for
certo scias, quod ego omnem operam dabo, per dominum
certain know that I every effort will-give through the-lord
papam, et per regem Francorum, et per omnes amicos
pope and through the-king of-the-French and through all friends
meos, quod de cætero non poterit nobis nec regno nostro
my that for the-rest not he-will-be-able us nor kingdom our
nocere. Unde volo et consulo, quod tu interim nullo modo
to-harm whence I-wish and advise that you meanwhile in-no way

in animo tuo turberis, sed tibi viriliter provideas, utrum
in mind your be-troubled but for-yourself manfully provide whether
magis tibi et mihi expediat, quod ad me in Normanniam
more for-you and for-me it-be-expedient that to me into Normandy
celeriter venias, vel quod in Anglia remaneas. Hoc enim totum
quickly you-come or that in England you-remain this for all
tuæ committo dispositioni, pro certo sciturus, quod si ad
to-your I-commit disposition for certain about-to-know that if to
me veneris, et Romam adire volueris, omnia
me you-shall-have-come and Rome to-approach you-shall-have-wished all
necessaria ad viam de meo tibi honorabiliter et sufficienter
necessaries for the-way from mine for-you honorably and sufficiently
inveniam. Teste T … clerico apud S. Macarium in Gwasconia."
I-shall-find witness T … clerk at Saint Macaire in Gascony
Episcopus transfretavit, et per domini regis interventum
the-bishop crossed and by of-the-lord king the-intervention
et suis mediantibus nunciis absolutionem impetravit sibi
and with-his mediating envoys absolution obtained to-himself
dari ab extraordinaria potestate R. Rotomagiensis et B.
to-be-given by the-extraordinary power of-R of-Rouen and of-B
Exoniensis, quibus eum absolvendi a domino papa est delegata
of-Exeter to-whom him of-absolving by the-lord pope was delegated
potestas. Rediit, et quidam episcopi et nuntii domini regis et
the-power he-returned and certain bishops and envoys of-the-lord king and
sui cum eo, qui a domino papa venerant, et prædicatum
his-men with him who from the-lord pope had-come and proclaimed
est publice in ecclesia cathedrali eum esse absolutum.
it-was publicly in the-church cathedral him to-be absolved
In regis Anglorum offensam Jocelinus Saresberensis
into of-the-king of-the-English the-displeasure Jocelin of-Salisbury
episcopus inciderat. Ad gratiam ejus captandam, decanatum
bishop had-fallen for favor his to-be-won the-deanery

Saresberiæ cuidam clerico regis, Johanni Oxenefordensi
of-Salisbury to-a-certain clerk of-the-king John of-Oxford
donaverat; prius tamen prohibitus litteris domini papæ, ne
he-had-given earlier nevertheless forbidden by-letters of-the-lord pope that-not
alicui personæ honorem illum donaret citra conscientiam et
to-any person honor that he-should-give without the-knowledge and
consensum canonicorum suorum, quorum quidam de majoribus
consent of-canons his of-whom certain of the-greater
ecclesiæ coexsules erant archiepiscopi. Unde auctoritate domini
of-the-church fellow-exiles were of-the-archbishop whence by-the-authority of-the-lord
papæ, archiepiscopus illum excommunicavit. Et hoc fecit etiam
pope the-archbishop him excommunicated and this he-did also
beati Anselmi, prædecessoris sui quarti, roboratus exemplo;
of-blessed Anselm predecessor his the-fourth strengthened by-the-example
qui in exsilio positus apud Cluniacum comitem Metlenti
who in exile placed at Cluny the-count of-Meulan
excommunicavit, quo consiliario rex Anglorum Willelmus
excommunicated whom as-counselor the-king of-the-English William
secundus utebatur contra libertatem electionis episcoporum
second used against the-liberty of-election of-bishops
et abbatum, sibi usurpans donationem baculorum.
and of-abbots to-himself usurping the-giving of-staffs
Aliquos etiam barones et clericos laterales regis suis ex
some also barons and clerks attendant of-the-king their from
causis propriorum excessuum excommunicavit, et publice
causes of-own excesses he-excommunicated and publicly
excommunicatos denunciari præcepit. Sic nimirum ante
excommunicate to-be-denounced ordered so surely before
leonem catuli aliquando verberantur.
the-lion the-whelps sometimes are-beaten

Hujus sententiæ in Angliam portitor vix repertus est.
of-this sentence into England a-bearer scarcely found was
A rege Angliæ missum est ad dominum papam pro
by the-king of-England sent it-was to the-lord pope for
absolutione; spem pacis jam promittebat. Rescripsit papa,
absolution hope of-peace already he-promised wrote-back the-pope
ut absolverentur, et ab alio quam ab archiepiscopo;
that they-should-be-absolved even by another than by the-archbishop
extraordinarie satis, sed ut regem mitigaret. Aliquotiens
extraordinarily enough but that the-king he-might-soften several-times
rex Anglorum barones suos aliquot, a domino archiepiscopo
the-king of-the-English barons his some by the-lord archbishop
excommunicatos, missis nunciis ad dominum papam, impetravit
excommunicated with-sent envoys to the-lord pope obtained
absolvi quasi pro metu mortis, significans ei quod
to-be-absolved as-if for fear of-death signifying to-him that
eos contra hostes Walenses in exercitu esset ducturus.
them against the-enemies Welsh in the-army he-was about-to-lead
Hac occasione apud ecclesiam S. Trinitatis in Londonia
on-this occasion at the-church of-Holy Trinity in London
aliquando plurimi fuerunt absoluti. Et archiepiscopo etiam ad
once very-many were absolved and from-the-archbishop also for
tempus organum detraxit, et potestatem ligandi regem vel
a-time the-instrument he-took-away and the-power of-binding the-king or
suos, ut vel sic regem victorem faceret, et ad consilium
his-men that at-least so the-king a-victor he-might-make and to the-counsel
Dei et suum inclinaret. Spe illa diu suspensus, et tandem
of-God and his he-might-incline by-hope that long suspended and at-length
delusus, dominus papa, cum oleum suum eorum non sanaret
deluded the-lord pope when oil his their not healed
infirma, iterum resolvit os archiepiscopi, iterum attemptat
infirmities again released the-mouth of-the-archbishop again he-tries

vinum infundere. Rex iratus jussit denarium sancti Petri
wine to-pour-in the-king angry ordered the-penny of-saint Peter
annuum in Anglia retineri sibi. Iterum jubet, subtilius
annual in England to-be-retained for-himself again he-orders more-subtly
præcavens, tandem, ut nullus in Angliam transfretaturus
guarding at-length that no-one into England about-to-cross
recipiatur, nisi habeat regis litteras; ne forte aliquis
be-received unless he-have of-the-king letters lest perhaps someone
interdicti sententiam, quam sciebat archiepiscopum habere,
of-interdict the-sentence which he-knew the-archbishop to-have
in Angliam deferret. Ex parte sua, Londoniensis et cæteri
into England should-bring on behalf his the-London-one and the-other
episcopi Angliæ, ne quid interdicti in personas illorum
bishops of-England lest anything of-interdict against the-persons of-them
vel in regnum archiepiscopus statuat, annum fere totum
or against the-kingdom the-archbishop decree the-year nearly whole
includentes, appellationes faciunt et scribunt archiepiscopo, et
including appeals make and write to-the-archbishop and
non prosequuntur. Evoluto anno appellationes renovant et
not prosecute with-rolled-round the-year the-appeals they-renew and
archiepiscopo significant, eludentes ejus potestatem hujusmodi
to-the-archbishop signify eluding his power of-this-kind
frustrationibus. Noluerunt intelligere, quod appellatio hominum
by-frustrations they-would-not understand that appeal of-men
adinventio est. De jure civili est; introducta est ad repellenda
an-invention is from law civil it-is introduced is for repelling
injusta gravamina, imminentia possessionibus nostris vel
unjust burdens impending on-possessions our or
corporibus. Unde etiam beatus Paulus, corpori suo timens,
bodies whence also blessed Paul for-body his fearing
cum caperetur, ait, “Cæsarem appello.” In talibus habet locum
when he-was-seized says to-Caesar I-appeal in such-things has place

appellatio; nec videtur sapientibus catholicis quod extendi
appeal nor it-seems to-wise catholics that to-be-extended
debeat ad tollendum obedientiam, ad evacuandam majorem
it-ought for removing obedience for emptying the-greater
potestatem ecclesiasticam, ad elidendam excommunicationem,
power ecclesiastical for crushing excommunication
quæ non de jure humano, sed ab ore Jesu Christi est
which not from law human but from the-mouth of-Jesus Christ is
introducta, potestatem hanc dantis apostolis suis, ubi dicit,
introduced power this giving to-apostles his where he-says
"Quæcunque ligaveritis in terra, erunt ligata et in cœlo;
whatever-things you-shall-have-bound on earth will-be bound also in heaven
quæ solveritis, soluta." Absit enim ut jus humanum
what you-shall-have-loosed loosed far-be-it for that law human
præjudicet juri divino, et quod humanæ est adinventionis
prejudge the-law divine and what of-human is invention
adnihilet illud quod divinæ est constitutionis.
annihilate that which of-divine is constitution
Interea plurimi episcoporum Angliæ de medio facti sunt,
meanwhile very-many of-the-bishops of-England from the-midst made were
ut præter archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem, sex in Anglia
so-that besides the-archbishopric of-Canterbury six in England
rex in manu sua haberet vacantes episcopatus. Alii quidem
the-king in hand his held vacant bishoprics others indeed
senio confecti agebant in extremis.
by-old-age worn-out were in extremity
Sua pro parte, dominus rex Francorum et optimates
their for part the-lord king of-the-French and the-magnates
Galliæ, sæpius hortatu domini papæ, sæpius proprio
of-Gaul often by-the-exhortation of-the-lord pope often by-own
spiritu, dolorem regis et regni Angliæ attendentes,
spirit the-grief of-the-king and of-the-kingdom of-England regarding

regem pro bono pacis conveniunt. Tandem consensit rex
the-king for the-good of-peace meet at-length agreed the-king
Angliæ archiepiscopum Cantuariensem ad colloquium eorum
of-England the-archbishop of-Canterbury to the-conference their
evocari. Plurima inter eos habita sunt colloquia: sed
to-be-summoned very-many between them held were conferences but
sufficiet de aliquibus aliquid breviter dicere.
it-will-suffice about some something briefly to-say
Colloquio ad Plancas, cardinales Willelmus Papiensis, et
at-the-conference at Planches the-cardinals William of-Pavia and
Otto, et archiepiscopus Rothomagensis maxime archiepiscopum
Otto and the-archbishop of-Rouen most the-archbishop
temptaverunt. "Vetus est," inquiunt, "de providentia querela,
tried old is they-say about providence the-complaint
et de his scriptis regiis consuetudinibus inter reges et
and about these written royal customs between the-kings and
archiepiscopos Angliæ semper materia est corrixandi: hoc est
archbishops of-England always a-matter it-is of-wrangling this is
caput querelæ, hæc malorum omnium origo. Et cum dicas
the-head of-the-complaint this of-evils all the-origin and since you-say
te pacem ecclesiæ tuæ supra omnia diligere, et has exsecreris
yourself the-peace of-church your above all-things to-love and these you-execrate
consuetudines, modo parebit, modo certum dabis indicium.
customs now it-will-appear now certain you-will-give proof
Pax ecclesiæ in manibus tuis est. Visne renunciare
the-peace of-the-church in hands your is do-you-wish to-renounce
archiepiscopatui, si rex consuetudinibus?" Ille, "Non hæc
the-archbishopric if the-king the-customs he not these
æqua lance librantur. Ego enim salvo honore ecclesiæ meæ
on-equal scale are-weighed I for with-saved the-honor of-church my
et personæ meæ archiepiscopatui renunciare non possum.
and of-person my the-archbishopric to-renounce not can

Inauditum enim est hoc de antecessoribus meis. Regis honor
unheard-of for is this about predecessors my of-the-king the-honor
et animæ ejus salus salva magis est in renunciando quam
and of-soul his the-salvation safe more is in renouncing than
in retinendo consuetudines; quod exinde patet, quia dominus
in retaining the-customs which thence is-plain because the-lord
papa eas damnavit, et vos cum ecclesia Romana." Cum in hoc
pope them condemned and you with the-church Roman when in this
eum sermone capere non possent, ut renunciaret, quæsierunt si
him in-speech to-catch not they-could that he-should-renounce they-asked if
coram eis contra regem super querelis habitis vellet litigare.
before them against the-king about complaints had he-would-wish to-litigate
Et simulabant se habere, (quam tamen non habebant,)
and they-pretended themselves to-have which nevertheless not they-had
plenitudinem potestatis in causa. Respondit, "Ita; si tamen
the-fullness of-power in the-case he-answered yes if nevertheless
prius integre restitueretur." Aiunt illud esse impossibile. Ille,
first wholly he-were-restored they-say that to-be impossible he
"sibi vel ecclesiæ Dei non aliter expedire." Tunc episcopi
for-himself or for-the-church of-God not otherwise to-be-expedient then the-bishops
Angliæ, totum annum includentes, quindecim diebus minus,
of-England the-whole year including fifteen days less
faciunt appellationem, quam cardinales domino papæ scribunt.
make an-appeal which the-cardinals to-the-lord pope write

At Montmirail Thomas nearly yields to the king but adds "saving the honor of God," and the peace fails; his own clerk Henry of Houghton mocks the phrase to his horse. At Montmartre Thomas asks restitution in writing; the king offers the judgment of the French clergy or the Paris schools but will not speak of restitution, and leaves. At Pontoise the king does not come. At Angers he questions Thomas's clerks, John of Salisbury and Herbert of Bosham, who refuse to swear to keep the written customs against the pope and the archbishop.

Colloquio apud Munt-Mirail, ita bene ei per internuncios
at-the-conference at Montmirail so well to-him through intermediaries
pacis promittebat rex Angliæ, quod fere inductus est
of-peace promised the-king of-England that nearly induced he-was
omnino se voluntati regis supponere, ut rex ita
wholly himself to-the-will of-the-king to-submit so-that the-king so
vicisse videretur. Aderant in illa sententia archiepiscopi
to-have-won might-seem were-present in that opinion the-archbishops
Remensis, Senonensis, Rothomagensis, rex Franciæ, episcopi,
of-Reims of-Sens of-Rouen the-king of-France the-bishops
et abbas de Monte Dei, de ordine Chertusæ; et quod
and the-abbot of Mont Dieu of the-order of-the-Charterhouse and that
de consuetudinibus scriptis Clarendonæ non loqueretur.
about the-customs written of-Clarendon not he-should-speak
"Quæ enim," aiunt, "necessitas loquendi super his? Scripto
what for they-say necessity of-speaking over these-things by-writing
vestro, auctoritate domini papæ, eas damnastis, et ab earum
your by-the-authority of-the-lord pope them you-condemned and from their
observatione omnes qui assensum præstiterant solvistis." In
observance all who assent had-given you-released on
crastino colloquio semper retinuit, "Salvo honore Dei,
the-morrow at-the-conference always he-retained with-saved the-honor of-God

et libertate ecclesiæ." Mirabantur omnes prænominati. Rex
and the-liberty of-the-church were-amazed all the-aforenamed the-king
Angliæ ait, "Omnes hæ aberunt determinationes; hic nihil
of-England says all these will-be-absent reservations here nothing
erit sophismatis." Mediatoribus supradictis suadentibus hæc
will-be of-sophistry with-the-mediators aforesaid persuading these-things
relinquere, cum non adquiesceret, quasi desperati discesserunt,
to-leave when not he-acquiesced as-if despairing they-departed
relicto eo tanquam consilii eorum desertore. Ipse ad socios
with-left him as of-counsel their a-deserter he-himself to companions
suos se recipiens, dixit inter cætera, Deum ea die fecisse
his himself betaking said among other-things God on-that day to-have-done
summum sibi honorem, unde maxime Deo gratificari habebant,
highest to-him honor whence most to-God to-give-thanks they-had
qui, quod omnes postponebant alii, retinuerant honorem Dei
who what all put-after others had-retained the-honor of-God
in omnibus salvum fore. Sed plurimi sociorum ejus, reditum
in all-things saved to-be but very-many of-the-companions his the-return
in terram nativitatis suæ desiderantes, quod pax non procederet,
into the-land of-birth their desiring that peace not proceeded
et quod a rege offerente ei reditum et restitutionem,
and that from the-king offering to-him return and restitution
ille in his determinationibus inhæreret, moleste ferebant.
he in these reservations stuck ill bore
In redeundo a colloquio illo, in ipso comitatu regis
in returning from conference that in the-very retinue of-the-king
Francorum, forte proxime ante archiepiscopum quidam clericus
of-the-French by-chance nearest before the-archbishop a-certain clerk
ejus, Henricus de Hoctuna, equitabat. Equus ejus offendit
his Henry of Houghton rode the-horse his stumbled
præceps; ille clare, ut audiret archiepiscopus, ironice ait equo
headlong he clearly that might-hear the-archbishop ironically says to-horse

suo, “E, progredere, salvo honore Dei et sanctæ ecclesiæ
his go proceed with-saved the-honor of-God and of-holy church
et ordinis mei.” Archiepiscopus ægre ferens, tacuit. Post
and of-order my the-archbishop ill bearing-it was-silent after
intervallum, secedens in partem cum clericis suis, ut equi
an-interval withdrawing to one-side with clerks his that the-horses
respirarent et stillarent, ait eis, “Dilecti socii, mecum
might-breathe and stale he-says to-them beloved companions with-me
omnia passi, ut quid contra me ita sentitis et loquimini?
all-things having-suffered to what against me so do-you-think and speak
Reditus et restitutio nostra minimum quidem est; libertas
the-return and restitution our least indeed is the-liberty
ecclesiæ, de qua rex non loquitur, longe pluris est. Pacem
of-the-church about which the-king not speaks far more is peace
tandem recipiam, pacto quo potero meliori; sed nunquam ita
at-length I-shall-receive on-terms which I-can better but never so
curtas nundinas vidistis.” Tamen postmodum in sententiam
short market have-you-seen nevertheless afterward to the-opinion
boni archiepiscopi Thomæ omnes præfati magni viri
of-the-good archbishop Thomas all the-aforesaid great men
consenserunt, errorem suum damnaverunt, eum virum sanctum,
agreed the-error their they-condemned him a-man holy
et fortem Dei athletam habuerunt, constantiam approbaverunt,
and strong of-God athlete they-held the-constancy they-approved
et in ipsius amplius confœderati et confirmati sunt dilectione.
and in his further united and confirmed were love
Colloquio apud Montem Martyrum, cum rex Angliæ
at-the-conference at the-Mount of-Martyrs when the-king of-England
orationum gratia ad Sanctum Dionysium venisset, et pallium
of-prayers for-the-sake to Saint Denis had-come and a-mantle
optimum et quater viginti aureos oblationem super altare
best and four-times twenty gold-pieces as-offering on the-altar

posuisset; ubi et a rege Franciæ, et omni clero et militia
had-placed where also by the-king of-France and all the-clergy and knighthood
qui ei occurrerant, honorifice susceptus est; post, cum
who him had-met honorably received he-was after when
de pace ejus et archiepiscopi tractaretur, et archiepiscopus,
about peace his and of-the-archbishop it-was-treated and the-archbishop
super solitis articulis tentatus et interrogatus, semper idem
on the-usual articles tried and questioned always the-same
inveniretur, et petitionem suam in schedula scriptam regi
was-found and petition his on a-slip written to-the-king
mitteret, ut suæ ecclesiæ Cantuariensis jura, et sibi
sent that of-his church of-Canterbury the-rights and to-himself
et clericis hominibusque suis ablata, et fraternam pacem
and to-the-clerks and-men his taken-away and brotherly peace
et clero Angliæ libertatem restitueret, ipseque ei
and to-the-clergy of-England liberty he-should-restore and-he-himself to-him
tanquam domino et regi fidelis foret, et devotus in omnibus,
as lord and king faithful would-be and devoted in all-things
salvo honore Dei et sanctæ ecclesiæ et ordinis sui:
with-saved the-honor of-God and of-holy church and of-order his
his non acquiescens rex ad satisfaciendum auditoribus
to-these-things not acquiescing the-king for satisfying the-hearers
obtulit super causa eorum tractanda stare judicio
offered on the-case their to-be-treated to-abide by-the-judgment
cleri Franciæ, vel scholarium Parisius; sed de præcedente
of-the-clergy of-France or of-the-scholars at-Paris but about previous
restitutione facienda non loquebatur. Et recessit reginam et
restitution to-be-made not he-spoke and he-withdrew the-queen and
Philippum regis filium visurus Parisius, quasi ita spreto
Philip of-the-king the-son about-to-see at-Paris as-if so with-spurned
archiepiscopo et rupto colloquio. Quod archiepiscopus inter
the-archbishop and broken the-conference which the-archbishop among

cætera moleste tulit, dicens quod forte ter vocaretur
other-things ill bore saying that perhaps thrice he-would-be-called
antequam amplius ad colloquendum veniret. Cum discordes
before further to conferring he-came when at-discord
hoc modo digrederentur ab invicem, effluxere dies.
in-this manner they-parted from each-other flowed-by days
Aliquod colloquium habendum erat apud Pontem Isaræ ex
some conference to-be-held was at the-Bridge of-the-Oise by
condicto. Die dicta, affuerunt archiepiscopus Senonensis
agreement on-the-day appointed were-present the-archbishop of-Sens
et episcopus Bethleemita. Rex Anglorum illuc venire
and the-bishop of-Bethlehem the-king of-the-English thither to-come
noluit, sed mandavit eis per nuncium illorum conventus,
would-not but sent-word to-them through an-envoy of-their meeting
quod si vellent venire Gisortium, loqueretur eis. Ita
that if they-wished to-come to-Gisors he-would-speak to-them so
delusa est eorum fatigatio, et exspectatio archiepiscopi.
deluded was their fatigue and the-waiting of-the-archbishop
Rex, comites, et magnates Franciæ aliquando regem Angliæ
the-king the-counts and magnates of-France sometimes the-king of-England
convenerunt pro clericis archiepiscopi majoribus, qui cum
met for the-clerks of-the-archbishop the-greater who with
eo remanserant, ut saltem eis reditus suos restitueret.
him had-remained that at-least to-them revenues their he-should-restore
"Si pro sua promotione archiepiscopo serviebant, hoc mirum
if for their promotion the-archbishop they-served this wonderful
non erat. Non eos contingebat causa ipsius et archiepiscopi;
not was not them touched the-case his and of-the-archbishop
quod ipsi duo inter se delirabant, clerici illi
that they-themselves two between themselves were-mad clerks those

immerito plectebantur." Rex Angliæ adquievit, ut ad eum
undeservedly were-punished the-king of-England acquiesced that to him
clerici illi accederent, salvo itu, statu, reditu.
clerks those should-come with-safe going staying returning
Venerunt Andegavum ad Pascha sancta dominica in albis,
they-came to-Angers at Easter the-holy Sunday in white
siquidem ibi rex festivus comederat pascha. Una dierum
since there the-king festive had-eaten Easter one of-the-days
sedit inter familiares suos, clericos illos auditurus. Primus ad
he-sat among familiars his clerks those about-to-hear the-first to
eum vocatus intravit Johannes de Saresberia; a rege salutato
him called entered John of Salisbury by the-king greeted
prius petiit pacem, et beneficiorum suorum ecclesiasticorum
first he-asked peace and of-benefices his ecclesiastical
restitutionem, quoniam regis offensam sciens in nullo
the-restitution since of-the-king the-offense knowingly in nothing
meruerat, et paratus foret regi esse devotus, subditus
he-had-deserved and ready would-be to-the-king to-be devoted subject
et fidelis, sicut domino suo terreno, salvo ordine suo.
and faithful as to-lord his earthly with-saved order his
Dictum est ei pro rege, quod in terra regis
said it-was to-him on-behalf-of the-king that in the-land of-the-king
natus et nutritus suos ibi propinquos haberet, et de bonis
born and reared his there relatives he-had and from the-goods
terræ regis in magnam frugem multarum probitatum
of-the-land of-the-king into great fruit of-many probities
et divitiarum adoleverat; et oportere eum sicut regni
and riches he-had-grown and to-behoove him as of-the-kingdom
regis indigenam regi esse fidelem contra archiepiscopum
of-the-king a-native to-the-king to-be faithful against the-archbishop
et omnes homines: propositaque est ei forma sacramenti,
and all men and-proposed was to-him the-form of-the-oath

si jurare vellet, quod regi fidelis foret de vita et
if to-swear he-wished that to-the-king faithful he-would-be about life and
membris suis, et honore suo terreno conservando contra omnes
limbs his and honor his earthly to-be-preserved against all
homines, et nominatim, quod consuetudines suas scriptas et
men and by-name that customs his written and
regales suas dignitates legitime conservaret, quidquid faceret
royal his dignities lawfully he-would-keep whatever might-do
dominus papa vel archiepiscopus vel episcopus suus. Ille omnia
the-lord pope or the-archbishop or bishop his he all
alia concedens, in archiepiscopi consuetudinibus hæsit,
other-things granting at of-the-archbishop the-customs stuck
dicens, se nutritum ab adolescentia de bonis Cantuariensis
saying himself reared from youth on the-goods of-the-Canterbury
ecclesiæ, et juratum esse in domini papæ et archiepiscopi sui
church and sworn to-be into of-the-lord pope and of-archbishop his
obedientiam; neque posse Cantuariensi ecclesiæ vel domino suo
obedience nor to-be-able to-the-Canterbury church or to-lord his
archiepiscopo deesse, neque posse quarumlibet consuetudinum
the-archbishop to-fail nor to-be-able of-any customs
observantiam suscipere contra dominum papam et ecclesiam
observance to-undertake against the-lord pope and the-church
Cantuariensem; sed cum domino papa et archiepiscopo se
of-Canterbury but with the-lord pope and the-archbishop himself
ait paratum recipere quæ ipsi prius reciperent, respuere
he-said ready to-receive what they-themselves first received to-reject
quæ respuerent. Rex non adquievit. Ille jussus recessit.
what they-rejected the-king not acquiesced he being-ordered withdrew
Vocatus intravit magister Herbertus de Boseham. Rex suis
called entered master Herbert of Bosham the-king to-his-men
ait de eo, “En videbitis quendam superbum intrare.” Ipse
says about him behold you-will-see a-certain proud-man enter he-himself

quidem, statura ut erat procerus et forma venustus, etiam
indeed in-stature as he-was tall and in-form handsome also
satis splendide erat indutus, habens de quodam panno viridi
quite splendidly was clothed having of a-certain cloth green
Autisiodorensi tunicam et pallium, ab humeris more
of-Auxerre a-tunic and a-cloak from the-shoulders in-the-manner
Alamannorum dependens, ad talos demissum, ornatum
of-the-Germans hanging to the-ankles let-down adorned
decenter contingentibus suis. Præfata regis salutatione,
fittingly with-the-pertaining-things its with-spoken of-the-king the-greeting
sedit. Conventus est simili modo, quo Johannes. Respondere
he-sat addressed he-was in-like manner as John to-answer
incœpit similiter Johanni fere, sed hæsit in archiepiscopo et
he-began likewise to-John nearly but he-stuck at the-archbishop and
fidelitate, et consuetudinibus illis scriptis. Archiepiscopum de
fealty and customs those written the-archbishop for
vitæ honestate et regis fidelitate plurimum commendavit,
of-life honesty and to-the-king fidelity very-much he-commended
dicens illum solum esse regis fidelem qui regem non
saying that-one alone to-be to-the-king faithful who the-king not
permittit errare, ubi potest revocare: nam qui regi
allows to-err where he-can recall for who to-the-king
loquitur ad placitum, et ejus errorem, si quid est,
speaks at pleasure and his error if anything there-is
dissimulat, et quem taciturnitas addicit, regi fidelis non
dissembles and whom silence makes-over to-the-king faithful not
est, fidem præterit, jurata mentitur. Ideoque ait se
is faith he-passes-by the-sworn-things he-belies and-therefore he-says himself
non posse regi illam veram fidelitatem jurare, nisi vellet
not to-be-able to-the-king that true fealty to-swear unless he-wished
regi comes inseparabilis adhærere, et eum, ubi esset
to-the-king as-companion inseparable to-cling and him where he-was

juste corripiendus, corripere; sciebatque regem hujus esse
justly to-be-rebuked to-rebuke and-he-knew the-king of-this to-be
instituti et animi, quod eum non audiret, nec toleraret.
disposition and mind that him not he-would-hear nor tolerate
De consuetudinibus ait quod dixerat Johannes; et adjecit
about the-customs he-said what had-said John and he-added
mirum sibi videri, quod rex scribi illas fecerat. "Sunt
wonderful to-himself to-seem that the-king to-be-written them had-made there-are
enim," ait, "et in regnis aliis aliquæ malæ consuetudines
for he-said also in kingdoms other some evil customs
contra ecclesiam Dei, sed non scriptæ: ideoque quia scriptæ
against the-church of-God but not written and-therefore because written
non sunt, spes est major, quod inspirante regibus Deo
not they-are hope is greater that with-inspiring to-the-kings God
exterminentur. Rex eum volens capere in sermone, ait,
they-be-exterminated the-king him wishing to-catch in speech says
"Et quænam sunt malæ consuetudines in regno domini
and what are evil customs in the-kingdom of-the-lord
nostri regis Francorum?" Herbertus: "Consuetudines telonei
our king of-the-French Herbert customs of-toll
et pasagii, quæ etiam a clericis et peregrinis exiguntur.
and of-passage which even from clerks and pilgrims are-exacted
Item, obeunte episcopo, bona domus, æs, omnia mobilia,
likewise with-dying a-bishop the-goods of-the-house money all movables
etiam fenestræ et ostia exportantur, et regis fiunt. Item
even windows and doors are-carried-off and of-the-king become likewise
forte similes vel aliæ aliquæ malæ consuetudines sunt,
perhaps like or other some evil customs there-are
sed non scriptæ, in regno regis Alemannorum." Rex:
but not written in the-kingdom of-the-king of-the-Germans the-king
"Quare in nomine dignitatis derogas ei, non vocans
why in the-name of-dignity do-you-detract from-him not calling

eum imperatorem Alemannorum?" Herbertus: "Rex est
him emperor of-the-Germans Herbert king he-is
Alemannorum; sed ubi scribit, scribit Imperator Romanorum,
of-the-Germans but where he-writes he-writes Emperor of-the-Romans
semper Augustus." Rex ait, "Proh pudor! Magna siquidem
ever Augustus the-king says oh shame great indeed
indignatio, quod hic filius sacerdotis regnum meum perturbat,
indignation that this son of-a-priest kingdom my disturbs
et pacem meam inquietat." Herbertus: "Ego minime: sed
and peace my unsettles Herbert I by-no-means but
neque filius sum sacerdotis, qui non fui genitus in sacerdotio,
nor son am-I of-a-priest who not was begotten in the-priesthood
licet postea sacerdos fuerit pater meus; neque filius regis
although afterward a-priest became father my nor son of-a-king
est, nisi quem pater rex genuerit." Tunc ait quidam de
is-he unless whom the-father as-king shall-have-begotten then says a-certain-one of
assidentibus baronibus, Jordanus Tarsun, "Equidem cujuscunque
the-sitting-by barons Jordan Taisson indeed of-whomever
filius sit, vellem dimidium terræ meæ dedisse, ut filius
son he-be I-would-wish half of-land my to-have-given that son
meus esset." Quod etiam verbum rex amare accepit et
my he-were which also word the-king bitterly received and
siluit. Post pauca, jussit Herbertum abire; recessit.
was-silent after a-few-things he-ordered Herbert to-go-away he-withdrew

Philip of Calne, a Londoner, a scholar kept by sickness out of the quarrel, is called before the king, who remits the oath and restores his goods. The pope gives Thomas power to sentence the king, but Thomas would rather recall him by patience; the pope exhorts and then threatens the king, who makes his subjects swear against the letters of pope and archbishop and guards the ports. In London Roger of York crowns the young Henry, against the right of Canterbury, while the bishop of Worcester is kept from crossing. Near Falaise the king abuses the bishop as a traitor, and the bishop answers that the coronation was unjust and rebukes him for ruining his brothers and seizing the Church's revenues.

Philippus de Calva, natu Londoniensis, qui duobus annis ante
Philip of Calne by-birth a-Londoner who two years before
exsilium archiepiscopi Turonis studuerat, divinam paginam
the-exile of-the-archbishop at-Tours had-studied the-divine page
audiens et leges docens, apprimæ lectionis, et eloquentissimus,
hearing and laws teaching of-outstanding reading and most-eloquent
sed ægrotatus, eoque neque præsentiam archiepiscopi
but having-been-sick and-therefore neither the-presence of-the-archbishop
comitabatur, neque Romam mittebatur, neque regis et ejus
accompanied nor to-Rome was-sent nor of-the-king and his
distantiæ se immiscebat, vocatus introiit. Hæc autem de eo
in-the-difference himself mixed called entered these however about him
dicta regi nota facta sunt ibi; habuitque bonos intercessores,
said to-the-king known made were there and-he-had good intercessors
qui dicerent regi eum dixisse, cum audisset se occasione
who said to-the-king him to-have-said when he-had-heard himself on-account
archiepiscopi bonis suis in Anglia destitutum, "Deus bone,
of-the-archbishop of-goods his in England deprived God good
quid a me quærit ille bonus hoc rex?" Rex itaque suasus,
what from me seeks that good this king the-king therefore persuaded

ne nihil gratiæ faceret, huic sacramentum propositum
lest nothing of-favor he-should-do to-this-one the-oath proposed
remisit, pacem suam dedit, restitutionemque bonorum suorum
remitted peace his gave and-the-restitution of-goods his
concessit, et surgens ad alia se convertit negotia.
granted and rising to other-things himself turned affairs
Tandem hoc domino papæ significatum est, quod concordia
at-length this to-the-lord pope signified was that concord
non procedebat. Habuit item a domino papa archiepiscopus
not proceeded had likewise from the-lord pope the-archbishop
auctoritatem dandæ sententiæ in personam regis: sed
the-authority of-giving sentence against the-person of-the-king but
melius patientia et commonitionibus eum ad pœnitentiam
better by-patience and admonitions him to penitence
et satisfactionem revocare intendebat. Quo audito rex misit
and satisfaction to-recall he-intended which heard the-king sent
domino papæ nuncium Reginaldum Lumbardum, ut cum
to-the-lord pope as-envoy Reginald the-Lombard that with
domino papa ageret, vel de transferendo archiepiscopo ad
the-lord pope he-might-treat either about translating the-archbishop to
alium titulum archiepiscopalis ecclesiæ, cum de depositione
another title of-archiepiscopal church since about the-deposition
ipsius totiens frustra temptatus dominus papa semper immobilis
his so-often in-vain tempted the-lord pope always immovable
et pecuniæ spretor inventus est; vel de revocanda potestate
and of-money a-despiser found was or about revoking power
illa commissa archiepiscopo animadvertendi in eum; vel de
that entrusted to-the-archbishop of-punishing against him or about
dilatione dandæ sententiæ, sub spe pacis et reconciliationis
the-delay of-giving sentence under hope of-peace and reconciliation

archiepiscopi, quam domino papæ rex promisit. Et quidem
of-the-archbishop which to-the-lord pope the-king promised and indeed
ultimum illud Reginaldus ille a domino papa impetravit.
the-last that Reginald that from the-lord pope obtained
Iterum et iterum dulcibus alloquiis et exhortationibus regem
again and again with-sweet addresses and exhortations the-king
dominus papa compellat. Non proficiens hac via, minatur
the-lord pope addresses not succeeding by-this way he-threatens
securim ad radicem arboris ponendam. Quod proculdubio
the-axe at the-root of-the-tree to-be-laid which without-doubt
rex intelligens, jurare facit omnem Angliam a laico
the-king understanding to-swear makes all England from a-layman
duodenni vel quindecim annorum supra, contra dominum
of-twelve-years or fifteen years upward against the-lord
papam et archiepiscopum, quod eorum non recipient
pope and the-archbishop that their not they-will-receive
litteras, neque obedient mandatis: et, si quis inventus foret
letters nor will-obey commands and if anyone found were
litteras eorum deferens, traderetur potestatibus, tanquam
letters their carrying he-should-be-handed-over to-the-powers as
coronæ regis capitalis inimicus. Tamen hoc sacramentum
of-the-crown of-the-king capital enemy nevertheless this oath
apostasiæ nobilis quædam domina, filia Baldewini de
of-apostasy noble a-certain lady daughter of-Baldwin of
Reivers, viriliter agens et zelum habens obedientiæ Dei,
Reviers manfully acting and zeal having of-obedience to-God
neque juravit neque aliquem hominum suorum jurare
neither swore nor any of-men her to-swear
permisit. Archiepiscopus Eboracensis similiter libere fecit. Alii
allowed the-archbishop of-York likewise freely did others
episcopi qui in Anglia remanserant, proh dolor! in parochiis
bishops who in England had-remained oh pain in parishes

suis sacramentum illud jurari permiserunt. Archiepiscopus
their oath that to-be-sworn allowed the-archbishop
hoc audito, tanto compatiens errori et apostasiæ, missis
this heard at-so-great sympathizing error and apostasy with-sent
clam litteris ad aliquos timoratos Dei, omnes qui inviti
secretly letters to some fearing of-God all who unwilling
juraverant a sacramento absolutos pronunciavit.
had-sworn from the-oath absolved pronounced
Rex facit portus maris districtissime observari. Interim
the-king makes the-ports of-the-sea most-strictly to-be-watched meanwhile
in Angliam revertitur, et filium suum Henricum apud
into England he-returns and son his Henry at
Londoniam, imponente ei manum archiepiscopo Eboracensi,
London with-laying on-him the-hand the-archbishop of-York
supradicto Rogerio; præter spem et opinionem omnium
aforesaid Roger beyond the-hope and expectation of-all
fere totius regni, subito fecit coronari. Archiepiscopus
nearly of-the-whole kingdom suddenly he-had crowned the-archbishop
Cantuariensis ad hunc casum oculos direxerat providentiæ, et
of-Canterbury to this event the-eyes had-directed of-providence and
a domino papa litteras obtinuerat, in sabbato dominicæ
from the-lord pope letters had-obtained on the-Saturday of-the-Sunday
coronationis illius Eboracensi et Londoniensi oblatas, ne
coronation of-that to-the-York-one and to-the-London-one presented that-not
ipsi vel alii episcopi Angliæ citra eum non ad hoc revocatum
they or other bishops of-England without him not for this recalled
ei coronando manum imponerent; quia Cantuariensis
on-him to-be-crowned the-hand should-lay because of-the-Canterbury
ecclesiæ hæc debebat esse coronatio. Nec minus coronatur
church this ought to-be the-coronation nor less is-he-crowned
pridie festum sanctorum Viti et Modesti. Rex statim
the-day-before the-feast of-saints Vitus and Modestus the-king at-once

retransfretat; sed prius cum filium suum rex Angliæ
crosses-back but first when son his the-king of-England
disposuisset coronari, dixit hoc idem Wigorniensi tunc
had-arranged to-be-crowned he-said this same to-the-Worcester-one then
transmarino transmarinus, præcipiens ut repatriaret, et
overseas overseas ordering that he-should-return-home and
cum episcopis, qui pauci admodum supererant in Anglia,
with the-bishops who few quite remained in England
cognati sui adesset coronationi. Nec tamen significavit
of-kinsman his he-should-be-present at-the-coronation nor nevertheless did-he-signify
ei quod per manus impositionem Eboracensis vellet eum
to-him that by of-hand the-laying-on of-the-York-one he-wished him
coronari. Episcopus sperans meliora concessit, et ad maris
to-be-crowned the-bishop hoping-for better-things agreed and to of-the-sea
portum Diopam venit. Rex in Angliam venerat. Regina, quæ
port Dieppe came the-king into England had-come the-queen who
in Normannia remanserat, et Ricardus de Humet, justitiarius
in Normandy had-remained and Richard of Humet justiciar
Normannorum, litteras miserunt episcopo Wigorniensi ad
of-the-Normans letters sent to-the-bishop of-Worcester at
portum prædictum ne transfretaret; alias etiam litteras
the-port aforesaid that-not he-should-cross other also letters
præposito et transvectoribus naves habentibus, ne episcopum
to-the-provost and the-ferrymen ships having that-not bishop
illum in Angliam transveherent, nec transfretare permitterent.
that into England they-should-carry nor to-cross allow
Sane intelligebant quod episcopus ille per Eboracensem manus
truly they-understood that bishop that by the-York-one the-hands
coronando impositurum non permitteret illum coronari
on-the-one-to-be-crowned about-to-lay not would-allow him to-be-crowned
in provincia Cantuariensi, vivente Cantuariensi archiepiscopo;
in the-province of-Canterbury with-living the-Canterbury archbishop

cujus dignitatis esse debebat regem novum consecrare. Ita
whose of-dignity to-be it-ought the-king new to-consecrate so
transfretare prohibitus, episcopus remansit in Normannia.
to-cross forbidden the-bishop remained in Normandy
Post coronationem illam rex statim, ut dictum est,
after coronation that the-king at-once as said it-was
retransfretavit in Normanniam. Trans Falesiam Wigorniensis
crossed-back into Normandy beyond Falaise the-Worcester
episcopus ad tria millia extra Falesiam ad eum venit.
bishop at three miles outside Falaise to him came
Rex ei se vultuosum ostendit, et statim in verba
the-king to-him himself scowling showed and at-once into words
prorupit contumeliæ, dicens, "Nunc patet te proditorem
burst of-insult saying now it-is-plain you a-traitor
esse; præceperam tibi ego ipse quod coronationi filii mei
to-be I-had-ordered you I myself that at-the-coronation of-son my
adesses, et tibi diem prædixeram. Adesse noluisti;
you-should-be-present and to-you a-day I-had-fixed to-be-present you-would-not
in quo, quod neque me, neque filii mei diligas promotionem,
in which that neither me nor of-son my you-love the-promotion
plane ostendisti. Equidem patet quod inimico magis faveas,
plainly you-have-shown indeed it-is-plain that the-enemy more you-favor
et me meosque odio habeas; sed reditus episcopatus tui
and me and-mine in-hatred you-hold but the-revenues of-bishopric your
amplius tibi non remanebunt. Eripiam eas a manibus
longer to-you not will-remain I-shall-snatch them from hands
tuis, quia et episcopatu et omni beneficio indignum te
your because both of-the-bishopric and of-every benefice unworthy yourself
probasti. Vere Roberti boni comitis, avunculi mei, filius
you-have-proved truly of-Robert the-good earl uncle my the-son
nunquam fuisti, qui me et te in castro illo nutrivit,
never were-you who me and you in castle that reared

et nos ibi et prima elementa morum et litterarum
and us there both the-first elements of-morals and of-letters
doceri procuravit." Episcopus, de sua securus innocentia,
to-be-taught procured the-bishop of his secure innocence
regi simpliciter et modeste acta narravit, quomodo ad
to-the-king simply and modestly the-acts told how to
portum usque venisset, et quomodo, ne transfretaret,
the-port even he-had-come and how that-not he-should-cross
litteras prohibitionis accepisset. Rex non credulus illi, et
letters of-prohibition he-had-received the-king not believing him and
vehementissime accensus, ait, "Regina est in castro illo
most-vehemently inflamed says the-queen is in castle that
Falesiæ, et forte Ricardus de Humet vel adest vel in
of-Falaise and perhaps Richard of Humet either is-present or in
proximo aderit; laudasne illos auctores?" Episcopus,
the-near-future will-be-present do-you-name them as-authors the-bishop
"Reginam minime, ne forte, si reverentia vel timore vestri
the-queen by-no-means lest perhaps if from-reverence or fear of-you
verum supprimat, adversum me amplius excandescas; si vero
the-truth she-suppress against me more you-blaze-up if however
verum confiteatur, adversus illam nobilem dominam irreverenter
the-truth she-confess against that noble lady irreverently
insanias; non est mihi tibia tanti ut pro hoc unum verbum
you-rage not is to-me a-pipe so-precious that for this one word
amarum ab ore vestro audiat; malo sic factum esse
bitter from mouth your she-hear I-prefer so done to-have-been
quam me coronationi affuisse, quæ quidem injusta et
than myself at-the-coronation to-have-been-present which indeed unjust and
contra Deum fuit, non ratione coronati, sed præsumptione
against God was not by-reason of-the-crowned but by-the-presumption
coronatoris; et si affuissem, illum ibi eum coronasse non
of-the-crowner and if I-had-been-present that-one there him to-have-crowned not

sustinuissem. Dicis me non fuisse filium comitis Roberti.
I-would-have-endured you-say me not to-have-been the-son of-earl Robert
Nescio; matris meæ vel filius fui, cum qua totius
I-know-not of-mother my at-least son I-was with whom of-the-whole
consulatus et honoris jus hæreditatemque pater meus
earldom and honor the-right and-inheritance father my
suscepit; sed vos facto condignæ retributionis non ostenditis
received but you by-the-deed of-due recompense not show
quod pater meus, ille comes Robertus, avunculus vester
that father my that earl Robert uncle your
fuit, quod vos honore condigno enutrierit, quod pro vobis
was that you with-honor due he-reared that for you
regem Stephanum sexdecim annis impugnans, et inimicum
king Stephen sixteen years attacking and enemy
impugnatoremque sustinens, tandem pro vobis in bello captus
and-attacker enduring at-length for you in battle captured
fuerit. Si hæc et hujusmodi patris mei obsequia ad
he-was if these-things and of-this-kind of-father my services to
animum revocassetis, non ita fratres meos in exinanitionem et
mind you-had-recalled not so brothers my into emptiness and
exterminium redegissetis. Fratris mei comitis tenuram et
extermination you-would-have-reduced of-brother my the-earl the-tenure and
honorem mille militum, quem avus vester, rex illustris
honor of-a-thousand knights which grandfather your king illustrious
Henricus, patri meo integrum dedit, vos feudo ducentorum
Henry to-father my whole gave you to-the-fee of-two-hundred
et quadraginta militum decurtastis. Alium juniorem fratrem
and forty knights have-cut-down another younger brother
meum R., strenuum, ut dicitur, militem, ita inopem et
my R vigorous as is-said a-knight so poor and
opis indigum esse sustinuistis, quod pro paupertate, relicta
of-help needy to-be you-have-allowed that for poverty with-left

sæculari militia et vita, hospitali Ierosolymitano se in
secular knighthood and life to-the-Hospital of-Jerusalem himself for
perpetuo serviturum donavit, et schema habitumque suscepit.
ever about-to-serve he-gave and the-garb and-habit took-up
Vestros domesticos propinquos et amicos sic nostis beare;
your household relatives and friends so you-know to-bless
bene meritos sic consuevistis munerare. Quid mihi minas et
the-well deserving so you-are-wont to-reward why to-me threats and
mala intentatis, quod episcopatus mei beneficiis me spoliare
evils do-you-threaten that of-bishopric my of-the-benefices me to-despoil
velitis? Ut libet moveor, non moveor; vestra sint, si
you-wish as it-pleases I-am-moved not I-am-moved yours let-them-be if
vobis non sufficiunt quæ ab archiepiscopatu et sex
to-you not suffice the-things-which from the-archbishopric and six
episcopatibus vacantibus et pluribus abbatiis, injuste certe
bishoprics vacant and more abbeys unjustly certainly
et animæ vestræ periculo, recipitis, et in usus vestros
and of-soul your at-the-peril you-receive and into uses your
sæculares redigitis, eleemosynas patrum vestrorum, bonorum
secular you-bring the-alms of-fathers your of-good
regum, et patrimonia Jesu Christi."
kings and the-patrimonies of-Jesus Christ

A knight of Aquitaine asks who the speaker is, and says a knight would have left the king no land. The king's justices harass English abbots for helping Thomas. Pressed by Louis and the pope's envoys, the king agrees to a meeting at Fréteval on the eve of Mary Magdalene's day in the sixth year of exile. There Thomas protests the coronation by York, the king allows him to seek redress for it, and the king gives back his favor and grants peace and restitution, though without the kiss.

Hæc et hujusmodi dicta sunt in audientia omnium, qui
these-things and of-this-kind said were in the-hearing of-all who
regi hinc inde lateris stipatores coequitabant. Et ait
with-the-king on-this-side on-that of-the-side the-attendants rode-with and says
sociis suis quidam miles de Aquitania, qui episcopum
to-companions his a-certain knight from Aquitaine who the-bishop
ignorabat, "Et quis iste qui sic loquitur?" Dictum est ei
did-not-know and who is-this-one who so speaks said it-was to-him
quod esset episcopus. Ille contra, "Equidem feliciter actum
that he-was a-bishop he on-the-contrary indeed happily done
est cum rege, quod sacerdos est ipse. Si miles esset, duo jugera
it-is with the-king that a-priest is he if a-knight he-were two acres
terræ regi non relinqueret." Alius autem quidam, intendens
of-land to-the-king not he-would-leave another however certain intending
regi placere, amarius episcopum objurgavit. Quod rex
the-king to-please more-bitterly the-bishop rebuked which the-king
audiens, et indigne ferens, conversus ad illum, maximo
hearing and indignantly bearing turned to him with-the-greatest
eum turpiloquio dehonestavit, inter cætera dicens, "Putasne,
him foul-language dishonored among other-things saying do-you-think
pessime, si quæ volo dicam cognato et episcopo meo, liceat
worst-one if what I-wish I-say to-kinsman and bishop my it-be-lawful
ideo tibi vel alii cuiquam eum verbis inhonorare, aut
therefore for-you or another anyone him with-words to-dishonor or

minis insectari? Equidem vix manus contineo ab oculis
with-threats to-assail indeed scarcely the-hands I-hold-back from eyes
tuis; tibi et aliis contra episcopum nefas sit mutire."
your for-you and others against the-bishop wrong let-it-be to-mutter
Ventum est ad hospitia. Post prandium rex et episcopus
come it-was to the-lodgings after dinner the-king and the-bishop
secreti et placide collocuti sunt, et de pace archiepiscopi.
secretly and placidly conversed have and about the-peace of-the-archbishop
Aliqua vice factus fuerat tumultus magnus in Anglia a
on-some occasion made had-been a-tumult great in England by
justitiariis regis, imponentibus quasi crimen quibusdam
the-justiciars of-the-king imputing as-if a-crime to-certain
abbatibus et personis ecclesiasticis in Anglia, quod
abbots and persons ecclesiastical in England that
archiepiscopo exsuli, regis (ut dicebant) inimico, pecuniam
to-the-archbishop exile of-the-king as they-said the-enemy money
numeratam transmisissent. Et quidem episcopo Wintoniensi
counted they-had-sent and indeed to-the-bishop of-Winchester
hoc non audebant objicere, qui frequenti visitatione, et
this not they-dared to-object who by-frequent visitation and
opportuna auri et argenti transmissione, pio compassionis
timely of-gold and of-silver sending with-pious of-compassion
affectu domini sui archiepiscopi, quem ordinaverat, propulsaverat
affection of-lord his the-archbishop whom he-had-ordained had-driven-off
inopiam. Eorum autem quibus hoc objectum fuerat, alii, qui
the-want of-those however to-whom this objected had-been some who
tamen hoc fecerant, timore incumbente super eos se hoc
nevertheless this had-done with-fear pressing upon them themselves this
fecisse negaverunt; ut pacem haberent, eam pecunia sua
to-have-done denied that peace they-might-have it with-money their
emerunt. Aliquis ausus est palam dicere, "Et quid nos arguitis
bought someone dared has openly to-say and why us do-you-accuse

opus fecisse misericordiæ inopi et exsuli, et patri
a-work to-have-done of-mercy to-a-needy-man and to-an-exile and to-father
nostro de pecunia nostra donasse? Non est religiosus nec
our from money our to-have-given not is religious nor
satis Christianus qui calamitosum negligit, afflicto non
enough Christian he-who the-calamitous neglects with-the-afflicted not
compatitur, pauperis non miseretur. Dicitis eum regis esse
sympathizes the-poor not pities you-say him of-the-king to-be
inimicum; nos nescimus, nec credimus. Et tamen si esset
the-enemy we know-not nor believe and nevertheless if he-were
nobis inimicus, inimicum diligere jubemur propter Deum;
to-us an-enemy the-enemy to-love we-are-ordered for-the-sake-of God
esurientem cibare, et potare sitientem." Dictum fuit aliquem
the-hungry to-feed and to-give-drink to-the-thirsty said it-was someone
dixisse vel scripsisse regi Anglorum de archiepiscopo,
to-have-said or written to-the-king of-the-English about the-archbishop
"Ut quid tenetur exclusus? melius tenebitur inclusus quam
to what is-he-held shut-out better he-will-be-held shut-in than
exclusus;" satisque dictum fuit intelligenti. Unde et rex ad
shut-out and-enough said it-was for-the-understanding whence also the-king to
colloquium de pace festinavit, et ibi omnia prius negata, quæ
the-conference about peace hastened and there all-things before denied which
ab eo petebantur, concessit. Prius tamen filio suo ita subito
from him were-sought he-granted before nevertheless with-son his so suddenly
coronato, propter aliquod consequens, quod potuit contingere;
crowned on-account-of some consequence which could happen
et si quid mali contigisset, non deberet propter eum
and if anything of-evil had-happened not ought on-account-of him
puniri regnum, cujus ipse rex non esset. Istud fuit arcana
to-be-punished the-kingdom of-which he-himself king not were that was in-secret
non enarrabile fibra regis Anglorum: novit Deus, qui scrutatur
not to-be-told fiber of-the-king of-the-English knows God who searches

renes et corda; non ego. Sed qui ante rem in re
the-reins and hearts not I but those-who before the-thing in the-thing
post rem operibus crediderunt, hoc de eo intellexerunt.
after the-thing by-the-works believed this about him understood
De ultimo colloquio, ubi pax formata est inter archiepiscopum
about the-last conference where peace formed was between the-archbishop
et regem Anglorum, annuente clero et populo totius
and the-king of-the-English with-assenting the-clergy and people of-the-whole
regni.
kingdom
Iterum de concordia et pace archiepiscopi rex Francorum
again about concord and peace of-the-archbishop the-king of-the-French
et nuncii domini papæ eum arctius compellant, quoniam
and the-envoys of-the-lord pope him more-closely urge since
dominus papa tantos regis excessus, tantas archiepiscopi
the-lord pope so-great of-the-king excesses so-great of-the-archbishop
et suorum coexsulum miserias, necnon laborantis Anglicanæ
and of-his fellow-exiles miseries and-also of-the-laboring English
ecclesiæ dolores, ulterius disimulare non valuit nec voluit.
church the-pains further to-dissemble not could nor would
Adquievit rex rogari in ipsa æstate. Igitur sexto anno
acquiesced the-king to-be-asked in that-very summer therefore in-the-sixth year
exsilii archiepiscopi Thomæ nondum completo, pridie
of-the-exile of-the-archbishop Thomas not-yet completed on-the-day-before
beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ, congregantur apud Freitevile
of-blessed Mary Magdalene are-gathered at Fréteval
archiepiscopi Remensis, Senonensis, Rothomagensis, Tyrensis,
the-archbishops of-Reims of-Sens of-Rouen of-Tours
et dominus rex Francorum, et episcopus Nivernensis, et
and the-lord king of-the-French and the-bishop of-Nevers and
abbas de Grosso Monte, loco domini papæ, et episcopus
the-abbot of Grand Mont in-place of-the-lord pope and the-bishop

Pictavensis, et fere omnes episcopi Normanniæ, comites et
of-Poitiers and nearly all the-bishops of-Normandy the-counts and
magnates fere omnes Galliæ, ad pacem inter regem Angliæ
magnates nearly all of-Gaul for peace between the-king of-England
et archiepiscopum Cantuariensem reformandam. Nullus
and the-archbishop of-Canterbury to-be-restored none
episcoporum Angliæ ibi fuit præter Rogerum Wigorniensem.
of-the-bishops of-England there was except Roger of-Worcester
Ipsa die ad hospitium regis Francorum veniens rex
on-that-very day to the-lodging of-the-king of-the-French coming the-king
Anglorum, cum secreto collocuti essent, post pauca jocando
of-the-English when secretly conversed they-had after a-few-things joking
dixit rex Angliæ, "Et crastina die habebit pacem suam
said the-king of-England and on-tomorrow day will-have peace his
latro vester; et quidem bonam habebit." Rex Francorum,
thief your and indeed good he-will-have the-king of-the-French
"Quis, inquam, latro, pro sanctis Franciæ?" Rex Anglorum,
what I-say thief by the-saints of-France the-king of-the-English
"Ille vester Cantuariensis archiepiscopus." Rex Francorum,
that your of-Canterbury archbishop the-king of-the-French
"Utinam noster ita esset quomodo vester est; honor vobis
would-that ours so he-were as yours he-is honor to-you
erit coram Deo et hominibus, si ei pacem bonam
it-will-be before God and men if to-him peace good
feceritis, et nos vobis gratiam habebimus." Hæc in
you-shall-have-made and we to-you thanks will-have these-things in
audientia dicta sunt; secretius quæ voluere locuti sunt.
hearing said were more-secretly what they-wished spoke they-have
In crastino exeunt omnes ad colloquium illud. Rex Francorum
on the-morrow go-out all to conference that the-king of-the-French
non ascendit; forte ita convenerat inter eos prece regis
not went-up perhaps so it-had-been-agreed between them at-the-prayer of-the-king

Angliæ, promittentis ei se omnia sine eo facturum, quæ
of-England promising to-him himself all-things without him about-to-do which
postulaverat. Siquidem fatigaverat prius regem Anglorum pro
he-had-requested indeed he-had-wearied before the-king of-the-English for
archiepiscopo precibus multis. Et quoniam nunc ad colloquium
the-archbishop with-prayers many and since now to conference
hoc in terra regis Francorum rex Angliæ venerat,
this in the-land of-the-king of-the-French the-king of-England had-come
adquievit rex Francorum colloquio et concordiæ huic
acquiesced the-king of-the-French at-the-conference and concord this
spiritu magis et auctoritate adesse, corporaliter abesse, et
in-spirit rather and authority to-be-present bodily to-be-absent and
regi Angliæ propriæ libertatis et liberalitatis lora laxare,
to-the-king of-England of-own liberty and liberality the-reins to-loosen
ut sui juris magis esse videretur, cum rex eum Franciæ
that of-his-own right more to-be he-might-seem since the-king him of-France
neque prece neque præsentia oneraret, et conspectior in
neither by-prayer nor by-presence burdened and more-conspicuous in
eo appareret misericordia, pace et gratia sua archiepiscopo
him might-appear the-mercy with-peace and favor his to-the-archbishop
reddita, cum suæ ibi relictus esset voluntati, et nulli subjectus
restored since to-his there left he-was will and to-no subject
necessitati; sapienti siquidem dominorum preces præcepta sunt.
necessity to-the-wise indeed of-lords the-prayers commands are
Cum plurimi plurima hinc inde dixissent pro bono
when very-many very-many-things on-this-side on-that had-said for the-good
pacis et gratiæ eorum resarciendæ, et rex adquievisset
of-peace and of-favor their to-be-restored and the-king had-acquiesced
omnibus articulis pacis et libertatis ecclesiæ, et gratiæ
in-all the-articles of-peace and of-liberty of-the-church and of-favor
et restitutionis reddendæ Cantuariensi ecclesiæ, et personæ
and of-restitution to-be-rendered to-the-Canterbury church and to-the-person

archiepiscopi, et restitutionis terrarum et ecclesiarum
of-the-archbishop and of-restitution of-lands and of-churches
faciendæ clericis seu omnibus pro archiepiscopo spoliatis,
to-be-made to-the-clerks or all for the-archbishop despoiled
et donationis ecclesiarum archiepiscopatus, quæ interim
and of-the-gift of-the-churches of-the-archbishopric which meanwhile
vacaverant, archiepiscopo relinquendæ (siquidem rex clericis
had-fallen-vacant to-the-archbishop to-be-left since the-king to-clerks
suis eas donaverat) nolens bonus archiepiscopus latere
his them had-given not-wishing the-good archbishop to-escape
regem aliquid, quod postea posset inter eos offendiculi
the-king anything which afterward could between them of-stumbling
vel scandali causam generare, (sapientis siquidem est nec
or of-scandal a-cause produce of-the-wise indeed it-is neither
fallere nec falli velle,) hujusmodi habuit orationem:
to-deceive nor to-be-deceived to-wish of-this-kind he-had a-speech
"Domine mi rex, omnia quæ mihi fecistis beneficia
lord my king all which to-me you-have-done benefits
promotionis primæ et secundæ, et venerationis plurimæ,
of-promotion first and second and of-veneration very-much
sæpe ad memoriam revocans, grata et accepta fero, et
often to memory recalling pleasing and acceptable I-hold-them and
in omnibus agens gratias, tanquam regi et domino terreno
in all-things giving thanks as to-king and lord earthly
debitor vobis sum et obnoxius, salvo Dei honore et
a-debtor to-you I-am and bound with-saved of-God the-honor and
sanctæ ecclesiæ; et nunc potissimum, quia me modo ad
of-holy church and now especially because me now to
pacem et gratiam vestram revocatis et recipitis. Verum
peace and favor your you-recall and receive but
inter omnes malorum articulos quos in ira et indignatione
among all of-evils the-articles which in anger and indignation

vestra sustinui, proscriptionis, spoliationis, et ejectionis
your I-have-endured of-proscription of-despoiling and of-expulsion
mei et meorum, vel cujuscunque oppressionis ecclesiæ
of-me and of-mine or of-whatever oppression of-the-church
Cantuariensis, unum est quod me plus movet, et quod
of-Canterbury one-thing there-is which me more moves and which
intactum incorrectumve omittere neque possum neque debeo;
untouched or-uncorrected to-pass-over neither I-can nor I-ought
scilicet, quod filium vestrum per Eboracensem archiepiscopum
namely that son your by the-York archbishop
in parochia Cantuariensi coronari fecistis, et hac dignitate
in the-parish of-Canterbury to-be-crowned you-had and of-this dignity
regem sacrandi ecclesiam Cantuariensem spoliastis, quæ
the-king of-consecrating the-church of-Canterbury you-have-despoiled which
vos unctione misericordiæ Dei unxit in regem, et quæ
you with-the-unction of-the-mercy of-God anointed as king and which
inter omnes dignitates suas hanc sibi habuit peculiarem,
among all dignities its this to-itself had peculiar
propriam et specialem, a tempore longæ retro vetustatis,
own and special from the-time of-long past antiquity
ex quo primum beatus Augustinus sedem metropolitanam
from when first blessed Augustine the-see metropolitan
Cantuariæ constituit." Ad hæc rex, "Accepi quidem et
of-Canterbury established to these-things the-king I-have-received indeed and
didici quod inter cæteras regales regni mei dignitates hæc
learned that among the-other royal of-kingdom my dignities this
quidem una est, quod si rex Angliæ filium suum vivens in
indeed one is that if the-king of-England son his living into
regem promovere voluerit, ubicunque et per cujuscunque
king to-promote shall-have-wished wherever and by of-whatever
civitatis archiepiscopum vel episcopum voluerit, licet
city archbishop or bishop he-shall-have-wished it-is-lawful

ei hoc facere. Et atavus meus rex Willelmus, qui subegit
for-him this to-do and forefather my king William who subdued
Angliam, ab archiepiscopo Eboraci sacrationem suscepit et
England from the-archbishop of-York consecration received and
coronam Londoniæ; et avus meus rex Henricus per
the-crown at-London and grandfather my king Henry by
manum episcopi Herefordiensis." Ad hæc archiepiscopus:
the-hand of-the-bishop of-Hereford to these-things the-archbishop
"Equidem verum est quod reges illos illi coronaverunt, sed
indeed true it-is that kings those they crowned but
in illorum coronamentis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ dignitas non
in their coronations of-the-Canterbury church the-dignity not
est imminuta; nam cum regem unxit Willelmum Eboracensis
was diminished for when the-king anointed William the-York-one
ille, quasi vacabat sedes Cantuariæ. Stigandus enim, qui tunc
that as-if was-vacant the-see of-Canterbury Stigand for who then
Cantuariensi præesse videbatur ecclesiæ, archiepiscopus non
over-the-Canterbury to-preside seemed church archbishop not
fuit; pallium ab sancta Romana ecclesia nunquam susceperat:
was the-pallium from the-holy Roman church never had-be-received
et vacante ecclesia Cantuariensi, in clero Angliæ major
and with-vacant the-church of-Canterbury in the-clergy of-England the-greater
eminebat et propius impellebat archiepiscopus Eboracensis.
stood-out and nearer pressed the-archbishop of-York
Cum vero coronari deberet rex Henricus, sanctus Anselmus
when however to-be-crowned ought king Henry saint Anselm
Cantuariæ archiepiscopus erat; sed longinquo aberat, exsulans
of-Canterbury archbishop was but far was-absent in-exile
apud Cluniacum. Quoniam autem mora revocationis ejus
at Cluny since however the-delay of-recall his
maxime posset esse regni periculo, ne interea guerra
most could be to-the-kingdom a-danger lest meanwhile war

oriretur super faciem terræ, subiit in locum et in
arise over the-face of-the-land came-in into the-place and into
officium archiepiscopi absentis unus suffraganeorum ejus, ille
the-office of-the-archbishop absent one of-the-suffragans his that
Herefordiensis, patris salvans ei dignitatem." Rex ad
of-Hereford of-the-father saving to-him the-dignity the-king to
hæc: "Bene potest verum esse. Ego quod dixi in causa,
these-things well it-can true be I what I-said in the-case
contra Cantuariensem ecclesiam non dico; ipsa me sacravit,
against the-Canterbury church not say it me consecrated
ipsius ubique volo salvam fore dignitatem. Si quid in
its everywhere I-wish safe to-be the-dignity if anything against
eam commisi, pro me paratus sum corrigere domini papæ
it I-have-committed for me ready I-am to-correct of-the-lord pope
et ecclesiæ Romanæ arbitratu. Et vobis liceat ab
and of-the-church Roman the-judgment and for-you let-it-be-lawful from
archiepiscopo Eboracensi et episcopis Angliæ Cantuariensi
the-archbishop of-York and the-bishops of-England on-the-Canterbury
ecclesiæ et vobis illatas expostulare injurias." Satisfactum
church and on-you inflicted to-demand-redress-for the-injuries satisfied
est archiepiscopo, et pro hac responsione et concessione
it-was to-the-archbishop and for this answer and concession
regi gratiam redditurus equo descendit, ad pedes
to-the-king thanks about-to-render from-the-horse dismounted at the-feet
regis se inclinaturus. Quod rex intelligens ocius
of-the-king himself about-to-bow which the-king understanding more-quickly
equo desiliit, et archiepiscopum amplexatus elevavit,
from-the-horse leaped-down and the-archbishop embracing raised
eum recipiens vultu hilari, fronte læta, et pacem spondente
him receiving with-face cheerful with-brow glad and peace pledging
et gratiam sibi referente. Ascensuro præbuit
and favor to-himself returning to-the-one-about-to-mount he-offered

obsequium, orbem tenens quo pes ejus dexter teneretur.
service the-stirrup holding by-which the-foot his right was-held
Ab omnibus bonæ voluntatis hominibus qui aderant piæ
by all of-good will men who were-present pious
erumpebant lacrymæ. Tunc rogatus est rex dare ei
burst-out tears then asked was the-king to-give to-him
osculum pacis: nam diu prius, cum inter eos de concordia
the-kiss of-peace for long before when between them about concord
tractaretur, reversione et restitutione et omnibus hujusmodi
it-was-treated with-the-return and restitution and all of-this-kind
articulis a rege concessis, sed solo osculo negato, pax
articles by the-king granted but with-alone the-kiss denied peace
diu hæserat; dicente rege, se aliquando jurasse in ira,
long had-stuck with-saying the-king himself once to-have-sworn in anger
quod eum nunquam oscularetur. Unde consultus dominus
that him never he-would-kiss whence consulted the-lord
papa regem a tali, si fecerat, sacramento absolvit, et ei
pope the-king from such if he-had-made oath absolved and to-him
injunxit in animæ suæ salutem, quod eum in bona pace
enjoined for of-soul his the-salvation that him in good peace
oscularetur. Rex ait, "In terra mea centies ejus osculabor
he-should-kiss the-king says in land my a-hundred-times his I-shall-kiss
os, manus, et pedes; centies ejus audiam missam; sed
mouth hands and feet a-hundred-times his I-shall-hear mass but
modo differatur. Non loquor captiose. Honor mihi est, ut in
now let-it-be-put-off not I-speak captiously honor to-me it-is that in
aliquo mihi deferre videatur; et in terra mea osculum dare
something to-me to-defer he-seem and in land my the-kiss to-give
de majore videbitur gratia et benignitate, quod hic fieri
from greater will-seem favor and kindness what here to-be-done
videretur de necessitate." Assensu omnium archiepiscopus
would-seem from necessity with-the-assent of-all the-archbishop

adquievit. Lætati sunt universi, clerus, militia, populus,
acquiesced rejoiced have all the-clergy the-knighthood the-people
omnis ætas, omnis ordo, qui hæc viderunt et audierunt.
every age every order who these-things saw and heard
Postea soli dominus rex et archiepiscopus seorsum diu
afterward alone the-lord king and the-archbishop apart long
secreto usi sunt consilio. Solvitur conventus.
secret used have counsel is-dissolved the-meeting

THE TERMS OF PEACE

The king's letters order peace for Thomas and his men and restoration of their goods, but the restitution is incomplete. Thomas sends thanks to the pope with the terms of peace and the king's leave to avenge the coronation, and takes leave of his French friends; Louis warns him not to trust a king who withheld the kiss. A royal servant confesses to having sealed letters to England for the archbishop's death. At Tours the kiss is neither offered nor asked; at Amboise the king evades it with a mass for the dead and puts it off.

Convenerat inter regem et archiepiscopum, quod in
it-had-been-agreed between the-king and the-archbishop that into
Galliam rediret archiepiscopus, suis benefactoribus gratias
Gaul should-return the-archbishop to-his benefactors thanks
referre, et domino papæ, nuntio et scripto suo; acceptaque
to-render and to-the-lord pope by-envoy and by-letter his and-with-received
licentia, et compositis ad repatriandum rebus, ut ad regem
leave and with-arranged for returning-home affairs that to the-king
rediret, qui vel in propria, si fieri posset, præsentia
he-should-return who either in own if to-be-done it-could presence
eum in Angliam reduceret, vel cum eo archiepiscopum
him into England would-bring-back or with him the-archbishop

Rothomagensem mitteret, ut rediens postliminio cum multa
of-Rouen would-send that returning by-postliminy with much
veneratione susciperetur: et interea, rege præcipiente, ut
veneration he-might-be-received and meanwhile with-the-king ordering that
possessiones ablatæ ei et singulis restituerentur destitutis.
the-possessions taken from-him and to-each be-restored the-destitute
De pace archiepiscopi scripsit rex in hæc verba:
about the-peace of-the-archbishop wrote the-king in these words
"Pro amore Dei et domini papæ, et pro salute nostra et
for the-love of-God and of-the-lord pope and for the-salvation our and
hæredum meorum, remitto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et suis,
of-heirs my I-remit to-the-Canterbury archbishop and his-men
qui cum eo et pro eo exsulant, iram meam et offensam, et
who with him and for him are-exiled anger my and displeasure and
eidem remitto omnes querelas præcedentes, si quas habebam
to-the-same I-remit all complaints preceding if any I-had
adversus eum, et concedo ei et suis veram pacem et
against him and I-grant to-him and to-his true peace and
firmam securitatem de me et meis; et reddo ei ecclesiam
firm security from me and mine and I-restore to-him the-church
Cantuariensem in ea plenitudine in qua eam habuit quando
of-Canterbury in that fullness in which it he-had when
factus est archiepiscopus, et omnes possessiones quas habuit
made he-was archbishop and all the-possessions which had
et tenuit ecclesia et ipse, ad tenendum et habendum
and held the-church and he-himself for holding and having
ita libere et honorifice, sicut melius et honorificentius eas
so freely and honorably as better and more-honorably them
habuerunt et tenuerunt ipse et sui, et omnes ecclesias
they-had and held he-himself and his-men and all churches
et præbendas ad archiepiscopatum pertinentes, quæ cœperunt
and prebends to the-archbishopric belonging which began

vacare postquam ipse Cantuariensis exivit de terra,
to-be-vacant after he-himself of-Canterbury went-out from the-land
ut faciat de iis sicut de suis, prout ei placuerit,
that he-may-do with them as with his-own as to-him it-shall-please
reddo ei similiter, salvo honore regni mei."
I-restore to-him likewise with-saved the-honor of-kingdom my
"Henricus rex Angliæ regi filio suo Henrico regi Angliæ
Henry king of-England to-king son his Henry king of-England
salutem.
greeting
"Sciatis quod Thomas archiepiscopus Cantuariensis pacem
know that Thomas archbishop of-Canterbury peace
mecum fecit ad voluntatem meam. Et ideo præcipio quod
with-me has-made at will my and therefore I-command that
ipse et omnes sui pacem habeant; et faciatis habere ipsi
he and all his-men peace have and you-cause to-have himself
archiepiscopo, et [omnibus] suis qui pro eo exierunt ab
to-the-archbishop and to-all his-men who for him went-out from
Anglia, omnes res suas bene et in pace et honorifice sicut
England all things their well and in peace and honorably as
habuerunt tribus mensibus antequam ipse archiepiscopus
they-had for-three months before he-himself the-archbishop
exiret ab Anglia; et faciatis venire coram vobis de melioribus
went-out from England and cause to-come before you of the-better
et antiquioribus militibus de honore de Saltwde, et eorum
and older knights of the-honor of Saltwood and by-their
sacramento faciatis recognosci quid ibi habetur de feudo
oath cause to-be-recognized what there is-held of the-fee
archiepiscopatus Cantuariensis, et quod recognitum fuerit
of-the-archbishopric of-Canterbury and what recognized shall-have-been

de feudo ejus [esse] ipsi archiepiscopo habere faciatis.
of fee his to-be to-himself to-the-archbishop to-have cause
Teste Rotroco archiepiscopo Rotomagensi, apud Chinum."
witness Rotrou archbishop of-Rouen at Chinon
Celebratur restitutio clericis archiepiscopi, non satis tamen
is-performed the-restitution to-the-clerks of-the-archbishop not enough nevertheless
plenaria, sed neque ipsi archiepiscopo. Rex, ut supra
full but nor to-himself to-the-archbishop the-king as above
dictum est, donaverat in dissensione vacantes quasdam
said it-was had-given in the-dissension vacant certain
ecclesias archiepiscopi; et secundum formam pacis revocat
churches of-the-archbishop and according-to the-form of-peace he-revokes
donationes illas, et archiepiscopo relinquit. Intrant in
gifts those and to-the-archbishop leaves enter into
possessiones earum officiales clericorum quibus archiepiscopus
the-possessions of-them the-officials of-the-clerks to-whom the-archbishop
illas donaverat. Sed non multo post per officiales regis
them had-given but not much after by the-officials of-the-king
hi expelluntur, et reintrant quibus eas rex dederat.
these are-expelled and re-enter those-to-whom them the-king had-given
Præterea, reditus et pensiones maneriorum archiepiscopatus
moreover the-revenues and rents of-the-manors of-the-archbishopric
ad proximum terminum sancti Michaelis, non archiepiscopi
at the-next term of-saint Michael not of-the-archbishop
sed regis officiales recipiunt. Sapientes plurimi hæc
but of-the-king the-officials receive the-wise very-many these-things
taciti considerabant, et aliquid notabant.
silent considered and something noted
Archiepiscopus statim miserat nuntium suum, gratiam referens
the-archbishop at-once had-sent envoy his thanks rendering
de pace, domino papæ et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, et
for peace to-the-lord pope and to-the-holy Roman church and

scripserat ei formam pacis, et concessionem regis de
had-written to-him the-form of-peace and the-concession of-the-king about
ulciscenda coronationis injuria, et forte nuntium illum
avenging of-the-coronation the-injury and perhaps envoy that
exspectabat. Et interea conventibus religiosis et opitularibus
he-was-awaiting and meanwhile to-the-convents religious and helping
suis amicis semotim singulis per Galliam gratias referre, et ab
his friends separately to-each through Gaul thanks to-render and from
eis licentiam accipere vacabat. Ipsi autem nobiles Galli eum et
them leave to-take he-was-free they however noble Gauls him and
suos equis, vestibus, et omnibus necessariis sufficientissime
his-men with-horses garments and all necessaries most-sufficiently
instruxerunt, ut quos foverant exsules, cum honore
equipped that those-whom they-had-cherished as-exiles with honor
remitterent repatriantes. Regi Francorum, in accipiendo ab
they-might-send-back returning-home to-the-king of-the-French in taking from
eo licentiam, dulcissime et affectuosissime, cum omni gratiarum
him leave most-sweetly and most-affectionately with all of-thanks
actione, inter cætera dixit, "Nos imus in Angliam ludere pro
giving among other-things he-said we go into England to-play for
capitibus." Rex Francorum: "Ita mihi videtur. Equidem, domine
heads the-king of-the-French so to-me it-seems indeed lord
archiepiscope, non dato tibi osculo pacis, si mihi crederes,
archbishop with-not given to-you the-kiss of-peace if me you-would-believe
te regi tuo non crederes. Remane; rege Lodovico
yourself to-king your not you-would-entrust remain with-king Louis
vivente, non tibi vina, cibi, Galliæve opulentia deerit."
living not to-you wines foods or-of-Gaul the-opulence will-be-lacking
Ille: "Fiat voluntas Dei." Cum lacrymis extremum vale
he let-be-done the-will of-God with tears the-last farewell

sibi invicem dixerunt. Similiter et episcopo Parisiacensi
to-themselves in-turn they-said likewise also to-the-bishop of-Paris
eum deosculanti inter cætera dixit, "Vado in Angliam mori."
him kissing among other-things he-said I-go into England to-die
In Anglia, cuidam religioso et honesto sacerdoti, Richardo
in England to-a-certain religious and honorable priest Richard
de Haliwella, quidam serviens de curia regis, peccata
of Holywell a-certain servant from the-court of-the-king his-sins
confessus, inter cætera dixit, se manibus suis impressisse
having-confessed among other-things said himself with-hands his to-have-impressed
sigillo literas missas in Angliam, ut occideretur
with-the-seal letters sent into England that should-be-killed
archiepiscopus, et Nigellum de Salcavilla eas scripsisse
the-archbishop and Nigel of Sackville them to-have-written
lacrymantem: addidit etiam, se hoc confessum fuisse
weeping he-added also himself this having-confessed to-have-been
alicui episcopo Angliæ, et ab eo satisfactionem sibi
to-some bishop of-England and from him satisfaction for-himself
injungi postulasse. Episcopus ille illi, "Et quid? Præceptum
to-be-enjoined to-have-asked the-bishop that to-him and what the-command
domini tui fecisti;" et tanquam nihil mali commisisset, nihil
of-lord your you-did and as-if nothing of-evil he-had-committed nothing
ei injunxit. Una dierum Reginaldus de Warenna intravit
to-him enjoined one of-the-days Reginald of Warenne entered
capitulum canonicorum de Suthwercha, quibus ipse familiari
the-chapter of-the-canons of Southwark to-whom he by-familiar
dilectione, et fraternitatis eorum communicatione, et plurima
love and of-fraternity their by-communion and very-much
devinctus erat beneficiorum collatione: et inter cætera cum
bound was by-the-bestowing of-benefits and among other-things when
loquerentur de hoc mundo immundo, de facinorosorum
they-spoke about this world unclean about of-the-criminal

malitia, de vitiis, quæ, a patrum nostrorum nobilitate
the-malice about the-vices which from of-fathers our the-nobility
degenerans, audet et apponit præsens corruptior ætas, ait
degenerating dares and adds the-present more-corrupt age he-says
eis, "Obsecro, orate Deum pro me instantius; necesse est;
to-them I-beseech pray God for me more-urgently necessary it-is
in proximo forte audietis in Anglia fieri, quæ a
in the-near-future perhaps you-will-hear in England to-be-done things-which from
sæculo non sunt facta vel audita; et quoad me, contra
the-age not have-been done or heard and as-for me against
me et meam voluntatem; sed non sum mei juris."
me and my will but not I-am of-my-own right
Abhorruerunt canonici, qui hæc audierunt, nescientes quid
shuddered the-canons who these-things heard not-knowing what
vel de quo diceret; donec Reginaldo illo servato innocente
or about whom he-spoke until with-Reginald that kept innocent
a sanguine justi hujus, res tandem per alios facta est.
from the-blood of-just this-one the-matter at-length through others done was
Rex Anglorum interim archiepiscopo litteras scripsit
the-king of-the-English meanwhile to-the-archbishop letters wrote
revocationis per Hugonem clericum, dicens illam ejus
of-recall through Hugh clerk saying that his
moram in Gallia sibi esse suspectam; festinaret ergo in
delay in Gaul to-himself to-be suspect let-him-hasten therefore into
Angliam redire. Archiepiscopus, paratis omnibus, ad regem
England to-return the-archbishop with-prepared all-things to the-king
ex condicto revertitur. Primum venit ad eum apud Turonum:
by agreement returns first he-came to him at Tours
ibi nec rex, non rogatus, osculum dedit; nec archiepiscopus
there neither the-king not asked the-kiss gave nor the-archbishop
rogavit, ne festinus nimium et præproperus videretur.
asked lest hasty too-much and premature he-should-seem

Iterum ad curiam venit apud Ambeise. Rex ipsa die
again to the-court he-came at Amboise the-king on-that-very day
adhuc missam erat auditurus. Nigellus de Salcavilla, regis
still mass was about-to-hear Nigel of Sackville of-the-king
clericus et sigillifer, et cui unam de bonis ecclesiis
clerk and seal-bearer and to-whom one of the-good churches
archiepiscopi rex donaverat, quam modo timebat amittere,
of-the-archbishop the-king had-given which now he-feared to-lose
regi nuntiat archiepiscopum esse in capella; et forte tam
to-the-king announces the-archbishop to-be in the-chapel and perhaps so
tempestive et ante missam venisse, ut ei ad missam
early and before mass to-have-come that to-him at mass
osculum pacis ferat; sed, si dominus rex velit, fraudari
the-kiss of-peace he-might-bear but if the-lord king wishes to-be-cheated
posse archiepiscopum osculo. Rex: "Quonam modo?" Ille:
can the-archbishop of-the-kiss the-king in-what way he
"Dicat sacerdos missam pro fidelibus defunctis." Rex
let-say the-priest the-mass for the-faithful departed the-king
adquievit, et factum est ita. Post missam illam dictum est,
acquiesced and done it-was so after mass that said it-was
ut assolet in veneratione dominæ nostræ perpetuæ virginis
as is-usual in veneration of-lady our perpetual virgin
Mariæ, Salve, sancta parens; quo dicto sacerdos textum
Mary hail holy parent which said the-priest the-text
evangelii osculatus est, et accedenti ad eum, et osculanti
of-the-gospel kissed has and to-the-approaching to him and kissing
archiepiscopo tradidit regi deferendum. Quo osculato,
archbishop he-handed to-the-king to-be-carried which kissed
archiepiscopus regi ait, "Domine, modo in terram vestram
the-archbishop to-the-king says lord now into land your
ad vos veni; date mihi et pro tempore, et pro loco,
to you I-have-come give to-me both for the-time and for the-place

et condicto, pacis osculum." Rex: "Alia vice satis habebis;"
and the-agreement of-peace the-kiss the-king another time enough you-will-have
quam repulsam et archiepiscopus et omnes qui affuere
which repulse both the-archbishop and all who were-present
taciti notaverunt. Rex et archiepiscopus die illa diu soli
silent noted the-king and the-archbishop on-day that long alone
locuti sunt. In ultimo autem concordiæ tenore pactus erat
spoken have in the-last however of-the-concord term agreed had
rex Rothomagum contra eum venire, et omnia ejus debita
the-king to-Rouen against him to-come and all his debts
creditoribus solvere, et de cætera pecunia archiepiscopii
to-the-creditors to-pay and from the-rest of-the-money of-the-archbishopric
percepta satisfacere, et ibi eum ad osculum recipere, et eum
received to-satisfy and there him to the-kiss to-receive and him
in Angliam comitari, vel Rothomagensem cum eo mittere
into England to-accompany or the-Rouen-one with him to-send
ad filium suum regem, suppleturum, si quid deesset
to son his the-king about-to-supply if anything were-lacking
plenariæ redintegrationi archiepiscopi vel suorum. Ibi a
to-the-full restoration of-the-archbishop or of-his-men there from
rege Anglorum, cum ultima vice licentia petita, discessit,
the-king of-the-English with the-last time leave asked he-departed
Rex ait ei, "Vade in pace; sequar te, videbo te
the-king says to-him go in peace I-shall-follow you I-shall-see you
Rothomagi vel in Anglia quam citius potero." Archiepiscopus:
at-Rouen or in England as soonest I-can the-archbishop
"Domine, dicit mihi animus quod sic discedo a vobis quasi
lord says to-me the-mind that so I-depart from you as-if
quem amplius in hac vita non videbitis." Rex: "Habes
one-whom further in this life not you-will-see the-king do-you-hold
me proditorem?" Archiepiscopus: "Absit a te, domine."
me a-traitor the-archbishop far-be-it from you lord

At Rouen the king sends only John of Oxford, dean of Salisbury, to escort him, and no money; the archbishop of Rouen gives him three hundred pounds. He sends the papal letters ahead against the bishops of the coronation, and at Wissant he is warned that cutthroats wait for him at Dover. He lands at Sandwich on 1 December, where the sheriff Gervase of Cornhill and Reginald of Warenne come armed and question him, and enters Canterbury amid rejoicing; the archbishop of York and the bishops of London and Salisbury send word that he has come not in peace but in fire.

A curia discedens archiepiscopus ex voluntate regis venit
from the-court departing the-archbishop by the-will of-the-king came
Rothomagum. Ibi autem solummodo, per nuntium regis,
to-Rouen there however only through an-envoy of-the-king
itineris sui ducem decanum Saresberiensem accepit. Regis
of-journey his as-guide the-dean of-Salisbury he-received of-the-king
erat excusatio quo minus in Angliam veniret cum eo,
was the-excuse by-which less into England he-came with him
quia rex Francorum homines ejus Arvernos pararet
because the-king of-the-French men his of-Auvergne was-preparing
expugnare. Audito a decano Saresberiensi ad quid
to-attack having-heard from the-dean of-Salisbury for what
venisset, ait illi archiepiscopus, "O quanta rerum mutatio!
he-had-come says to-him the-archbishop O how-great of-things the-change
archiepiscopus Cantuariensis ita secure deberet tibi ducatum
the-archbishop of-Canterbury so securely ought to-you escort
præbere, et paulo securius, quam tu ei, in Angliam
to-provide and a-little more-securely than you to-him into England
ituro." Archiepiscopo autem Rothomagensi, per quem
about-to-go to-the-archbishop however of-Rouen through whom
supradicta inter eos convenerant, dixit, "Ubi sunt hæc
the-aforesaid between them had-been-agreed he-said where are these-things

inter regem et me conventa? Quare in propria persona non
between the-king and me agreed why in own person not
adest rex? Quid est de nostræ pacis osculo? Quid de
is-present the-king what is-it about of-our peace the-kiss what about
pecunia? Creditores meos adduxi. Rex non stat verbo
the-money creditors my I-have-brought the-king not stands by-word
suo." Interrogatus item a Cantuariensi Rothomagensis, si
his asked likewise by the-Canterbury-one the-Rouen-one whether
regis de comitando eum in Angliam accepisset mandatum,
of-the-king about accompanying him into England he-had-received a-command
ait, "Nequaquam; prosequeretur eum tamen ex dilectione,
says by-no-means he-would-follow him nevertheless from love
si vellet, sed non oportere." Omnia in tuto esse ait,
if he-wished but not to-be-necessary all-things in safety to-be he-says
pax ejus et securitas in tanta auctoritate, et tantorum
the-peace his and security in so-great authority and of-so-great-persons
præsentia formata et firmata erat. Ibi ei archiepiscopus
in-the-presence formed and confirmed was there to-him the-archbishop
Rothomagensis trecentas libras monetæ suæ dono dedit.
of-Rouen three-hundred pounds of-coin his as-a-gift gave
Ad mare Flandriæ vadit archiepiscopus, solo ductatore
to the-sea of-Flanders goes the-archbishop by-the-only guide
comitatus decano Saresberiensi, Johanne prædicto, conferens
accompanied the-dean of-Salisbury John aforesaid pondering
hæc omnia in corde suo, et maxime pactum sibi in
these all-things in heart his and especially the-agreed to-him in
concordia deesse sibi osculum pacis. Sed tamen in Spiritu
the-concord to-be-lacking to-him the-kiss of-peace but nevertheless in the-Spirit
Sancto securus cœptum iter agit, pro Deo et ecclesiæ
Holy secure the-begun journey he-makes for God and of-the-church
causa non timidus mori. Jam autem acceperat nuntium
the-cause not afraid to-die already however he-had-received a-messenger

et litteras exhortationis a domino papa, ut ad ecclesiam
and letters of-exhortation from the-lord pope that to church
suam intrepidus redeat, et ministerium suum impleat;
his fearless he-should-return and ministry his fulfill
sed et litteras severissimæ justitiæ de præsumpta novi
but also letters of-most-severe justice concerning the-presumed of-the-new
regis Angliæ coronatione, suspensionis quidem archiepiscopi
king of-England coronation of-suspension indeed of-the-archbishop
Eboracensis et omnium episcoporum, qui coronamento
of-York and of-all the-bishops who at-the-coronation
aderant, præterquam solius Bartholomæi Exoniensis; sed
were-present except of-alone Bartholomew of-Exeter but
et litteras in excommunicationem revocationis episcoporum
also letters into excommunication of-the-recall of-the-bishops
Londinensis et Saresberiensis, quippe alia prius vice
of-London and of-Salisbury since on-another earlier occasion
fuerant excommunicati. Cum his de justitia litteris
they-had-been excommunicated with these about justice letters
nuntius præmittitur, qui Eboracensem et Londoniensem
a-messenger is-sent-ahead who the-York-one and the-London-one
transfretare parantes tempestive apud Cantuariam invenit.
to-cross preparing in-time at Canterbury found
Lectis de sententia fulminante domini papæ litteris, in
with-read about the-sentence fulminating of-the-lord pope letters in
quibus et hoc unum verborum erat, "Implemus facies
which also this one of-the-words was we-fill faces
vestras ignominia," concidit in terram vultus eorum.
your with-ignominy fell to the-ground the-face their
Ad portum Wytsand jam erat archiepiscopus, serena erat
at the-port of-Wissant already was the-archbishop serene was
cæli facies et maris, navis archiepiscopi parata, aliæ aliquæ
of-the-sky the-face and of-the-sea the-ship of-the-archbishop ready other some

naves transfretabant. Archiepiscopus exspectabat. Dicunt ei
ships were-crossing the-archbishop waited say to-him
aliqui de clericis suis coexsulibus, quibus natale solum desiderio
some of clerks his fellow-exiles to-whom native soil for-a-longing
erat, "Domine, ecce jam Angliam videmus; plurimorum
was lord behold already England we-see of-very-many
transfretantium vela tument. Quare non ascenditis navem?
crossing the-sails swell why not do-you-board the-ship
Nunquid nos erimus sicut Moyses, qui terram promissionis vidit
can-it-be-that we shall-be as Moses who the-land of-promise saw
quidem, sed non intravit?" Ille, inter cætera: "Ut quid festinatis?
indeed but not entered he among other-things to what do-you-hasten
non effluent quadraginta dies ab ingressu vestro in terram,
not will-flow-by forty days from entry your into the-land
malletis esse ubicunque terrarum, quam in Anglia." Jam
you-would-prefer to-be anywhere of-lands than in England already
paratum erat, et forte aliquem ab Anglia nuntium acceperat,
prepared it-was and perhaps some from England message he-had-received
quod si apud Dovram intraret appulsus, obvios eum excipientes
that if at Dover he-entered having-landed meeting him receiving
grassatores inveniret, qui subito peragerent rem; et quod ad
cutthroats he-would-find who suddenly would-accomplish the-thing and that to
mare accessissent Eboracensis et Londoniensis ad confirmandum
the-sea had-come the-York-one and the-London-one for confirming
magis tam scelerati ausus opifices, ut de illorum in vicino
more of-so wicked daring the-artisans that by of-them in the-vicinity
positorum præsentia et securitate audentiores redderentur.
placed the-presence and security bolder they-might-be-made

Qualiter navem ascendit, et ubi sit appulsus, et quos
how the-ship he-boarded and where he-has landed and whom
ibi contra se invenerit.
there against himself he-found
Navim ingressus sacerdos Dei bonus Thomas gubernatorem
the-ship having-entered the-priest of-God good Thomas the-helmsman
hortatur portum Sandwiz petere, quoniam ille portus suus erat,
exhorts the-port of-Sandwich to-seek since that port his was
et homines sui de ipsius lætarentur adventu. Igitur kalendas
and the-men his in his might-rejoice arrival therefore on-the-Kalends
Decembris feria tertia apud Sandwiz appulsus est; quod
of-December on-the-day third at Sandwich landed he-has which
audientes statim regis officiales, vicecomes Cantiæ Gervasius
hearing at-once of-the-king the-officials the-sheriff of-Kent Gervase
de Cornhelle, et Reginaldus de Warenna et milites eorum
of Cornhill and Reginald of Warenne and the-knights their
plurimi sub capis et tunicis loricati, advolant in egressum
very-many under cloaks and tunics in-mail fly to the-landing
ejus a navi, sed viso et audito Johanne, loco regis
his from the-ship but with-seen and heard John in-place of-the-king
ejus ductatore, discedunt, qui armati audiebantur. Sed ne
his guide they-depart who armed were-heard but lest
nihil ageretur, vicecomes et Reginaldus, inter cætera verba,
nothing be-done the-sheriff and Reginald among other words
quærunt si alienigena aliquis cum eo veniret, ut secundum
ask if foreigner any with him came that according-to
legem a rege promulgatam exigant ab eo litteras
the-law by the-king promulgated they-might-demand from him letters
regis de ingressu suo in Angliam, vel saltem sacramentum
of-the-king about the-entry his into England or at-least an-oath
de fidelitate regis. Forte et ut eum provocarent, vel
about fealty of-the-king perhaps also that him they-might-provoke or

seditionem suscitarent, talia loquebantur; sed frustra
sedition they-might-stir-up such-things they-said but in-vain
ibi. Archiepiscopus pacificum esse ingressum suum pacifice
there the-archbishop peaceful to-be entry his peacefully
respondit, et non cum eo venisse nisi homines pacis,
answered and not with him to-have-come except men of-peace
clericos suos et domesticam familiam suam. Sane venerat
clerks his and domestic household his truly had-come
cum eo quidam archidiaconus Senonensis, qui ei exsulanti
with him a-certain archdeacon of-Sens who to-him in-exile
et suis multa contulerat beneficia; hunc clericum sibi
and to-his-men many had-bestowed benefits this clerk to-himself
adhæsisse dicebat. Exactiones hujusmodi, vel litterarum,
to-have-clung he-said exactions of-this-kind either of-letters
vel sacramenti, ab eis debere et solere exigi de
or of-oath from those to-be-proper and to-be-wont to-be-demanded of
quibus verisimile esset quod infirma regni explorare
whom likely it-was that the-weak-points of-the-kingdom to-explore
venissent. Inauditum esse quod a Cantuariensis archiepiscopi
they-had-come unheard-of to-be that from of-the-Canterbury archbishop
clericis talia exigerentur, nec ab eo inciperent. Res
the-clerks such-things be-demanded nor from him should-they-begin the-matter
hoc modo quievit; nisi quod postea dixit ei vicecomes,
in-this way rested except that afterward said to-him the-sheriff
quod in igne et gladio terram intraverat; regem volebat
that in fire and sword the-land he-had-entered the-king he-wished
decoronare; archiepiscopum Eboracensem et omnes episcopos
to-uncrown the-archbishop of-York and all the-bishops
excommunicaverat pro servitio regis: et nisi in brevi
he-had-excommunicated for the-service of-the-king and unless in short
maturum super hoc captaret consilium, futurum aliquid
ripe on this he-took counsel about-to-be something

quod melius posset remanere. Ad talia archiepiscopus
which better could remain to such-things the-archbishop
respondit, "se non proregis coronamentum retractare,
answered himself not of-the-young-king the-coronation to-retract
quippe qui ei quatuor talia regna, si posset secundum
since who for-him four such kingdoms if he-could according-to
Deum, libenter vellet perquirere; sed pro illis qui, contra
God gladly would-wish to-acquire but for those who against
Deum et Cantuariensis ecclesiæ dignitatem, hanc sacrationem
God and of-the-Canterbury church the-dignity this consecration
injuste usurpaverant: nec hoc erat in terram ignem et
unjustly had-usurped nor this was into the-land fire and
gladium mittere, debitam peccatis episcoporum justitiam
the-sword to-send due for-the-sins of-the-bishops justice
exercere. Mortem ei non minaretur quis; paratus enim
to-exercise death to-him not should-threaten anyone ready for
venerat collum extendere pro justitia et veritate." Scripsit
he-had-come the-neck to-stretch-out for justice and truth he-wrote
statim de ingressu suo in Angliam domino papæ.
at-once about entry his into England to-the-lord pope
Nuntiatur ecclesiæ Cantuariæ et urbi appulsum esse
it-is-announced to-the-church of-Canterbury and to-the-city landed to-be
dominum archiepiscopum. Hilarati sunt oppido omnes
the-lord archbishop gladdened were greatly all
a maximo usque ad minimum. Ornatur facies templi;
from the-greatest up-to to the-least is-adorned the-face of-the-temple
induuntur sericis et vestibus pretiosis; parant epulum
they-are-clothed in-silks and garments precious they-prepare a-feast
multiplex, lectisternia capacissima. Recipitur cum processione
manifold couches most-capacious is-received with procession
celebri archiepiscopus. Resonat ecclesia canticis et organis,
crowded the-archbishop resounds the-church with-canticles and organs

atria classicis, urbs undique lætitia uberiore. Sermonem
the-courts with-trumpets the-city everywhere with-joy more-abundant a-sermon
in capitulo dixit luculentissimum, incipiens ab hoc versu,
in the-chapter he-spoke most-brilliant beginning from this verse
"Non habemus hic manentem civitatem, sed futuram
not we-have here a-lasting city but a-future-one
inquirimus." Duo archidiaconi, Galfridus Ridel Cantuariensis,
we-seek two archdeacons Geoffrey Ridel of-Canterbury
et Ricardus Pictavensis, familiares regis, et de consilio
and Richard of-Poitiers familiars of-the-king and of counsel
ejus, sed quos archiepiscopus promoverat ad locum in
his but whom the-archbishop had-promoted to the-place in
quo eminebant, qui etiam ipsius homines erant, jam in
which they-stood-out who also his men were already into
Cantiam venerant, ad regem illac transfretaturi. Audito
Kent had-come to the-king thither about-to-cross having-heard
autem quod archiepiscopus appulsus Cantuariæ esset, lora
however that the-archbishop landed at-Canterbury was the-reins
statim diverterunt, ad occidentalis maris portus tendentes.
at-once they-turned to western of-the-sea ports heading
Quod iter malum signum fuisse visum est pluribus.
which journey an-evil sign to-have-been seemed it-has to-many
Archiepiscopus Eboracensis item et episcopus Londoniensis
the-archbishop of-York likewise and the-bishop of-London
et Saresburiensis per clericos suos nuntios archiepiscopum
and of-Salisbury through clerks their as-envoys the-archbishop
alloquuntur, quod in pace non venisset, sed in igne et
address that in peace not he-had-come but in fire and
flamma, coepiscopos suos omnes conculcans, et ponens
flame fellow-bishops his all trampling and placing
scabellum pedum suorum, non citatos, non auditos, non
as-the-footstool of-feet his not cited not heard not

judicatos; sed suffraganeos ejus dicebant occurrisse ei ad mare,
judged but suffragans his they-said to-have-met him at the-sea
ut in processione cum ecclesia Cantuariensi eum reciperent;
that in procession with the-church of-Canterbury him they-might-receive
sed induti erant præter spem et meritum quasdam tunicas
but clothed they-were beyond hope and desert in-certain tunics
nigras et dissidentes, quibus exui, antequam ad eum
black and discordant with-which to-be-unclothed before to him
venirent, necesse habebant, si ei placeret. Ille inter cætera
they-came necessary they-held if to-him it-pleased he among other-things
dicebat, "Pacem peccatorum video non esse pacem, et huc
said the-peace of-sinners I-see not to-be peace and hither
usque in his absentiæ meæ diebus episcoporum nostrorum
up-to in these of-absence my days of-bishops our
erant quæ ad pacem eis videbantur; sed a domino
were the-things-which for peace to-them seemed but by the-lord
papa bellum missum est bonum, ut rumpatur pax mala.
pope war sent has-been good that be-broken the-peace evil

"'Adsit
"'Let-be-present
Regula peccatis, quæ pœnas irroget æquas.'"
A-rule for-sins, which penalties may-impose equal.'"

Thomas refuses the bishops but offers absolution if they will submit; they go to the king. He brings three chargers as a gift for the young king and sets out to visit him, is welcomed at Rochester and Southwark, and a madwoman cries "Beware the knife." The young king orders him back to Canterbury. Ranulf of Broc seizes his ship of wine, and a priest at Wrotham brings him relics and a vision of Saint Laurence.

"Item non est pax vera nisi hominibus bonæ voluntatis.
likewise not is peace true except to-men of-good will
Putabat Jerusalem, deliciis affluens, et nimis sibi indulgens,
thought Jerusalem in-delights abounding and too-much to-itself indulging
sibi esse pacem; sed flevit eam Dominus misertus, quia
to-itself to-be peace but wept-over it the-Lord having-pitied because
divinæ ultionis imminebat ei severitas, abscondita ab oculis
of-divine vengeance impended over-it the-severity hidden from eyes
ejus. Item episcopi dicunt, quod non vocati fuerunt, non
its likewise the-bishops say that not called they-were not
auditi in jure; sane non omnia causæ cognitionem desiderant.
heard in law truly not all-things of-the-case cognizance require
Ubi manifesta sunt crimina, non indigent disquisitione,
where manifest are the-crimes not they-need inquiry
sed potius debita correctione. Ad hæc sententia hæc
but rather due correction to these-things sentence this
suspensionis seu excommunicationis non est mea, sed domini
of-suspension or of-excommunication not is mine but of-the-lord
papæ; neque nostrum est de ejus sententia disputare. Probe
pope nor ours is-it about his sentence to-dispute well
intelligo temptativa esse et captiosa quæ per vos
I-understand tempting to-be and captious the-things-which through you
nuncios proponunt episcopi: ut si confitear me non venisse
as-envoys propose the-bishops that if I-confess myself not to-have-come

cum potestate eos solvendi, me legatum infirmum in hac
with power them of-absolving me a-legate weak in this
parte parvi pendant; si cum hac potestate, absolutionem
part little they-may-weigh if with this power absolution
suam per laicam potestatem a me extorqueant. Eis non
their through lay power from me they-may-extort them not
insidior. Illi meum sanguinem sitiunt. Utinam bibant; et
I-lie-in-wait-for they my blood thirst-for would-that they-drink and
bibent." Et cum tandem sanum dedisset resipiscendi
they-will-drink and when at-length sound he-had-given of-coming-to-their-senses
et satisfaciendi consilium, non adquieverunt, sed appellaverunt.
and of-satisfying counsel not they-acquiesced but appealed
Voluit Londinensis, postea sicut dicebatur, optimam partem
wished the-London-one afterward as was-said the-best part
eligere sibi, ut a legato et archiepiscopo suo pœnitens
to-choose for-himself that by the-legate and archbishop his penitent
humiliatus et juri stare juratus absolveretur; sed, forte ne
humbled and to-law to-stand sworn he-might-be-absolved but perhaps lest
solus relinqueretur in certamine, non sustinuit Eboracensis, qui
alone he-be-left in the-contest not endured the-York-one who
confisus in thesauris pecuniæ dicebat aliquando se habere
trusting in treasures of-money said sometimes himself to-have
papam et regem in scriniis suis. Consilium dedit ut regem
the-pope and the-king in coffers his counsel gave that the-king
transmarinum simul adirent, significare ei universa.
overseas together they-should-approach to-signify to-him everything

Qualiter ire voluit Wintoniam, regem visitare juniorem,
how to-go he-wished to-Winchester the-king to-visit the-younger
sed prohibitus est per Gocelinum fratrem reginæ in
but forbidden was by Jocelin brother of-the-queen in
Suthewercha juxta Londoniam.
Southwark near London
Bonus archiepiscopus Thomas post octo dierum moram in
the-good archbishop Thomas after of-eight days a-stay in
sede, præmittit nuntium domino regi juniori, significans quod
the-see sends-ahead an-envoy to-the-lord king younger signifying that
eum tanquam regem et dominum suum veniat videre.
him as king and lord his he-should-come to-see
Adduxerat quidem secum tres pretiosos equos dextrarios,
he-had-brought indeed with-himself three costly horses chargers
miræ velocitatis, elegantis staturæ, formæ venustæ,
of-wonderful speed of-elegant stature of-form handsome
ingredientes altius, crura mollia reponentes, micantes auribus,
stepping higher legs soft setting-down quivering in-ears
trementes membra, stare impatientes, amictos opertoriis
trembling in-limbs to-stand impatient covered with-housings
distinctis floribus et coloribus, quos ei, novo domino, novum
distinct in-flowers and colors which to-him the-new lord as-a-new
exenium donare destinaverat. Diligebat enim ipsum admodum,
gift to-give he-had-intended he-loved for him much
ut modo dominum suum regem, quem puerum in domo et
as now lord his the-king whom as-a-boy in house and
curia sua ipse cancellarius patris sui regis prius nutrierat.
court his he-himself as-chancellor of-father his the-king earlier had-reared
Episcopus et ecclesia Roffensis eum una die procedentes
the-bishop and church of-Rochester him on-one day proceeding
obviam cum debita veneratione suscipiunt. Londoniæ tertiam
to-meet with due veneration receive at-London a-third

habuit processionem, ad ecclesiam canonicorum regularium
he-had procession to the-church of-the-canons regular
beatæ Mariæ in Suthwerca; exieratque ab urbe in occursum
of-blessed Mary in Southwark and-had-gone-out from the-city to meeting
ejus ab exsilio revertentis infinita multitudo clericorum,
his from exile returning an-infinite multitude of-clerks
virorum, ac mulierum, in lætitia magna laudantium et
of-men and of-women in joy great praising and
benedicentium Deum de ipsius desiderata repatriatione. Per
blessing God for his longed-for return by
se congregati pauperes scholares et clerici ecclesiarum
themselves gathered poor scholars and clerks of-the-churches
Londonensium, in occursum ejus circiter ad tria millia
of-London to meeting his about to three miles
egressi ab urbe, archiepiscopo viso et appropinquante
having-gone-out from the-city with-the-archbishop seen and approaching
ad eos cœperunt canere altissime et serenissime, Te Deum
to them began to-sing most-loudly and most-clearly Te Deum
laudamus; ut et ipsi præ gaudio flentes fere
laudamus so-that both they-themselves for joy weeping nearly
omnes auditores ad pietatis lacrymas provocarent. Quorum
all the-hearers to of-piety tears they-provoked of-whom
ipse devotioni et exsultationi in Domino congaudens,
he-himself to-the-devotion and exultation in the-Lord rejoicing-with
capite inclinato gratiam habuit, et injecta in loculum
with-head bowed thanks had and with-thrust into the-purse
eleemosynarum suarum palma, eis monetam extractam plena
of-alms his the-palm to-them coin drawn-out with-full
compassione et manu fecit distribui. Ad canonicalem ecclesiam
compassion and hand he-had distributed to the-canonical church
de Suthwerca, ubi in domibus episcopi Wintoniensis erat
of Southwark where in the-houses of-the-bishop of-Winchester he-was

hospitio recipiendus, cum tandem venisset, et descendisset,
with-hospitality to-be-received when at-length he-had-come and dismounted
canonici religiosi cum omni gaudio et facta processione
the-canons religious with all joy and with-made procession
ad ostium ecclesiæ ei obviantes, ipsorum et multorum
at the-door of-the-church him meeting of-their-own and of-many
piis erumpentibus lacrymis, cœperunt canere responsorium,
with-pious bursting tears began to-sing the-response
Benedictus Dominus Deus Israel; et infinita ibi multitudo,
blessed Lord God of-Israel and an-infinite there multitude
cleri, populi, omnis ætas, omnis ordo, gaudio uberiore
of-clergy of-people every age every order with-joy more-abundant
et voce sonora canticum gratiarum et lætitiæ communis
and with-voice sonorous the-canticle of-thanks and of-joy common
prosecuta est. Ibi et inter cæterum strepitum quædam fatua
pursued has there also amid the-other din a-certain foolish
et inverecunda et dicax, quæ curiis et conventibus publicis
and shameless and talkative who into-courts and assemblies public
se ingerit, Matildis, clamabat et repetebat aliquoties,
herself thrusts Matilda cried and repeated several-times
"Archiepiscope, cave a cultello!" ut omnes mirarentur
archbishop beware of the-knife so-that all wondered
quidnam prodigiosum vel proditiosum ipsa audisset, quod
what portentous or treacherous she-herself had-heard which
ad cautelam ei, sub tali verborum involucro, significabat.
for caution to-him under such of-words a-wrapping she-signified
Ibi in hospitio episcopi Wintoniensis, supranominati Henrici,
there in the-lodging of-the-bishop of-Winchester above-named Henry
moram unius diei faciens, nuntium regis junioris accepit
a-stay of-one day making a-messenger of-the-king younger he-received
in crastino Jocelinum, fratrem reginæ, de Arundello, quod
on the-morrow Jocelin brother of-the-queen of Arundel that

nolebat rex eum ad se venire, neque eum per urbes
would-not the-king him to himself to-come nor him through the-cities
et castra regni ire; sed rediret potius Cantuariam,
and castles of-the-kingdom to-go but should-return rather to-Canterbury
et in sede sua moraretur, inde ne exiret. Admiratus est
and in see his should-stay thence not should-go-out amazed was
archiepiscopus, intellexitque de spiritu regis illius junioris
the-archbishop and-understood from the-spirit of-king that younger
talia non procedere; et quæsivit a Jocelino, si a pacis
such-things not to-proceed and asked from Jocelin whether from of-peace
suæ communione et fiducia eum summotum esse rex ei
his the-communion and confidence him removed to-be the-king to-him
denuntiaret. Ille, "Quod ego dixi mandavit tibi." Et exiens
announced he what I said he-commanded to-you and going-out
vultuosus vidit quendam civem Londoniensem, notum suum,
scowling he-saw a-certain citizen of-London acquaintance his
obvium sibi, hominem divitem, cui et dixit, "Nunquid
meeting him a-man rich to-whom also he-said surely-not
et tu venisti ad inimicum regis? redi ocius, consulo
also you have-come to the-enemy of-the-king go-back quickly I-advise
tibi." Ille: "Si inimicum regis eum habetis, nos nescimus.
you he if the-enemy of-the-king him you-hold we know-not
Audivimus et vidimus regis transmarini litteras de pace
we-have-heard and seen of-the-king overseas the-letters about peace
et restitutione istius; si aliud quid latet, clam nobis est."
and restitution of-this-one if other something lies-hidden secret from-us it-is
Et ista fuerant, ante rem, prænuntia signa malorum.
and these-things had-been before the-thing forewarning signs of-evils
In crastino venit qui diceret ei Cantuariam redituro,
on the-morrow came one-who should-say to-him to-Canterbury about-to-return
quod Randulfus de Broch onerariam navem ejus, cum
that Ranulf of Broc the-cargo ship his with

vino suo appulsam, ei abstulerat, rudentes succiderat,
wine his landed from-him had-taken-away the-cables had-cut
ancoras tulerat, nautas, alios ceciderat, alios incarceraverat
the-anchors had-carried-off the-sailors some had-beaten others had-imprisoned
apud castrum Pevenesei. Mittit illico ad regem juniorem
at the-castle of-Pevensey he-sends at-once to the-king younger
abbatem Sancti Albani et priorem de Dovra, nuntians
the-abbot of-Saint Albans and the-prior of Dover announcing
quænam circa eum agerentur; jubente rege restituta est
what around him was-being-done with-ordering the-king restored was
ei navis. Archiepiscopum Thomam redeuntem Cantuariam
to-him the-ship the-archbishop Thomas returning to-Canterbury
aliqui militum suorum comitati sunt, ne forte, tot
some of-knights his accompanied have lest perhaps with-so-many
concurrentibus et crebrescentibus signis malis, aliqui garciones
concurring and increasing signs evil some grooms
ab insidiis secus stratam in eum irruerent; quinque omnino
from ambushes beside the-road upon him might-rush five in-all
militum scuta, dextrarii et lanceæ, in ejus fuerunt comitatu.
of-knights shields chargers and lances in his were retinue
Statim nunciatum est regi transmarino, quod in exercitu
at-once announced it-was to-the-king overseas that in an-army
grandi, et armato loricis et galeis, regnum perambularet,
great and armed with-hauberks and helmets the-kingdom he-traversed
urbes expugnare, et filium ejus a regno expungere.
the-cities to-storm and son his from the-kingdom to-expunge
Primo sero reditus ejus Cantuariam versus, apud
on-the-first evening of-the-return his to-Canterbury toward at
Wrotheham, venit ad eum quidam sacerdos Willelmus
Wrotham came to him a-certain priest William
nomine, pauper et habitu religiosus, qui tunc celebrarat apud
by-name poor and in-habit religious who then had-celebrated at

Chidingestune. Hic ad secretum soliloquium archiepiscopi,
Chiddingstone he to the-secret soliloquy of-the-archbishop
quod rogaverat, admissus, ait ei, "Domine, ecce affero
which he-had-asked admitted says to-him lord behold I-bring
vobis reliquias sancti Laurentii, et sancti Vincentii, et
to-you relics of-saint Laurence and of-saint Vincent and
sanctæ Ceciliæ, ex præcepto sancti Laurentii, qui mihi in
of-saint Cecilia by the-command of-saint Laurence who to-me in
visione nocturna apparuit, et has, quas apud me habebam,
a-vision nocturnal appeared and these which with me I-had
horum sanctorum reliquias esse dixit." Archiepiscopus:
of-these saints relics to-be said the-archbishop
"Frater, et quomodo scis has horum sanctorum esse
brother and how do-you-know these of-these saints to-be
reliquias?" Willelmus: "Domine, ita et ego in visione mea
relics William lord so and I in vision my
quæsivi a beato Laurentio signum aliquod, dicens quod alias
asked from blessed Laurence a-sign some saying that otherwise
mihi non credderetis; et beatus Laurentius dixit mihi pro
to-me not you-would-believe and blessed Laurence said to-me for
intersigno, quod nuper in sinum vestrum manum injecistis,
a-countersign that lately into bosom your the-hand you-thrust
et cilicium quo proximo carni vestræ utimini, discissum
and the-hair-shirt which next to-the-flesh your you-use torn
invenistis, et apud vos deliberans utrum illud resui
you-found and with yourself deliberating whether it to-be-resewn
faceretis, an aliud novum indueretis, post modicum injecta
you-should-have or another new should-put-on after a-little with-thrust
manu, illud integrum invenistis." Ad hæc archiepiscopus,
hand it whole you-found to these-things the-archbishop
inter cætera: "In virtute Sancti Spiritus, in vi obedientiæ
among other-things in the-power of-the-Holy Spirit in the-force of-obedience

tibi præcipio, ne cui dicas me superstite." Sacerdos:
you I-command that-not to-anyone you-tell with-me surviving the-priest
"Fiat;" et subjungit, "Pauper sum, in aliena ministro
let-it-be-done and subjoins poor I-am in another's I-serve
ecclesia; cogitate de me." Archiepiscopus: "Infra quatriduum
church think about me the-archbishop within the-four-days
Natalis Domini veni ad me, et providebo tibi." Discessit ille.
of-the-Nativity of-the-Lord come to me and I-will-provide for-you departed he

THE KNIGHTS SWEAR

Ranulf of Broc and Gervase cite the Londoners who met the archbishop. The Brocs hunt his deer and dock the tail of his packhorse. Thomas prepares for death. The bishops complain to the king overseas; when one says there will be no peace while Thomas lives, four barons, Reginald son of Urse, William of Tracy, Hugh of Morville, and Richard Brito, leave the court sworn, it was said, to his death. Next day the king sends men to England, rumored to seize him.

Randulfus de Broch, et Gervasius de Cornhelle, regis
Ranulf of Broc and Gervase of Cornhill of-the-king
officiales, statim una dierum mala male dissimulantes, quasi
officials at-once on-one of-the-days evils badly dissembling as-if
ex ore regis præcipientes, fecerunt evocari et citari
from the-mouth of-the-king ordering had to-be-summoned and to-be-cited
priores ecclesiarum, et cives nominatiores urbis Londoniæ,
the-priors of-the-churches and the-citizens more-notable of-the-city of-London
et nomina quorumcunque exeuntium obviam archiepiscopo
and the-names of-whoever going-out to-meet the-archbishop
clanculo scribi fecerant, ut ad curiam regis venirent
secretly to-be-written had-made that to the-court of-the-king they-should-come
cavere datis vadibus judicio curiæ regis stare,
to-give-surety with-given pledges to-the-judgment of-the-court of-the-king to-abide

quia in occursum archiepiscopi processerant, inimici regis,
because to meet the-archbishop they-had-gone-forth enemies of-the-king
ut aiebant: priores tamen et personæ ecclesiasticæ non
as they-said the-priors nevertheless and persons ecclesiastical not
venerunt. Cives plurimi, qui venerant dicta die,
came the-citizens very-many who had-come on-the-appointed day
responderunt se non videre litteras regis, quæ ita eos
answered themselves not to-see letters of-the-king which so them
citari vel cavere præciperent, sed neque justitiariorum.
to-be-cited or to-give-surety ordered but nor of-the-justiciars
"Erant regis cives et fideles, non eis obnoxii; ad regis
they-were of-the-king citizens and faithful not to-them bound at of-the-king
imperium facerent, quod deberent." Res ita remansit.
the-command they-would-do what they-ought the-matter so remained
Nec enim in hoc peccaverant, sed potius præstiterant Deo
nor for in this had-they-sinned but rather had-rendered to-God
obsequium justitiæ, cultum autem suo archiepiscopo, legato
service of-justice the-worship moreover to-their archbishop legate
tam debitam quam devotam honorificentiam.
as-much due as devoted honor
Quomodo dimisit a se milites et omnes suos præter
how he-dismissed from himself the-knights and all his-men except
clericos suos et domesticam familiam suam, sine qua esse
clerks his and domestic household his without which to-be
non potuit.
not he-could
Venit bonus Thomas Cantuariam, recedunt ad propria illi
came good Thomas to-Canterbury withdraw to their-own those
quinque milites; et ipse cum solis sacerdotibus et clericis
five knights and he-himself with only priests and clerks
et familia domestica ibi remanet. Familia illa infamis de
and the-household domestic there remains family that infamous of

Broch, ei vicinantes apud castrum Saltwde, nocturnas illi
Broc to-him neighboring at the-castle of-Saltwood nocturnal for-him
ad exitus viarum undique circa Cantuariam tendebant insidias,
at the-exits of-roads everywhere around Canterbury laid ambushes
et ut eum ad impatientiam provocarent, et homines ejus ad
and that him to impatience they-might-provoke and the-men his to
rixam, in ejus indagine sine licentia venabantur, et cervum
a-brawl in his park without leave hunted and a-stag
capiebant, archiepiscopi proprios canes, in sylvis ejus militantes,
took of-the-archbishop own dogs in woods his hunting
capiebant et retinebant. Amplius, una dierum ante Natalem
they-took and kept further one of-the-days before the-Nativity
Domini, quidam Robertus de Broc, qui clericus quondam
of-the-Lord a-certain Robert of Broc who a-clerk once
fuerat, et postea monachus in vestibus albis, sed post
had-been and afterward a-monk in garments white but afterward
apostata et ad sæculum transfuga, summagium archiepiscopi
an-apostate and to the-world a-deserter a-packhorse of-the-archbishop
ab una villarum ecclesiæ cum procuratione ipsius Cantuariam
from one of-the-towns of-the-church with provision his to-Canterbury
tendens in strata regia obviam habuit, et unum equum per
heading in the-road royal in-the-way had and one horse by
manum Johannis de Broc nepotis sui fecit tota cauda curtari,
the-hand of-John of Broc nephew his had in-whole tail docked
in dedecus archiepiscopi. Sed Dei desiderator Thomas, currus
to the-disgrace of-the-archbishop but of-God the-yearner Thomas the-chariot
et auriga ecclesiæ Anglorum, patiens tam in prosperis
and charioteer of-the-church of-the-English patient as-much in prosperity
quam in adversis, præcipuæ virtutis domicilium, omnia
as in adversity of-outstanding virtue the-dwelling all
hæc recolens præcurrentia martyrii sibi imminentis
these-things recalling forerunning of-the-martyrdom to-him impending

signa, animum firmans ad exitum suum de Ægypto, de die
signs the-mind steadying for exodus his from Egypt from day
in diem se præparat, in eleemosynis profusior, in oratione
to day himself prepares in alms more-lavish in prayer
devotior, in omni cura animæ suæ sollicitior. Aliquotiens
more-devout in all care of-soul his more-solicitous several-times
etiam inter loquendum cum clericis suis, dicebat, causam hanc
also while speaking with clerks his he-said cause this
sine sanguinis effusione non posse terminari, et se in
without of-blood shedding not to-be-able to-be-ended and himself in
causa ecclesiæ usque ad mortem staturum. Quod sui non
the-cause of-the-church up-to to death about-to-stand which his-men not
intelligebant, verba putantes; sed postea hujusmodi recoluerunt
understood words thinking-them but afterward of-this-kind recalled
verba, qui viderunt opera. Et domino papæ scribit
the-words those-who saw the-works and to-the-lord pope writes
archiepiscopus, non imminere sibi nisi mortem et gladium,
the-archbishop not to-impend over-himself except death and the-sword
supplicans ut pro eo Dominum Deum attentius deprecetur.
begging that for him the-Lord God more-attentively he-pray
Venientes autem versus curiam transmarini regis, hinc
coming however toward the-court of-the-king overseas on-this-side
Eboracensis et Londoniensis et Saresberiensis, inde
the-York-one and the-London-one and the-Salisbury-one on-that-side
archidiaconus Pictavensis, (siquidem Cantuariensis archidiaconus
the-archdeacon of-Poitiers since the-Canterbury archdeacon
in mari laboraverat et nondum venerat,) eunti forte videre
at sea had-labored and not-yet had-come to-him-going perhaps to-see
archiepiscopum Tyri regi obviavit, et quæ jam audierat
the-archbishop of-Tyre the-king met and what already he-had-heard
de excommunicatione seu suspensione episcoporum, sicut
about the-excommunication or suspension of-the-bishops as

dicebatur, acta narrant. Cantuariensi archiepiscopo totum
was-said the-acts tell to-the-Canterbury archbishop the-whole
imputant, reum deferunt læsæ majestatis, accusant absentem,
impute as-guilty they-report of-injured majesty they-accuse the-absent
indefensum; id tamen verentes, ne quandoque vocaretur
undefended this nevertheless fearing lest sometime he-be-called
et audiretur; in hoc creduliores summis sacerdotibus
and be-heard in this more-credulous than-the-high priests
Judæorum, Jesu Christi mortem machinantibus, eo quod
of-the-Jews of-Jesus Christ the-death plotting on-that because
Illi licuit pro se respondere in publico, huic Ejus
to-Him it-was-allowed for himself to-answer in public to-this-one His
discipulo Thomæ nequaquam. Causam (inquam) eorum, quæ
disciple Thomas by-no-means the-cause I-say their which
erat ecclesiastica, ante oculos principis sæcularis offerunt,
was ecclesiastical before the-eyes of-a-prince secular they-offer
querimoniis suis regem nimis credulum illis incitant in
with-complaints their the-king too credulous to-them they-incite against
hominem recentis pacis suæ, in archiepiscopum sanctum
the-man of-recent peace his against the-archbishop holy
Dei. Geminantur mala cum falso nuntiatum est regi
of-God are-doubled the-evils when falsely announced it-was to-the-king
quod archiepiscopus in militum armatorum manu forti regnum
that the-archbishop in of-knights armed a-band strong the-kingdom
perambularet. Quæsivit rex ab Eboracensi, Londoniensi,
was-traversing asked the-king from the-York-one the-London-one
Saresberiensi consilium. Eboracensis: “Quære consilium a
the-Salisbury-one counsel the-York-one seek counsel from
baronibus et a militibus tuis; nostrum non est dicere
the-barons and from knights your ours not is to-say
quid facto opus est.” Tandem ait unus, “Equidem, domine,
what to-be-done need is at-length says one indeed lord

Thoma superstite non habebis dies bonos, nec regnum
with-Thomas surviving not you-will-have days good nor a-kingdom
pacatum, nec tempora quieta." Rex itaque tantam ex hoc
pacified nor times quiet the-king so so-great from this
adversus eundem archiepiscopum indignationem, amaritudinem,
against the-same archbishop indignation bitterness
et turbationem concepit, et ita cum vultu et gestu ostendit,
and disturbance conceived and so with face and gesture showed
quod ejus commotionem intelligentes et ei placere quærentes
that his agitation understanding and him to-please seeking
quatuor domestici sui barones, Reginaldus Ursonis, Willelmus
four household his barons Reginald son-of-Urse William
de Traci, Hugo de Morevilla, Ricardus Brito, ut dicebatur,
of Tracy Hugh of Morville Richard Brito as was-said
jurati in mortem archiepiscopi, a curia recedunt.
sworn into the-death of-the-archbishop from the-court withdraw
In crastino postquam a curia regis archiepiscopum
on the-morrow after from the-court of-the-king the-archbishop
interfecturi discesserant, rex in camera sua suos allocutus est
about-to-kill they-had-departed the-king in chamber his his addressed has
barones, questus eis de archiepiscopo, quod quasi tyrannus
barons complaining to-them about the-archbishop that as-if a-tyrant
terram suam esset ingressus, quod pro servitio suo omnes
land his he-had entered that for service his all
episcopos et archiepiscopum Eboracensem suspendisset, et
the-bishops and the-archbishop of-York he-had-suspended and
quosdam excommunicasset; quod totum regnum turbasset;
certain had-excommunicated that the-whole kingdom he-had-disturbed
quod filium suum et eum corona et diademate regni
that son his also him of-the-crown and diadem of-the-kingdom
intenderet privare; quod supra eum perquisisset legationem;
he-intended to-deprive that over him he-had-procured the-legation

quod privilegium quoddam a summo pontifice obtinuisset
that a-privilege certain from the-supreme pontiff he-had-obtained
sibi et episcopis de donationibus ecclesiarum, sublata et
for-himself and the-bishops about the-gifts of-churches with-removed both
comitum et baronum, et ipsius etiam regis, advocatione.
of-the-earls and of-the-barons and of-the-very even of-the-king the-advowson
Primus respondit comes Legecestriæ: "Equidem, domine,
first answered the-earl of-Leicester indeed lord
amicissimi sibi fuerunt ipse archiepiscopus et dominus
most-friendly to-each-other were himself the-archbishop and lord
pater meus comes, sed pro vero habeatis, quod, postquam
father my the-earl but for truth hold that after
a terra et dilectione vestra discessit archiepiscopus, neque
from land and love your departed the-archbishop neither
meum vidit nuntium, nec ego suum." Engelgerus de Bohun,
my saw messenger nor I his Engelger of Bohun
quidam inveteratus dierum malorum, et patruus Saresberiensis
a-certain grown-old in-days evil and uncle of-the-Salisbury
episcopi, qui excommunicatus characterem bestiæ habebat
bishop who excommunicated the-mark of-the-beast had
in fronte, ait, "De tali homine, nescio quomodo vindicare
on the-forehead says about such a-man I-know-not how to-avenge
possitis, nisi patibulo appendatur, virgis rigentibus in funem
you-can unless on-a-gibbet he-be-hanged with-rods stiff into a-rope
intortis, actus in crucem." Willelmus cognomento Malus
twisted driven into a-cross William surnamed Bad
Vicinus, nepos Eudonis comitis Britanniæ, tertius fuit, qui
Neighbor nephew of-Eudo count of-Brittany the-third was who
loqueretur. "Olim," inquit, "Ierosolymis redii, Roma
spoke once he-says from-Jerusalem I-returned through-Rome
transii. De pontificibus Romanis ibi hospitem meum,
I-passed about the-pontiffs Roman there host my

inter cæterum sermonem, interrogans, audivi quod aliquis
among other conversation asking I-heard that some
papa interfectus fuit propter insolentiam et proterviam
pope killed was on-account-of insolence and wantonness
intolerabilem." Finitis his statim misit rex Willelmum
intolerable with-ended these-things at-once sent the-king William
comitem de Magna Villa, Seierum de Quinci, Ricardum
earl of Mande- ville Saher of Quincy Richard
de Humeth, post illos quatuor in Angliam; fama fuit,
of Humet after those four into England report was
ut archiepiscopum caperent. Comes Willelmus et Seierus
that the-archbishop they-might-seize earl William and Saher
usque ad portum maris venerunt, sed non transfretaverunt.
up-to to the-port of-the-sea came but not they-crossed
Ricardus ad alium portum tendens transfretavit. Rex filius
Richard to another port heading crossed the-king the-son
erat Wintoniæ; misit Ricardus ad magistros ejus Hugonem de
was at-Winchester sent Richard to the-masters his Hugh of
Gundevilla et Willelmum filium Johannis, ut clam rege
Gundeville and William son of-John that secretly-from the-king
cum militibus domus regiæ Cantuariam irent. Ipse
with the-knights of-the-house royal to-Canterbury they-should-go he-himself
circa maritimam insidiabatur, ut si forte archiepiscopus fugæ
around the-coast lay-in-wait so-that if perhaps the-archbishop of-flight
præsidium attentaret ad aliquem portum maris, caperetur;
the-protection should-attempt at some port of-the-sea he-might-be-seized
quod et faciebant in transmarinis comes Willelmus et
which also did in overseas-parts earl William and
Seierus, ut, si forte transfretasset, ibi caperetur.
Saher that if perhaps he-had-crossed there he-might-be-seized

The four gather at Saltwood with the Brocs. On Christmas Day Thomas preaches that Canterbury may soon have a second martyr and excommunicates Robert of Broc and others. He sends clerks away to France and to the pope and grants a chapel to the priest of Wrotham. On 29 December the knights come to Canterbury, and in his chamber Reginald demands that he absolve the bishops; Thomas refuses.

Mira res et stupenda accidit. Nam illi quatuor barones
a-wonderful thing and astonishing happened for those four barons
superius nominati, Raginaldus Ursonis filius et ejus socii,
above named Reginald of-Urse son and his companions
qui diversos maris portus petiverant, duce diabolo,
who different of-the-sea ports had-sought with-leader the-devil
bonorum omnium hoste antiquo, circa eandem horam diei
of-good-men all enemy ancient about the-same hour of-day
unius in Angliam apud castrum de Saltwde, ad familiam
one into England at the-castle of Saltwood to the-family
de Broch congregantur: tamen ante adventum eorum
of Broc gather nevertheless before the-arrival their
beatus archiepiscopus de imminente occisorum ejus ingressu
the-blessed archbishop about the-impending of-the-killers his entry
certissime fuit edoctus, et magis confortabatur in Domino,
most-certainly was informed and more he-was-strengthened in the-Lord
viriliter agens et induens se armaturam Dei, ut fortiter
manfully acting and putting-on himself the-armor of-God that bravely
stare posset in die Domini; sed secretum habuit ne in
to-stand he-could in the-day of-the-Lord but secret he-held-it lest in
tanto festo tumultus fieret, quantum in eo erat.
so-great a-feast a-tumult be-made as-much-as in him was

Nocte Dominicæ Nativitatis legit evangelicam lectionem,
on-the-night of-the-Lord of-the-Nativity he-read the-gospel reading
Liber generationis, et missam noctis celebravit. Ante
the-book of-the-generation and the-mass of-the-night celebrated before
magnam missam in die, quam et ipse celebravit,
the-great mass on the-day which also he-himself celebrated
sermonem luculentum fecit in pulpito ad populum, sumpta
a-sermon brilliant he-made in the-pulpit to the-people with-taken
inde materia, circa quam plurimum versatus est, quod
thence the-matter about which very-much engaged he-has that
in terra est pax hominibus bonæ voluntatis. Et cum
on earth is peace to-men of-good will and when
de sanctis patribus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, qui ibi sunt
about the-holy fathers of-the-Canterbury church who there are
confessores, loqueretur, ait, unum eos habere martyrem
confessors he-spoke he-said one them to-have martyr
archiepiscopum, sanctum Elphegum; possibile esse, ut et
archbishop saint Alphege possible to-be that also
alterum in brevi ibi haberent. Sed et pro tam
a-second within short-time there they-might-have but also for so
probrosa injuria de equo pauperis coloni sui curtato in
shameful an-injury concerning the-horse of-a-poor tenant his docked in
obsequio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, sententia excommunicationis
the-service of-the-Canterbury church with-the-sentence of-excommunication
innodavit Robertum de Broch, sicut ei prius denunciaverat
he-bound Robert of Broc as to-him earlier he-had-announced
per nuncios, invitans eum ad satisfactionem; et ipse
through envoys inviting him to satisfaction and he
contumax ei renunciaverat per militem quendam, David
contumacious to-him had-sent-back through a-knight a-certain David
de Rumenel, quod si eum excommunicaverit, faceret
of Romney that if him he-should-excommunicate he-would-act

sicut excommunicatus. Alios quoque duos, ecclesiarum de
as excommunicated others also two of-the-churches of
Herges et Thierlewda violentos incubatores, qui officiales
Harrow and Thierlewda violent squatters who the-officials
ejus venientes non admiserant, eadem involvit sententia.
his coming not had-admitted with-the-same he-involved sentence
Die etiam sancti Stephani magnam missam celebravit; sed
on-the-day also of-saint Stephen the-great mass he-celebrated but
et die beati Johannis apostoli et evangelistæ. Ipso
also on-the-day of-blessed John apostle and evangelist on-that-very
die emisit secreto in Galliam duos clericos suos, magistrum
day he-sent secretly into Gaul two clerks his master
Herbertum et Alexandrum Gualensem, crucis suæ bajulum;
Herbert and Alexander the-Welshman of-cross his the-bearer
tertium, Gillebertum de Glanavilla, ad dominum papam iturum
a-third Gilbert of Glanville to the-lord pope about-to-go
misit; duos alios, Ricardum capellanum et Johannem Planetam
he-sent two others Richard the-chaplain and John Planeta
ad episcopum Norwici, absolvere ad tempus excommunicatos
to the-bishop of-Norwich to-absolve for a-time excommunicated
sacerdotes de terra comitis Hugonis, qui excommunicatis
priests from the-land of-earl Hugh who for-the-excommunicated
scienter divina celebraverant, accipienda prius a
knowingly divine-things had-celebrated with-to-be-received first from
sacerdotibus illis securitate, quod infra annum ad dominum
priests those security that within a-year to the-lord
papam irent, vel pro omnibus communiter duos ex se
pope they-should-go or for all in-common two from themselves
mitterent, pœnitentiæ satisfactionem ab ipso papa percepturi.
they-should-send of-penance the-satisfaction from himself the-pope about-to-receive

Jam memor archiepiscopus sacerdotis sui Willelmi, qui ad
now mindful the-archbishop of-priest his William who to
eum venerat apud Wroteham, eum per Willelmum Beivin,
him had-come at Wrotham him through William Beivin
notum ejus, quæri fecerat, si forte in curia vel in urbe
acquaintance his to-be-sought had-caused if perhaps in the-court or in the-city
inveniretur. Et non invento eo, chartam fecit scribi,
he-might-be-found and with-not found him a-charter he-had to-be-written
in qua donavit et confirmavit illi capellam de Penesherst,
in which he-gave and confirmed to-him the-chapel of Penshurst
subscripta excommunicatione, si quis illam ei auferre
with-subscribed excommunication if anyone it from-him to-take-away
præsumeret. Et chartam illam tradidit Willelmo Beivin,
should-presume and charter that he-handed to-William Beivin
tradendam sacerdoti, quando eum videret. Quis hunc non
to-be-handed to-the-priest when him he-should-see who him not
fuisse martyrii sui præscium dicet? Per chartam illam
to-have-been of-martyrdom his foreknowing will-say through charter that
postea sacerdos ecclesiam suam in pace habuit a rege
afterward the-priest church his in peace had from the-king
juniore; qui dixit, audita charta et miraculo, se nolle
younger who said with-heard the-charter and the-miracle himself to-be-unwilling
in sancti archipræsulis incidere excommunicationem.
into of-the-holy archprelate to-fall the-excommunication
Jam vero evocati aderant ad castra circa Cantuariam, Dovre,
now however summoned were-present at the-castles around Canterbury of-Dover
Rophe, Saltwde, Blechingelee, milites deputati custodiis
of-Rochester of-Saltwood of-Bletchingley knights assigned to-the-guards
castrorum illorum; forte ut, si includendo infra ecclesiam
of-castles those perhaps that if by-shutting-in within the-church
Cantuariensem archiepiscopus et sui se vellent retinere,
of-Canterbury the-archbishop and his-men themselves wished to-keep

illorum militum in vicino positorum adveniens quicunque
of-those knights in the-vicinity placed arriving whatever
multitudo obsidione eos expugnarent; forte, si fugere vellet
multitude by-siege them might-storm perhaps if to-flee wished
bonus archiepiscopus, quacunque veniret, in hostes incideret;
the-good archbishop wherever he-came into enemies he-would-fall
forte [ut] si ad ultionem detruncationis ejus zelo Dei
perhaps that if for vengeance of-the-cutting-down his with-the-zeal of-God
cives Cantuarienses vel vicini populi in grassatores
the-citizens of-Canterbury or neighboring peoples against cutthroats
illos vellent insurgere, iniqui illi vel ad aliquod castrorum
those wished to-rise the-wicked those either to some of-castles
illorum haberent refugium, vel se defensuri a castris
those might-have refuge or themselves about-to-defend from castles
illis illico sibi mitti peterent militare præsidium.
those at-once for-themselves to-be-sent might-ask military help
Quinto igitur Natalis die, prædicti quatuor barones
on-the-fifth therefore of-the-Nativity day the-aforesaid four barons
regis cum suis omnibus et cum illa familia de Broch
of-the-king with their all and with that family of Broc
a castro Saltwde Cantuariam veniunt. Additi sunt ad eos
from the-castle of-Saltwood to-Canterbury come added were to them
milites plurimi, quos de castellis et vicinia Cantuariæ,
knights very-many whom from the-castles and the-vicinity of-Canterbury
quasi ad servitium regis, edicto evocaverant: quorum quasi
as-if to the-service of-the-king by-edict they-had-summoned of-whom about
duodecim cum illis quatuor ad curiam archiepiscopi suaviter
twelve with those four to the-court of-the-archbishop smoothly
directo tendunt; aliis interea indicentibus per urbem
by-direct-way head with-others meanwhile proclaiming through the-city
præfectis et majoribus civitatibus, et ex parte regis
to-the-prefects and greater-men in-the-cities and on behalf of-the-king

præcipientibus, ut omnes cives armati cum eis veniant
ordering that all the-citizens armed with them should-come
ad domum archiepiscopi ad servitium regis. Cumque civitas
to the-house of-the-archbishop to the-service of-the-king and-when the-city
eorum furorem admirata contradiceret, statim præcipiunt
their fury wondering-at refused at-once they-order
ut in pace se habeant, non se moveant, quicquid
that in peace themselves they-hold not themselves move whatever
videant vel audiant. Hæc erat istorum opera, ut vel civitatis
they-see or hear this was of-them the-work that either of-the-city
habitatores eis ad facinus suum adderentur, vel si minus,
the-inhabitants to-them for crime their be-added or if not
non eos impedirent, neque pro archiepiscopo suo decertarent.
not them they-should-hinder nor for archbishop their contend
Præambuli illi prædicti barones et milites in thalamum
the-foremost those aforesaid barons and knights into the-chamber
interiorem ad archiepiscopum introducuntur. Hora diei erat
inner to the-archbishop are-led-in the-hour of-the-day was
quasi decima. Comederat archiepiscopus, sed adhuc comedebat
about the-tenth had-eaten the-archbishop but still was-eating
servitorum familia. Introeuntes eos ipse salutatione prævenit:
of-the-servants the-household entering them he with-greeting anticipated
responsio eorum aut nulla fuit aut obscura. Inter clericos
the-answer their either none was or obscure among the-clerks
et monachos ante eum consederunt. Reginaldus Ursonis
and monks before him they-sat-down Reginald son-of-Urse
sic orsus est: "Mittit nos ad te dominus rex transmarinus,
thus began has sends us to you the-lord king overseas
ut excommunicatos in ingressu tuo in Angliam episcopos
that the-excommunicated at the-entry your into England bishops
absolvas, suspensos officio suo restituas, et postea ad filium
you-absolve the-suspended to-office their you-restore and afterward to son

suum regem, quem decoronare intendis, eas Wintoniam,
his the-king whom to-uncrown you-intend you-go to-Winchester
de tanto excessu satisfacturus, et judicio curiæ ipsius
for so-great excess about-to-satisfy and the-judgment of-court his
pariturus." Archiepiscopus: "Ego quidem excommunicatos hos
about-to-obey the-archbishop I indeed excommunicated these
non excommunicavi, suspensos non suspendi; sed dominus
not excommunicated suspended not suspended but the-lord
papa litteris suis, hoc modo filios suos corripiens, et male
pope by-letters his in-this way sons his rebuking and the-ill
meritos puniens: archiepiscopum Eboracensem, quia me
deserving punishing the-archbishop of-York because with-me
absente et non vocato, nec sciente nec consentiente, in
absent and not summoned nor knowing nor consenting to
præjudicium ecclesiæ meæ, debitam ecclesiæ Cantuariensi
the-prejudice of-church my due to-the-church of-Canterbury
et mihi novi regis coronationem in parochia mea, etiam
and to-me of-the-new king the-coronation in parish my even
ipsius domini papæ litteris prohibitus usurpavit; episcopos,
of-the-very of-the-lord pope by-letters forbidden usurped the-bishops
quia, cum sint Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganei et professi,
because since they-are of-the-Canterbury church suffragans and professed
hoc sustinuerunt, pro jure suæ matris ecclesiæ non
this they-allowed for the-right of-their mother church not
reclamantes. De sententia autem domini papæ non est meum
protesting about the-sentence however of-the-lord pope not is mine
retractare; ligatos ejus non potest minor potestas solvere.
to-retract the-bound of-him not can a-lesser power loose
Veruntamen cum in archiepiscopo nulla sit mihi solvendi,
nevertheless since in the-archbishop none be for-me of-loosing
sicut nec ligandi, potestas, suffraganeis meis Londoniensi
as nor of-binding the-power to-suffragans my the-London-one

et Saresberiensi concessi requisitus, quod eos anathemate
and the-Salisbury-one I-granted requested that them from-anathema
absolverem, et alios omnes suspensos restituerem, si modo
I-would-absolve and others all suspended restore if only
vellent vel cum humilitate invocare misericordiam, vel cum
they-wished either with humility to-invoke mercy or with
data securitate ecclesiastico stare judicio; sed renuerunt
given security to-the-ecclesiastical to-stand judgment but refused
qui me convenerunt. Adhuc ad id paratus sum. Domini
they-who me met still for that ready I-am of-the-lord
regis novi coronatio firma, stabilis et inconvulsa permanet; et
king new the-coronation firm stable and unshaken remains and
salva coronati dignitate, dominus papa punit coronatoris
with-saved of-the-crowned the-dignity the-lord pope punishes of-the-crowner
injuriam; quod is qui non debuit, et ubi non debuit, nostri
the-injury that he who not ought and where not ought our
præoccupavit officii dignitatem, et pro silentio et sufferentia
usurped of-office the-dignity and for silence and sufferance
sua nostri plectuntur episcopi. Et totum istud de permissione
their our are-punished bishops and all that from the-permission
domini regis est, et de ejus licentia concessa mihi in die
of-the-lord king is and from his leave granted to-me on the-day
pacis nostræ. Neque regem novum ideo quæro exhæredare;
of-peace our nor the-king new therefore do-I-seek to-disinherit
quin potius ei multa mundi regna, salvo (si fieri
nay rather to-him many of-the-world kingdoms with-saved if to-be-done
posset) possidentium jure, optarem. Ad ipsum nuper
it-could of-the-possessors the-right I-would-wish to him-himself lately
iter arripueram, non ei satisfacturus, qui in nullo eum
a-journey I-had-taken not to-him about-to-satisfy who in nothing him
offendi, sed promotioni ipsius domini mei debita veneratione
offended but at-the-promotion of-the-very lord my with-due veneration

congratulaturus. Sed apud Londoniam ejus nuncium et
about-to-congratulate but at London his message and
præceptum suscepi reversionis, quod doleo." Tunc illi in
command I-received of-return which I-grieve-at then they into
minas statim laxis habenis proruperunt. Ille ait, "Miror
threats at-once with-loosened reins burst-out he says I-wonder
equidem quod sic obstrepitis, quod minas et mala intentatis.
indeed that so you-make-a-din that threats and evils you-threaten
Scitis quod recepit me dominus rex, in die Sanctæ Mariæ
you-know that received me the-lord king on the-day of-Saint Mary
Magdalenæ, ad pacem et gratiam suam; et aliquot vestrum
Magdalene to peace and favor his and some of-you
ibi præsentes vidi, et quantum intellexi, placuit vobis; et
there present I-saw and as-much-as I-understood it-pleased you and
cum litteris et conductu regis terram ingressus sum."
with letters and safe-conduct of-the-king the-land entered I-have
Tunc ait ei magister Johannes Saresberiensis, "Domine,
then says to-him master John of-Salisbury lord
loquimini secretius super verbo isto." Archiepiscopus: "Non
speak more-secretly about word this the-archbishop not
expedit; talia proponunt et postulant, quæ omnino
it-is-expedient such-things they-propose and demand which wholly
facere non possum nec debeo." Raginaldus Ursonis; "A
to-do not I-can nor ought Reginald son-of-Urse from
quo ergo habes archiepiscopatum?" Ille; "Spiritualia a
whom therefore have-you the-archbishopric he the-spiritual-things from
Deo et domino papa, temporalia et possessiones a
God and the-lord pope the-temporal-things and the-possessions from
domino rege." Raginaldus: "Nonne totum te a rege
the-lord king Reginald do-you-not all yourself from the-king
habere recognoscis?" Ille: "Nequaquam; sed habemus reddere
to-have recognize he by-no-means but we-have to-render

quæ sunt regis regi, et quæ sunt Dei Deo."
the-things-which are of-the-king to-the-king and which are of-God to-God
Raginaldus et alii, quasi aliquid mirum dixisset, amplius
Reginald and the-others as-if something wonderful he-had-said more
fremebant et accendebantur, et stridebant dentibus in eum.
raged and were-inflamed and gnashed with-teeth against him

THE KNIGHTS IN THE PALACE

Thomas tells the knights he will not desert his church, and reminds Reginald, William of Tracy, and Hugh of Morville that they are his men. They order his household to leave him, seize two of his knights, and go out crying "To arms!" Their band enters by the palace gate, which accomplices inside had opened for them; Robert of Broc breaks through a wall. The monks drag Thomas toward the church for vespers, and he goes last, with the cross carried before him.

Sed Thomas justus, quasi leo confidens absque terrore erat,
but Thomas the-just as-if a-lion confident without terror was
paratus pro justitia et libertate ecclesiæ suæ usque ad mortem
ready for justice and the-liberty of-church his up-to to death
agonizari pro anima sua. Et ait, "Frustra mihi minamini; si
to-struggle for soul his and he-says in-vain to-me you-threaten if
omnes gladii Angliæ capiti meo immineant, ab observatione
all the-swords of-England over-head my hang from the-observance
justitiæ Dei et obedientia domini papæ terrores vestri non
of-the-justice of-God and the-obedience of-the-lord pope terrors your not
me dimovere poterunt. Pede ad pedem me reperietis in Domini
me to-move will-be-able foot to foot me you-will-find in of-the-Lord
prœlio. Semel recessi timidus sacerdos; redii in consilio
battle once I-withdrew a-timid priest I-have-returned in counsel
et obedientia domini papæ ad ecclesiam meam: amplius in
and obedience of-the-lord pope to church my further for

sempiternum non eam deseram. Si liceat mihi in pace
ever not it I-shall-desert if it-be-allowed to-me in peace
fungi sacerdotio meo, bonum est mihi; si minus, fiat de
to-discharge priesthood my good it-is for-me if not let-be-done about
me voluntas Dei. Præter hæc, nostis quid inter me et vos
me the-will of-God besides these-things you-know what between me and you
sit; unde et magis miror, quod audetis archiepiscopo in domo
be whence also more I-wonder that you-dare an-archbishop in house
sua minari." Hoc autem dicebat commemorans quod Raginaldus
his to-threaten this however he-said recalling that Reginald
ille, et Willelmus de Traci et Hugo de Morvilla, ejus, dum
that and William of Tracy and Hugh of Morville his while
adhuc cancellarius erat, propria deditione homines facti sunt,
still chancellor he-was by-own surrender men made were
salva fide regis; quisque eorum ipsius jus imperiumque
with-saved the-faith of-the-king each of-them his right and-command
susceperat, genibus minor. Illi, unde mansuescere deberent,
had-taken-up on-knees smaller they whence to-grow-gentle they-ought
jam furentes, et præ ira se non ferentes, aiunt, "Nihil
now raging and for anger themselves not bearing say nothing
quidem inter nos est contra regem." Ait Raginaldus, "Bene
indeed between us is against the-king says Reginald well
audemus archiepiscopo minari, et plus facere; recedamus."
we-dare an-archbishop to-threaten and more to-do let-us-withdraw
Stabat autem ibi magna pars familiæ archiepiscopi, cum
stood however there a-great part of-the-household of-the-archbishop with
clericis multis et militibus aliquot, qui affluxerant audito
clerks many and knights some who had-flocked with-heard
quod altius loquerentur. Quos intuens Raginaldus ait,
that more-loudly they-were-speaking whom looking-at Reginald says
"Dicimus vobis ex parte regis, cujus homines et fideles
we-say to-you on behalf of-the-king whose men and faithful

estis, ut ab homine isto recedatis." Forte sicut socii
you-are that from man this you-withdraw perhaps as the-companions
eorum in urbe de civibus, ita et hi introrsum de familia
their in the-city about the-citizens so also these within about the-household
metuebant, ne pro domino suo decertarent, nec contra
feared lest for lord their they-should-contend nor against
eos insurgerent. Cumque omnes immoti starent, contrarium
them they-should-rise-up and-when all unmoved stood the-contrary
statim dat Raginaldus ille præceptum; "Præcipimus vobis
at-once gives Reginald that command we-command you
ut hominem istum custodiatis, ne recedat." Archiepiscopus:
that man this you-guard lest he-withdraw the-archbishop
"Facilis sum custodiri; non recedam." Illi grassatores inter
easy I-am to-be-guarded not I-shall-withdraw those cutthroats among
cæteros intuentur militem quendam, dapiferum archiepiscopi,
the-others look-at a-knight certain steward of-the-archbishop
Willelmum filium Nigelli, qui a camera sua quadam de
William son of-Nigel who from chamber his certain about
quodam ratiocinio accurrerat. Hunc apprehensum abducunt,
a-certain account had-run-up him seized they-lead-off
dicentes, "Venies nobiscum." Miles ille archiepiscopo:
saying you-will-come with-us knight that to-the-archbishop
"Domine, vides quid de me faciunt?" Archiepiscopus:
lord do-you-see what about me they-do the-archbishop
"Video. Hæc quidem vis eorum est et potestas tenebrarum."
I-see this indeed force their is and the-power of-darkness
Et exsurgens archiepiscopus eos nondum thalamo egressos
and rising the-archbishop them not-yet from-the-chamber gone-out
sequebatur gressibus paucis, ut militem suum sibi dimittant
followed with-steps few that the-knight his to-him they-release
rogans satis modeste. Illi obstinati recedunt, et obvium sibi
asking quite modestly they obstinate withdraw and meeting them

quendam alium militem archiepiscopi, Radulphum Morin,
a-certain other knight of-the-archbishop Ralph Morin
similiter capiunt secum educentes, et per medium aulæ
likewise seize with-them leading-out and through the-middle of-the-hall
et atrii ad sequelam suam procedentes, terribilibus
and of-the-court to following their proceeding with-terrible
oculis et minis omnia penetrant, et clamant, "Arma, arma,
eyes and threats all-things they-penetrate and shout arms arms
viri!" Interea in quadam magna domo cujusdam Gileberti,
men meanwhile in a-certain great house of-a-certain Gilbert
quæ erat e regione januæ archiepiscopi, omnis manus
which was from opposite the-gate of-the-archbishop all the-band
hostilis congregabatur. Qui tandem, accepta significatione,
hostile was-gathered who at-length with-received the-signal
erumpentes uno impetu, intraverunt januam archiepiscopalem
bursting-out with-one onset entered the-gate archiepiscopal
eis apertam, et statim acclusam, et vociferantes terribiliter
to-them opened and at-once shut and clamoring terribly
clamabant, "Regales milites! Regales! Regales!" Quidam enim
shouted royal knights royal royal certain for
socii eorum, præmissis notioribus suaviter, ne ad strepitum
companions their with-sent-ahead better-known smoothly lest at the-din
janua clauderetur, infra archiepiscopi januam erant: janitorem
the-gate be-shut within of-the-archbishop the-gate were the-porter
archiepiscopi amoverant, suum admoverant, ne quis de urbe
of-the-archbishop had-removed their-own had-put lest anyone from the-city
ad archiepiscopi auxilium ingrederetur, ne quis de rebus
to of-the-archbishop help should-enter lest anyone of things
archiepiscopi aliquid exportaturus egrederetur. Ante januam
of-the-archbishop anything about-to-carry-out should-go-out before the-gate
clausam, postico tantum aperto, erant infra atrium aulæ in
shut with-the-postern only open were within the-court of-the-hall on

equis prædictus Willelmus filius Nigelli, ad prandium homo et
horses the-aforesaid William son of-Nigel at dinner the-man and
miles archiepiscopi, modo contra eum. Huic addictus est officio
knight of-the-archbishop now against him to-this assigned was office
et Simon de Crioil, quidam miles abbatis Sancti Augustini
and Simon of Criol a-certain knight of-the-abbot of-Saint Augustine
vicinus. Raginaldus in ipso proaulo seorsum se armat, et
neighbor Reginald in the-very porch apart himself arms and
scutellarium archiepiscopi Robertum Tibiam compulit sibi
the-butler of-the-archbishop Robert Tibia compelled to-himself
auxilium præstare et obsequium. Raginaldus ille cuidam
help to-render and service Reginald that from-a-certain
fabro lignario gradus quosdam ibi reparanti securim abstulit.
workman wood-working steps some there repairing an-axe took-away
Nos interim domino archiepiscopo in eodem thalamo
we meanwhile with-the-lord archbishop in the-same chamber
commorati, recordabamur conferentes eorum dicta et minas,
having-remained recalled comparing their sayings and threats
cum archiepiscopi responsis. Sentiebamus diversi diversa;
with of-the-archbishop the-answers we-felt different-ones different-things
alii non esse timendum; "ebrii venerant: impransi talia
some not to-be to-be-feared drunk they-had-come not-having-dined such-things
non dicerent. Nativitas Domini est: pax regis nobis
not they-would-say the-Nativity of-the-Lord it-is the-peace of-the-king for-us
pacta est." Alii aiunt, timendum esse ne minas opere
agreed is others say to-be-feared to-be lest the-threats with-deed
compleant. "Multa prævisa erant signa crudelitatis." Interea
they-fulfill many foreseen were signs of-cruelty meanwhile
audimus a parte ecclesiæ clamorem lacrymabilem utriusque
we-hear from the-side of-the-church an-outcry tearful of-each
sexus et omnis fere ætatis hominum, compatientium nobis
sex and of-every nearly age of-men sympathizing with-us

tanquam ovibus occisionis, qui in urbe eos armatos,
as with-sheep of-slaughter who in the-city them armed
et ad archiepiscopum, edicto dato, properantes viderant.
and to the-archbishop with-edict given hastening had-seen
Audimus hinc nostros homines per gradus cursim in
we-hear here our men by the-steps running into
ecclesiam descendere, per medium aulæ fugientes a
the-church descend through the-middle of-the-hall fleeing from
facie armatorum aperta eis janua atrium introeuntium.
the-face of-the-armed with-opened to-them the-gate the-court entering
Osbertus et Algarus et quidam alii servientes archiepiscopo,
Osbert and Algar and certain other servants to-the-archbishop
viso quod irruerent armati, ostium aulæ clauserunt, et
with-seen that rushed-in armed-men the-door of-the-hall shut and
repaguli obice firmaverunt. Quod videns Robertus de
of-the-bar with-the-barrier made-fast which seeing Robert of
Broch cœpit securi diruere parietem quendam, et illac
Broc began with-an-axe to-tear-down a-wall certain and that-way
ingressus per interiora domus, aulæ ostium illis
having-entered through the-inner-parts of-the-house of-the-hall the-door to-those
parricidis aperuit, et illos qui ostium aulæ obfirmaverant,
parricides opened and those who the-door of-the-hall had-barred
gravissime cecidit et vulneravit. Audimus etiam nos clerici
most-severely beat and wounded we-hear also we clerks
introrsus cum archiepiscopo ictus illos Roberti de Broch
within with the-archbishop blows those of-Robert of Broc
parietem diruentis. Quid nisi timor et tremor venerunt
the-wall tearing-down what but fear and trembling came
super nos monachos, clericos et socios archiepiscopi? Ecce
upon us monks clerks and companions of-the-archbishop behold
completum est quod superius sanctus Dei dixerat: “In brevi
fulfilled is what above the-saint of-God had-said in short

mallent esse ubique terrarum, quam in Anglia." Sed bonus
they-would-prefer to-be anywhere of-lands than in England but good
ille Thomas contemptor mortis erat; quippe quæ est sanctis
that Thomas a-despiser of-death was since it is for-holy
viris portus, et ad æternitatem ingressus, et æternum nihil
men a-haven and to eternity an-entry and eternal no
mali sentienti receptaculum. Insuper et securum se sanctus
of-evil feeling a-receptacle moreover also secure himself the-holy
homo gerebat, quasi gaudens se nactum honestam causam
man bore as-if rejoicing himself to-have-found an-honorable cause
moriendi pro justitia et libertate et causa ecclesiæ suæ; et
of-dying for justice and liberty and the-cause of-church his and
quasi cupiens dissolvi et esse cum Christo. Tanta ei erat
as-if desiring to-be-dissolved and to-be with Christ so-great to-him was
libertatis ecclesiasticæ caritas, ut eam non occasu suo, sed
of-liberty ecclesiastical love that it not by-setting his but
resurrectione et salute ipsius metiretur. Tunc monachi, qui
by-the-resurrection and safety its he-measured then the-monks who
plurimi aderant, dicunt ei, "Domine, intrate in ecclesiam."
very-many were-present say to-him lord enter into the-church
Ille: "Absit; ne timeatis; plerique monachi plus justo timidi
he far-be-it not fear most monks more than-just timid
sunt et pusillanimes." Illi non adquiescunt. Alii eum injectis
are and faint-hearted they not acquiesce others him with-thrown
manibus erigunt, et vim ei faciunt. Alii persuadent
hands raise and force on-him do others urge
eundum esse, quia monachi jam vesperas dicerent, et ille
to-be-gone to-be because the-monks already vespers were-saying and he
horam nonam et vesperas esset auditurus. Jubet ergo
the-hour ninth and vespers would-be about-to-hear he-orders therefore
crucem Domini proferri. Quidam clericus ejus, Henricus
the-cross of-the-Lord to-be-brought-forth a-certain clerk his Henry

Autissiodorensis, eam bajulat. In claustrum monachorum cum
of-Auxerre it carries into the-cloister of-the-monks when
venissemus, voluerunt monachi ostium post eum accludere.
we-had-come wished the-monks the-door after him to-shut
Ille ægre ferens non sustinuit, et lento passu postremus
he ill bearing not allowed and with-slow step last
vadit, omnes agens ante se, quasi oves pastor bonus.
goes all driving before himself as sheep a-shepherd good
Equidem timor, quem caritas Dei foras miserat, ejus nec
indeed fear which the-love of-God out had-cast his neither
in gestu nec in incessu poterat notari; tam procul aberat
in gesture nor in gait could to-be-noted so far it-was-absent
ab omni ejus continentia exteriori, quam a mentis arce
from all his bearing exterior as from of-the-mind the-citadel
interiori. Semel quidem super dexteram oculos retorsit;
interior once indeed over the-right the-eyes he-turned-back
forte si videret illos regales vestigio ejus imminentes;
perhaps whether he-might-see those royal-ones on-the-track his pressing
forte ne aliquis relictus pessulum ostii obderet.
perhaps lest someone left the-bolt of-the-door should-shoot

In the church Thomas forbids the doors to be barred. The four come in armed; most of his clerks flee, but Robert of Merton, William son of Stephen, and Edward Grim stay. Thomas answers that he is no traitor but a priest of God, and forbids them to touch his people. Grim takes the first blow on his arm; Thomas falls by the altar of Saint Benedict, and Hugh of Horsea, his foot on Thomas's neck, draws out the blood and brain with his sword-point.

Intratum est in ecclesiam ipsam. Monachi ecclesiæ, pro
entered it-was into the-church itself the-monks of-the-church for
tali et tanto tumultu tam pavidi quam attoniti, relictis et
such and so-great a-tumult as-much frightened as astonished with-left and
non percantatis vesperis, Domino archiepiscopo in ecclesiam
not sung-through vespers with-the-lord archbishop into the-church
intrante, a choro exeunt ei obviam, gaudentes et Deo
entering from the-choir go-out to-him to-meet rejoicing and to-God
gratiam habentes quod eum vivum cernunt et recipiunt,
thanks having that him alive they-see and receive
quem jam detruncatum audierant. Et cum alii præ gaudio
whom already cut-down they-had-heard and when some for joy
vel timore flerent, alii hoc, alii illud suaderent, ut Petrus
or fear wept others this others that urged like Peter
Domino dicens, "Propitius esto tibi," ille, pro ecclesiæ Dei
to-the-Lord saying merciful be to-yourself he for of-the-church of-God
libertate et causa non timidus mori, jussit eos abire et
the-liberty and cause not afraid to-die ordered them to-go-away and
a se recedere: utique ne impedirent passionem ejus, quam
from himself to-withdraw certainly lest they-hinder the-passion his which
futuram prædixerat et imminere videbat. Iturus ad aram
about-to-be he-had-foretold and to-impend he-saw about-to-go to the-altar
superius, ubi missas familiares et horas solebat audire, jam
above where masses private and hours he-was-wont to-hear already

quatuor gradus ascenderat, cum ecce ad ostium claustri, quo
four steps he-had-ascended when behold at the-door of-the-cloister by-which
veneramus, primus adest Raginaldus Ursonis loricatus, ense
we-had-come first is-present Reginald son-of-Urse in-mail with-sword
evaginato, et vociferans, "Nunc huc ad me, homines regis!"
drawn and clamoring now hither to me men of-the-king
Nec multo post adduntur ei tres prædicti socii ejus,
nor much after are-added to-him the-three aforesaid companions his
similiter loricis contecti corpora et capita, præterquam oculos
likewise with-mail covered the-bodies and heads except the-eyes
solos, et ensibus nudatis. Plurimi etiam alii sine loricis,
alone and with-swords bared very-many also others without mail
armati, de sequela et sociis suis; et aliqui de urbe
armed from the-following and companions their and some from the-city
Cantuariæ, quos coactos secum illi venire compulerant. Die
of-Canterbury whom forced with-themselves they to-come had-compelled on-day
illo et quatriduo post ad vicina castra Dovræ, Hastingæ
that and for-four-days after at the-neighboring castles of-Dover of-Hastings
et cæterorum, ut prædictum est, erant milites habentes
and of-the-rest as said-before it-has were knights having
custodias: et ad portus transmarinos regis erant domestici;
the-guards and at the-ports overseas of-the-king were household-men
comes Willelmus ad Witsant, Saierus de Quinci, Ricardus
earl William at Wissant Saber of Quincy Richard
de Humet, alibi: forte si mare attentasset archiepiscopus,
of Humet elsewhere perhaps if the-sea should-have-tried the-archbishop
appulsus hic vel ibi caperetur. Visis, inquam, illis armatis,
having-landed here or there he-might-be-seized with-seen I-say those armed
voluerunt monachi ostium ecclesiæ obfirmare: sed bonus homo,
wished the-monks the-door of-the-church to-bar but the-good man
fiduciam habens in Domino, et non expavescens repentino
confidence having in the-Lord and not dreading with-sudden

terrore irruentes potentias impiorum, e gradibus descendit
terror the-rushing powers of-the-impious from the-steps descended
regressus, prohibens ne ostium ecclesiæ clauderetur, et
having-gone-back forbidding that the-door of-the-church be-shut and
dicens, "Absit ut de ecclesia Dei castellum faciamus;
saying far-be-it that from the-church of-God a-castle we-make
permittite intrare omnes ecclesiam Dei intrare volentes:
allow to-enter all the-church of-God to-enter wishing
fiat voluntas Dei." Eo tunc a gradibus descendente
let-be-done the-will of-God with-him then from the-steps descending
versus ostium, ne clauderetur, Johannes Saresberiensis et
toward the-door lest it-be-shut John of-Salisbury and
alii ejus clerici omnes, præter Robertum canonicum et
other his clerks all except Robert the-canon and
Willelmum filium Stephani et Edwardum Grim, qui novus ad
William son of-Stephen and Edward Grim who newly to
eum venerat, præsidia captantes, et se in tuto collocare
him had-come refuges seizing and themselves in safety to-place
curantes, relicto ipso, petiverunt alii altaria, alii latibula.
taking-care with-left him sought some the-altars others hiding-places
Et quidem si vellet archiepiscopus declinare, et se
and indeed if wished the-archbishop to-turn-aside and himself
fugæ præsidio liberare, optime uti posset, non quæsita,
of-flight by-the-help to-free best to-use he-could not sought
sed oblata occasione temporis et loci. Vespera erat, nox
but offered the-occasion of-time and of-place evening it-was night
longissima instabat; crypta erat prope, in qua multa et
longest was-pressing a-crypt was near in which many and
pleraque tenebrosa diverticula. Item erat ibi aliud ostium
very-many dark byways likewise was there another door
prope, quo per cochleam ascenderet ad cameras [et]
near by-which by the-winding-stair he-might-ascend to the-chambers and

testudines ecclesiæ superioris; forte non inveniretur, vel
vaults of-the-church upper perhaps not he-would-be-found or
interim aliud fieret. Sed nihil horum voluit. Non
meanwhile something-else would-happen but none of-these he-wished not
declinavit, non percussoribus supplicavit, non murmur edidit,
he-turned-aside not to-the-strikers he-begged not a-murmur he-uttered
non querimoniam in tota sua agonia: sed extremam horam,
not a-complaint in whole his agony but the-last hour
quæ imminebat, pro Christo et causa ecclesiæ patienter
which impended for Christ and the-cause of-the-church patiently
exspectans, fortitudine et constantia mentis, corporis, et
awaiting fortitude and constancy of-mind of-body and
sermonis, qualem de aliquo martyrum majorem nunquam
of-speech such-as about any of-the-martyrs greater never
audivimus, usus est, donec totum consummaretur. Ecce jam
have-we-heard used he-has until all was-consummated behold now
illi spiculatores, furia invecti, præter spem apertum cernentes
those executioners by-fury carried beyond hope open seeing
cursim ostium intrant ecclesiæ. "Quo, quo, scelesti, ruitis?"
running the-door enter of-the-church whither whither wicked-ones do-you-rush

"Quis furor, O miseri! quæ tanta licentia ferri!"
"What madness, O wretches! what so-great license of-the-sword!"

Quidam autem illorum monachis dixit, qui cum eo astabant,
a-certain-one however of-them to-the-monks said who with him stood
"Ne vos moveatis." Et quidem quasi confusi et attoniti,
not you move and indeed as-if confounded and astonished
a reverentia vultus ejus illi grassatores primo retulerunt
by the-reverence of-face his those cutthroats at-first drew-back
pedem, viso archiepiscopo. Postea clamavit aliquis, "Ubi
the-foot with-seen the-archbishop afterward shouted someone where

est ille proditor?" Archiepiscopus, suam in patientia animam
is that traitor the-archbishop his in patience soul
possidens, ad verbum illud non respondit. Aliquis item: "Ubi
possessing at word that not answered someone likewise where
est archiepiscopus?" Ille: "Ecce ego, non proditor, sed presbyter
is the-archbishop he behold I not a-traitor but a-priest
Dei; et miror, quod in tali habitu ecclesiam Dei ingressi estis.
of-God and I-wonder that in such dress the-church of-God entered you-have
Quid placet vobis?" Unus grassator: "Ut moriaris; impossibile
what pleases you one cutthroat that you-die impossible
est, ut vivas ulterius." At ille: "Et ego in nomine Domini
it-is that you-live further but he and I in the-name of-the-Lord
mortem suscipio, et animam meam et ecclesiæ causam Deo
death accept and soul my and of-the-church the-cause to-God
et beatæ Mariæ et sanctis hujus ecclesiæ patronis commendo.
and to-blessed Mary and to-the-saints of-this church patrons I-commend
Absit ut propter gladios vestros fugiam: sed, auctoritate
far-be-it that on-account-of swords your I-flee but by-the-authority
Dei interdico, ne quempiam meorum tangatis." Aliquis
of-God I-forbid that-not anyone of-mine you-touch someone
eorum bisacutam et gladium simul habuit, ut in securi et
of-them a-double-ax and a-sword together had that with an-axe and
bisacuta, si eis obfirmaretur, ostium dejicerent ecclesiæ;
double-ax if to-them were-barred the-door they-might-throw-down of-the-church
sed retento gladio, bisacutam, quæ adhuc ibi est, deposuit.
but with-retained the-sword the-double-ax which still there is he-laid-down
Quidam eum cum plano ense cædebat inter scapulas,
a-certain-one him with the-flat of-the-sword struck between the-shoulders
dicens, "Fuge; mortuus es." Ille immotus perstitit, et
saying flee dead you-are he unmoved stood-firm and
cervicem præbens, se Domino commendabat; et sanctos
the-neck offering himself to-the-Lord commended and the-holy

archiepiscopos martyres in ore habebat, beatum Dionysium
archbishops martyrs in mouth had blessed Denis
et sanctum Ælfegum Cantuariensem. Aliqui dicentes, "Captus
and saint Alphege of-Canterbury some saying captured
es; venies nobiscum," injectis manibus, eum ab ecclesia
you-are you-will-come with-us with-thrown hands him from the-church
extrahere volebant; nisi timerent, quod populus eum esset
to-drag-out wished unless they-feared that the-people him would-be
erepturus de manibus eorum. Ille, respondens, "Nusquam
about-to-snatch from the-hands their he answering nowhere
ibo; hic facietis, quod facere vultis, et quod vobis præceptum
will-I-go here you-will-do what to-do you-wish and what to-you commanded
est," quod poterat, renitebatur; et monachi eum retinebant:
is what he-could he-resisted and the-monks him held-back
cum quibus et magister Edwardus Grim, qui et primum
with whom also master Edward Grim who also the-first
a Willelmo de Traci in caput ejus vibratum gladii ictum
from William of Tracy at head his aimed of-the-sword blow
brachio objecto excepit; eodemque ictu et archiepiscopus in
with-arm interposed received and-with-the-same blow both the-archbishop on
capite inclinato, et ipse in brachio, graviter est vulneratus.
the-head bowed and he-himself in the-arm gravely was wounded
"O," ut ait sanctus Basilius, "bestiarum feritas in Dei virtute
O as says saint Basil of-beasts the-fierceness in of-God the-power
mansuescit: humana rabies nec ferarum mitescit exemplis."
grows-gentle human rage not-even of-wild-beasts grows-mild by-the-examples
Archiepiscopus a capite defluum cum brachio detergens et
the-archbishop from the-head the-flowing with the-arm wiping and
videns cruorem, gratias Deo agebat, dicens, "In manus tuas,
seeing the-gore thanks to-God gave saying into hands your
Domine, commendo spiritum meum." Datur in caput ejus
Lord I-commend spirit my is-given on head his

ictus secundus, quo et ille in faciem concidit, positis
a-blow second by-which also he on face fell with-placed
primo genibus, conjunctis et extensis ad Deum manibus,
first knees with-joined and extended to God hands
secus aram, quæ ibi erat, sancti Benedicti; et curam habuit
beside the-altar which there was of-saint Benedict and care he-had
vel gratiam ut honeste caderet, pallio suo coopertus usque
or grace that decently he-might-fall with-cloak his covered up-to
ad talos, quasi adoraturus et oraturus. Super dextram
to the-ankles as-if about-to-adore and about-to-pray on the-right
cecidit, ad dextram Dei iturus. Eum procumbentem
he-fell to the-right of-God about-to-go him lying-prostrate
Ricardus Brito percussit tanta vi, ut et gladius ad caput
Richard Brito struck with-such force that both the-sword on head
ejus et ad ecclesiæ pavimentum frangeretur; et ait, "Hoc
his and on of-the-church the-pavement was-broken and said this
habeas pro amore domini mei Willelmi, fratris regis."
have for the-love of-lord my William brother of-the-king
Hic siquidem Willelmus appetiverat conjugium comitissæ
this indeed William had-sought the-marriage of-the-countess
de Warenna; sed archiepiscopus contradixerat, quoniam hic
of Warenne but the-archbishop had-opposed since this
Willelmus ex matre imperatrice Mahalt, ille comes Warennæ
William from mother the-empress Matilda that earl of-Warenne
Willelmus ex patre rege Stephano, consobrinorum fuerant
William from father king Stephen of-first-cousins had-been
filii. Unde Willelmus, frater regis Henrici, inconsolabiliter
sons whence William brother of-king Henry inconsolably
doluit; et omnes sui archiepiscopo inimici facti sunt.
grieved and all his to-the-archbishop enemies made were

Quatuor omnino habuit ictus sanctus archiepiscopus, omnes
four in-all had blows the-holy archbishop all
in capite; et corona capitis tota ei amputata est.
on the-head and the-crown of-the-head whole from-him cut-off was
Tunc videre erat, quomodo artus spiritui famulabantur.
then to-see it-was how the-limbs to-the-spirit were-servants
Nam sicut nec mente, ita nec membrorum objectu vel
for as neither in-mind so neither of-the-members by-the-throwing or
dejectu morti visus est depugnare; quia mortem excepit
by-the-falling against-death seemed has to-struggle because death he-received
magis ex Dei desiderio voluntariam, quam de gladiis
more from of-God the-desire voluntary than from swords
militum violentam. Quidam Hugo de Horsea, cognomento
of-the-knights violent a-certain Hugh of Horsea surnamed
Malus Clericus, sancti martyris procumbentis collum pede
Bad Clerk of-the-holy martyr lying-prostrate the-neck with-foot
comprimens, a concavitate coronæ amputatæ cum mucrone
pressing from the-hollow of-the-crown cut-off with sword-point
cruorem et cerebrum extrahebat. O triste spectaculum! O
the-gore and the-brain drew-out O sad spectacle O
crudelitas inaudita eorum qui Christiani esse debuerant! Sed
cruelty unheard-of of-those who Christians to-be ought but
pejores sunt, qui sub nomine Christiano opera agunt
worse are those-who under the-name Christian works do
paganorum, quam qui aperte et ex errore paternarum
of-pagans than those-who openly and from error of-paternal
traditionum sunt infideles. O vere felicem et constantem
traditions are unbelievers O truly happy and constant
sanctum Dei martyrem Thomam! Occidi potuit, sed flecti
holy of-God martyr Thomas to-be-killed he-could but to-be-bent
non potuit. Et quidem, sicut quondam Christo patiente in
not he-could and indeed as once with-Christ suffering in

proprio corpore, ita et eodem nunc patiente in milite suo
own body so also with-the-same now suffering in soldier his
Thoma, avertit sol oculos, abscondit radios, obtenebravit
Thomas turned-away the-sun the-eyes bid the-rays darkened
diem, ne videret scelus hoc, et horrida tempestas cælum
the-day lest it-see crime this and a-horrid storm the-sky
contraxit, subiti ruerunt imbres, intonuit de cælo. Postea
drew-together sudden rushed rains it-thundered from heaven afterward
rubor aeris magnus emicuit, in effusi sanguinis signum,
a-redness of-the-air great flashed-out as of-shed blood a-sign
in flagitii horrorem, in ultionis celeritatem superventuræ
as of-the-crime a-horror as of-vengeance the-speed about-to-come-upon
his qui ita immane se efferarunt, et hoc piaculari
those who so monstrously themselves made-savage and by-this sacrilege
se depravaverunt, et qui mortis hujus causa exstiterunt,
themselves depraved and who of-death this the-cause stood
exesa et exuta omni naturæ humanæ mansuetudine.
eaten-away and stripped of-every of-nature human gentleness

The deed is worse than the crucifiers', for these were Christians, his sons and his men, and they killed him in his church at Christmas. The knights plunder the palace. Visions foretold his death. Thomas suffered for the liberty of the Church, unheard and unjudged. His chaplain Robert of Merton shows the monks the hair shirt beneath his habit, and they hail him a martyr.

Tam veloces pedes eorum ad effundendum sanguinem; tam
so swift the-feet their to shedding blood so
impia corda; tam torvos oculos; tam crudeles dextras, tam
impious the-hearts so grim the-eyes so cruel the-right-hands so
cruentos gladios. Scelus hoc omnes audientes et attendentes
bloody the-swords crime this all hearing and attending-to
illud exempli raritate transmittit, horrore reverberat,
it of-example by-the-rarity it-transfixes with-horror strikes-back
singularitate percellit, immanitate frustratur. Occiderunt filii
by-singularity stuns by-monstrousness baffles killed the-sons
patrem in utero matris suæ. Equidem floribus ecclesiæ
the-father in the-womb of-mother their indeed to-the-flowers of-the-church
nec lilia desunt nec rosæ, et in beati Thomæ passione
neither lilies are-lacking nor roses and in of-blessed Thomas the-passion
cum sævo extrahitur mucrone et cerebrum candens et
with the-savage is-drawn-out sword-point both the-brain white and
sanguis rubens. Vera nempe et certissima signa, quod ovium
the-blood red true surely and most-certain signs that of-the-sheep
Christi pastor et pro eis animam poneret archiepiscopus
of-Christ the-shepherd and for them the-soul would-lay-down the-archbishop
et agonista, confessor et martyr, duplicem stolam a
and athlete confessor and martyr a-double robe from

Domino percepturus, et de archiepiscopio fideliter administrato
the-Lord about-to-receive and for the-archbishopric faithfully administered
candidam, et de martyrio feliciter consummato purpuream.
a-white and for martyrdom happily consummated a-purple
In vita habuerat columbæ simplicitatem operum innocentia,
in life he-had-had of-the-dove the-simplicity of-works by-innocence
serpentis astutiam sancta prudentia. Eadem hæc et in
of-the-serpent the-cunning by-holy prudence the-same these-things also in
morte retinuit. Columba, morti non repugnavit, occisoribus
death he-kept as-a-dove to-death not he-resisted to-the-killers
nihil impedimenti procuravit: serpens, percussoribus corpus
no of-hindrance he-procured as-a-serpent to-the-strikers the-body
exposuit; non caput sed animam suam vel ecclesiam
exposed not the-head but soul his or the-church
conservavit. Etiam per visiones et præsagia ejus mors
preserved also through visions and presages his death
pluribus est revelata. Magister Radolphus, Londoniensis
to-many was revealed master Ralph of-the-London
ecclesiæ canonicus et sacerdos, vir magnæ honestatis, in
church canon and priest a-man of-great honor in
divina pagina doctor præcipuus, vidit per somnium, quod
the-divine page a-doctor outstanding saw through a-dream that
ipse, intuitum figens in sole, viderit in corpore solis
he-himself the-gaze fixing on the-sun saw in the-body of-the-sun
episcopum episcopalibus ornatum. Item visum est honestæ
a-bishop in-episcopal-robes adorned likewise seen it-was to-an-honorable
cuidam mulieri, quod videret lunam de cœlo cadentem, et
certain woman that she-saw the-moon from heaven falling and
quorundam gladiatorum gladiis totam detruncari.
of-certain gladiators by-the-swords whole to-be-cut-to-pieces

Quomodo impii grassatores depopulati sunt omnem
how the-impious cutthroats plundered have all
supellectilem sancti archiepiscopi, eo in ecclesia sua
the-furniture of-the-holy archbishop with-him in church his
crudelissime et impiissime interfecto.
most-cruelly and most-impiously killed
Exsaturati pio cruore, quem impii sitierant
glutted with-the-pious blood which the-impious had-thirsted-for
parricidæ, exeunt, et quendam Francigenam puerum
the-parricides go-out and a-certain French boy
archidiaconi Senonensis, eo quod plangeret archiepiscopum,
of-the-archdeacon of-Sens on-that because he-lamented the-archbishop
gravi inflicto vulnere cruentant. Interea alii deprædationi
with-a-heavy inflicted wound they-bloody meanwhile others to-plunder
vacant; totam domum archiepiscopi perambulant, thalamos
attend the-whole house of-the-archbishop they-traverse the-chambers
rimantur, clitellas et scrinia frangunt, vasa aurea et argentea,
they-ransack saddlebags and coffers they-break vessels gold and silver
monetam et aureos, bullas domini papæ, annulos, libros, pallia
coin and gold-pieces the-bulls of-the-lord pope rings books cloaks
pretiosa, ex quibus capæ, tunicæ, dalmaticæ, in ornatum
precious from which copes tunics dalmatics for the-adornment
ecclesiæ fieri deberent, tollunt. Clericorum cameras
of-the-church to-be-made ought they-take of-the-clerks the-chambers
intrant; eorum vestes, libros, argentum, sarcinas, cum omni
they-enter their garments books silver packs with all
supellectili asportarunt. A stabulis alii equos abducunt,
furniture carried-off from the-stables others horses lead-off
ut nihil omnino de rebus archiepiscopi vel clericorum seu
so-that nothing at-all of things of-the-archbishop or of-the-clerks or
familiæ ipsius relinqueretur, quod in manibus raptorum
of-the-household his be-left which into the-hands of-the-robbers

incidisset. Æstimo pluris erant ablata et rapta ibi
had-fallen I-estimate of-more-value were the-things-taken and seized there
quam duo millia marcarum. Quæ omnia, ut crucifixores Jesu
than two thousand of-marks which all-things as the-crucifiers of-Jesus
Christi vestimenta ipsius, ita hæc inter se partiti sunt
Christ the-garments his so these among themselves divided have
illi scelerati. Sed privilegia et bullas domini papæ inventas
those wicked-men but the-privileges and bulls of-the-lord pope found
transmarino regi miserunt; in hoc regis gratiam captantes,
to-the-overseas king they-sent in this of-the-king the-favor catching
in cæteris ejus perfidi, ejus infideles, ejus perjuri. Nam
in other-things his treacherous his unfaithful his perjured for
si non ecclesiæ, saltem regis debuerant esse omnia quæ
if not of-the-church at-least of-the-king ought to-be all-things which
fuerant archiepiscopi discedentis intestati. O mors inaudita!
had-been of-the-archbishop departing intestate O death unheard-of
O facinus exsecrabile! Occisores isti omnibus aliis sanctorum
O deed execrable killers these than-all other of-the-holy
martyrum interfectoribus detestabiliores. Nam et Domini
martyrs killers more-detestable for also of-the-Lord
nostri Jesu Christi crucifixores, simpliciter hominem putantes
our Jesus Christ the-crucifiers simply a-man thinking-him
et dicentes, solventem sabbata, paternas eorum traditiones
and saying-him loosing the-sabbaths paternal their traditions
evacuantem, filium Dei se facientem, cum esset Mariæ
emptying the-son of-God himself making though he-was of-Mary
et putaretur ab iis fabri filius, legis Mosaicæ zelum
and was-thought by them of-a-carpenter the-son of-the-law Mosaic zeal
habentes, suspenderunt eum in ligno, non intelligentes quem
having hung him on the-wood not understanding whom
ita tractarent; si enim cognovissent, nunquam Filium Dei
so they-were-treating if for they-had-known never the-Son of-God

crucifixissent. Unde et ipse Dominus orat pro iis, dicens,
would-they-have-crucified whence also himself the-Lord prays for them saying
"Pater, ignosce illis, quia nesciunt quid faciunt." Aliorum
Father forgive them because they-know-not what they-do of-the-others
etiam sanctorum apostolorum martyrum occisores contra suam
also holy apostles martyrs the-killers against their-own
non hoc agebant conscientiam; infideles, ido[lo]latræ et pagani,
not this did conscience unbelievers idolaters and pagans
fideles Christi in iter agebant exterminii, putantes se
the-faithful of-Christ into the-way drove of-extermination thinking themselves
in hoc Deo gratificari, ut prædixerat discipulis suis dicens,
in this God to-please as he-had-foretold to-disciples his saying
"Venit hora ut omnis qui interficit vos, arbitretur obsequium
comes the-hour that every-one who kills you think service
se præstare Deo." Sed grassatores isti beato Thomæ
himself to-render to-God but cutthroats these to-blessed Thomas
conchristiani erant, et ejus filii et ejus homines. Conchristiani,
fellow-Christians were and his sons and his men fellow-Christians
inquam, sacramentis sed non re sacramentorum; ejus
I-say by-sacraments but not in-reality of-the-sacraments his
filii, sed filii perditionis; ejus homines, sed omnem exuti
sons but sons of-perdition his men but all stripped

humanitatem. Ad hæc etiam apud paganos et Judæos
humanity to these-things also among pagans and Jews
magna erat sacrorum et locorum et temporum reverentia:
great was of-sacred-things and of-places and of-times the-reverence

"… veto quisquam faxit oletum.
"… I-forbid anyone should-make filth.
… pueri, sacer est locus: extra
… boys, sacred is the-place: outside
Mejite,"
Piss,"

in pagano scriptum est, cui "triste bidental" reverendum
in a-pagan written it-is to-whom a-grim struck-place to-be-revered
erat et venerabile.
was and venerable
Dies quoque festos feriabatur paganus, et natalem suum
days also festal kept-holiday the-pagan and birthday his
meliore numerabat lapillo. Judæus similiter sabbata sua
with-a-better counted pebble the-Jew likewise sabbaths his
et festivitates alias, et intra urbem sanguinem humanum
and festivals other and within the-city blood human
fundi non sineret; unde et extra portam passus est
to-be-shed not would-allow whence also outside the-gate suffered has
Dominus. Isti autem gladiatores sanctum archiepiscopum
the-Lord these however gladiators the-holy archbishop
gladiis transverberaverunt tempore sanctissimo, quinto
with-swords ran-through at-the-time most-holy on-the-fifth
natalis Domini die, loco sanctissimo totius Angliæ, in
of-the-Nativity of-the-Lord day in-the-place most-holy of-all England in
prima sede metropolitana ecclesiæ S. Trinitatis, quæ et
the-first see metropolitan of-the-church of-Holy Trinity which also

plurimorum sanctorum ibi quiescentium extollitur patrocinio,
of-very-many saints there resting is-exalted by-the-patronage
et religiosorum monachorum ibi Deo servientium incolitur
and of-religious monks there to-God serving is-inhabited
habitatu. Occisus est a talibus, tali tempore, tali
by-the-dwelling killed was by such-men at-such a-time in-such
loco, talis persona, pater spiritualis totius regni, ipsius
a-place such a-person the-father spiritual of-the-whole kingdom of-the-very
Cantuariensis ecclesiæ archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ primas,
of-the-Canterbury church archbishop of-all England primate
apostolicæ sedis legatus, servus Christi Jesu, sanctorum
of-the-apostolic see legate servant of-Christ Jesus of-the-holy
patrum imitator et sequipeda, vir religiosus,
fathers imitator and follower a-man religious

"Virtutis veræ custos rigidusque satelles,"
"Of-virtue true guardian and-rigid attendant,"

curans melior esse quam videri, Sancti Spiritus habitaculum,
caring better to-be than to-seem of-the-Holy Spirit the-dwelling
virtutum sanctarum domicilium.
of-virtues holy the-home
Passus est hac causa, pro justitia quidem et veritate
suffered he-has in-this cause for justice indeed and truth
et ecclesiæ libertate. Nam leges defendens ecclesiasticas,
and of-the-church liberty for the-laws defending ecclesiastical
et regis evacuans contrarias, ad tempus regis sui
and of-the-king emptying contrary for a-time of-king his
terreni iræ locum dans, et ecclesiæ suæ causam Deo
earthly to-the-anger place giving and of-church his the-cause to-God
commendans, in exsilio longo, proscriptione sæva sui et
commending in exile long by-proscription savage of-himself and

suorum, calicem multarum hausit passionum, aspera multa
of-his-men the-cup of-many he-drained sufferings harsh many-things
pertulit adversis rerum innumerabilium undis. Nullum genus
he-endured by-adverse of-things innumerable waves no kind
supplicii vel adversitatis deprecatus est. Ad ultimum anno
of-punishment or of-adversity begged-off has at the-last in-year
septimo revocatus, pacta sibi pace, sed male servata, quasi
seventh recalled with-made with-him peace but badly kept as-if
incarceratus est, jussus a sede sua non exire; ubi post
imprisoned he-was ordered from see his not to-go-out where after
paucos dies requisitus militibus se obtulit, et, ut dictum
few days sought by-the-knights himself he-offered and as said
est, gladiis cæsus calicem bibit martyrii sui, non auditus
it-has with-swords cut-down the-cup drank of-martyrdom his not heard
in jure, non judicatus, quia in judicando eo nulla causa
in law not judged because in judging him no cause
mortis inveniretur. Quod probe noverunt qui hoc ei
of-death would-be-found which well knew those-who this for-him
procuraverunt, ejus æmuli, mali filii ipsius, fratres Herodiadis
procured his rivals evil sons his-own brothers of-Herodias
crudelissimæ, quæ similiter quondam beatum baptistam
most-cruel who likewise once blessed the-baptist
Christi Johannem pro veritate primo fecit incarcerari; et
of-Christ John for truth first had to-be-imprisoned and
post, non auditum, non judicatum procuravit decollari. O
afterward not heard not judged procured to-be-beheaded O
feliciter factum reum, quem sic videmus absolutum!
happily made guilty whom thus we-see absolved
Diu quidem ibi jacuit fere solus, et derelictus a clericis
long indeed there he-lay almost alone and abandoned by the-clerks
et monachis et cæteris cunctis, nec etiam adhuc ablato
and monks and the-others all nor even still with-removed

lumine ad sanctas ejus exsequias. Osbertus cubicularius ejus
light for holy his obsequies Osbert chamberlain his
cum quodam cultello de propria sua scidit camisia, unde
with a-certain small-knife from own his cut shirt whence
semiputati capitis ejus reliquum contegeret.
of-half-cut-off head his the-rest he-might-cover
Qualiter egerunt circa sanctum Dei Thomam monachi,
how acted about the-holy of-God Thomas the-monks
clerici, et servientes, postquam ministri diaboli exierant
clerks and servants after the-ministers of-the-devil had-gone-out
de ecclesia.
from the-church
Cum cognitum esset recessisse occisores, adsunt circa
when known it-was to-have-withdrawn the-killers are-present around
sanctum archiepiscopum sui clerici et monachi, servientes et
the-holy archbishop his clerks and monks servants and
de urbe infiniti. Solvitur silentium, et latius erumpunt
from the-city countless is-loosed the-silence and more-widely burst-out
omnes in gemitus et lamenta, quæ prius, incumbente
all into groans and laments which before with-pressing
sicariorum timore, continuerant. In noctem plurimam fletus
of-the-assassins fear they-had-held-back into the-night most weeping
et ejulatum producunt. Placuit tandem feretro superpositum
and wailing they-prolong it-pleased at-length on-the-bier placed
corpus domini archiepiscopi per medium chorum ante altare
the-body of-the-lord archbishop through the-middle-of the-choir before the-altar
inferre, cranii vacuitate cooperta cum lineo mundo, pileolo
to-carry-in of-the-skull the-emptiness covered with a-linen clean with-cap
desuper astringente. Ille etiam adhuc animi dulcedinem et
from-above binding he even still of-spirit the-sweetness and
constantiam in vultu præferebat. Iterum ibi fletur plurimum.
constancy in face showed again there is-wept very-much

Frater Robertus, sacerdos et canonicus religiosæ domus
brother Robert priest and canon of-the-religious house
de Meritona, vir honestus, qui et ei a primo die
of Merton a-man honorable who also to-him from the-first day
ordinationis suæ capellanus et comes inseparabilis adhæserat,
of-ordination his as-chaplain and companion inseparable had-clung
post commendationem veræ religionis et honestatis domini
after the-commendation of-true religion and honor of-the-lord
archiepiscopi, cujus ipse erat conscius, ut confessionis ejus
archbishop of-which he-himself was aware as of-confession his
auditor, inter cætera ostendit monachis, quod prius omnes
the-hearer among other-things showed to-the-monks what before all
ignoraveramus, quod in cilicio esset archiepiscopus, injecitque
we-had-not-known that in a-hair-shirt was the-archbishop and-thrust
manum in sinum ejus, ostendens proximum carni ejus
the-hand into bosom his showing next to-flesh his
cilicium, et supra cilicium, habitum monachalem. Quoniam
the-hair-shirt and over the-hair-shirt the-habit monastic since
monachorum ecclesiæ illius Cantuariensis erat abbas, cum
of-the-monks of-church that of-Canterbury he-was abbot when
clericus esset electus, et ipse sub absconso chlamydis
a-clerk he-was elected and he-himself under the-hiding of-the-cloak
canonicalis Christi et beati Benedicti monachum gerebat
canonical of-Christ and of-blessed Benedict the-monk bore
absconditum. Tunc vero monachi, gaudio spirituali admodum
hidden then indeed the-monks with-joy spiritual greatly
hilarati, extollunt in cælum mentes manusque, magnificantes
gladdened raise to heaven minds and-hands magnifying
Deum; convertunt luctum in gaudium spirituale, lamenta in
God they-turn grief into joy spiritual laments into
voces lætitiæ; et de utroque martyrio ejus, et viventis
voices of-gladness and from each martyrdom his both of-the-living-man

voluntario et occumbentis violento, ad oculum edocti, ad
voluntary and of-the-dying-man violent to the-eye taught to
terram procidunt, pedes ejus et manus osculantur; eum
the-ground fall-forward the-feet his and hands kiss him
Sanctum Thomam invocant, omnes eum sanctum Dei
Saint Thomas they-invoke all him holy of-God
martyrem protestantur. Omnes accurrunt, visuri illum in
martyr proclaim all run-up about-to-see him in
cilicio, quem cancellarium viderant in purpura et bysso.
a-hair-shirt whom as-chancellor they-had-seen in purple and fine-linen

BURIAL AND MIRACLES

The monks gather his blood, bury him in the crypt in his vestments, and the young king thanks God that none of his men were there. A paralyzed woman is cured by water mixed with his blood, which pilgrims carry home in tin flasks; the blind see, lepers are cleansed, and the dead rise. All England comes to his tomb, and William closes with Thomas's place beside the Innocents and a prayer.

Post modicum quidam monachus ecclesiæ, Ernoldus Aurifaber,
after a-little a-certain monk of-the-church Arnold the-Goldsmith
et aliqui cum eo, ad locum martyrii ejus redeunt;
and some with him to the-place of-martyrdom his return
sanguinem ejus et cerebrum, per aream ecclesiæ effusum,
blood his and brain over the-floor of-the-church poured-out
mundissime in pelvim recolligunt; et ne conculcaretur locus
most-cleanly into a-basin gather-up and lest be-trampled place
ille pedibus transeuntium, scamna portabilia transponunt.
that by-the-feet of-those-passing benches portable they-set-across

Vigilia noctis illius pia, sancta et sobria fuit. Tantum
the-vigil of-night that pious holy and sober was only
commendationem animæ in silentio dicunt monachi.
the-commendation of-the-soul in silence say the-monks
Crastino mane rumor perstrepit in ecclesia, quod paravissent
on-the-next morning a-rumor resounds in the-church that had-prepared
familia illa de Broch cum suis complicibus eum ab ecclesia
family that of Broc with their accomplices him from the-church
extrahere, dolentes quod ipsum in ecclesia trucidassent; quod
to-drag-out grieving that him in the-church they-had-slaughtered which
timentes monachi, ocius accelerant sanctum corpus illud
fearing the-monks more-quickly hasten holy body that
sepelire et sepulchro inferre. Affuit illi obsequio abbas de
to-bury and into-the-tomb to-carry was-present at-that service the-abbot of
Boxlea et prior de Dovra, vocati prius ab archiepiscopo, quia
Boxley and the-prior of Dover summoned earlier by the-archbishop because
eorum consilio priorem, qui in Cantuariensi non erat ecclesia,
by-their counsel a-prior who in the-Canterbury not was church
unum de monachis voluit facere. Decreverunt ipsum non esse
one from the-monks he-wished to-make they-decided him not to-be
lavandum aliter quam lotus erat in sanguine suo; et amotis
to-be-washed otherwise than washed he-was in blood his and with-removed
distributisque ejus quotidianis vestibus superioribus, sepultus
and-distributed his daily garments outer buried
est in ipso in quo inventus est cilicio, et femoralibus
he-was in the-very in which found he-was hair-shirt and breeches
interius cilicinis, exterius lineis, et in eisdem caligis, et in
inside of-haircloth outside of-linen and in the-same gaiters and in
ipso quo erat habitu monachali; et supra hæc, in ipso
the-very in-which he-was habit monastic and over these-things in the-very
eodem in quo ordinatus fuit vestimento, alba quæ Græce
same in which ordained he-was vestment the-alb which in-Greek

poderis dicitur, superhumerali simplici, chrismatica, mitra,
poderis is-called the-amice simple the-chrismal-cloth the-miter
stola, mappula; quæ omnia sibi reservari præceperat, forte
the-stole the-maniple which all for-himself to-be-reserved he-had-ordered perhaps
in diem sepulturæ suæ. Supra quæ habuit archiepiscopaliter
for the-day of-burial his over which he-had archiepiscopally
tunicam, dalmaticam, casulam, pallium cum spinulis, calicem,
the-tunic the-dalmatic the-chasuble the-pallium with pins the-chalice
chirothecas, annulum, sandalia, pastoralem baculum; quo
the-gloves the-ring the-sandals the-pastoral staff as
consuetum est more, quo dignum est honore.
customary it-is in-the-manner in-which worthy it-is with-honor
Rex filius, audita morte sancti Thomæ, vehementissime
the-king the-son with-heard the-death of-saint Thomas most-vehemently
contristatus et corde perculsus, tetendit manus in cælum et
saddened and in-heart struck stretched the-hands to heaven and
oculos cordis et corporis ad Deum, dicens, "Proh dolor! sed,
the-eyes of-heart and of-body to God saying oh pain but
Deus, tibi gratias ago, quod clam me factum est hoc,
God to-you thanks I-give that secretly-from me done has-been this
et quod nullus meorum ibi fuit." Nam illi quatuor infelices
and that none of-mine there was for those four unhappy
grassatores peregerant rem antequam supradictus Hugo de
cutthroats had-accomplished the-thing before above-said Hugh of
Gundevilla et Willelmus filius Johannis venissent Cantuariam.
Gundeville and William son of-John had-come to-Canterbury
Peractis compositisque omnibus ad sepulturam pertinentibus,
with-completed and-arranged all-things to the-burial pertaining
sine missa, (quia ecclesia in ingressu armatorum violata erat,)
without mass because the-church at the-entry of-the-armed-men violated had-been

in marmoreo sarcophago novo, in crypta ante duo altaria, sacrum
in a-marble sarcophagus new in the-crypt before two altars the-sacred
corpus archiepiscopi multo ploratu conclamati reconditur.
body of-the-archbishop with-much weeping bewailed is-laid-away
Statim autem post tumulationis obsequium, in ipsa nocte
at-once however after of-the-entombment the-service on that-very night
et in ipsa hebdomada, divinæ virtutis affuit operatio, et
and in that-very week of-divine power was-present the-working and
martyrii tanti condigna declaratio. Siquidem unus civium
of-martyrdom so-great a-worthy declaration for one of-the-citizens
Cantuariensium, qui martyrio ejus inter cæteros spectator
of-Canterbury who at-martyrdom his among the-others a-spectator
adfuit, sanguinis ipsius aliquid camisiæ suæ intinxit. Habebat
was-present of-blood his some on-shirt his dipped he-had
enim domi suam uxorem jam pridem paralyticam. Quæ cum
for at-home his wife long since paralyzed who when
a viro suo domum reverso de passione et constantia
from husband her home returned about the-passion and constancy
sancti martyris ex ordine didicisset, (quod quidem in
of-the-holy martyr in order had-learned which indeed in
tumultu et flentium lacrymis et narrantium voce incondita
the-tumult both of-the-weepers in-tears and of-the-narrators in-voice confused
audierat,) cumque sanguinem sanctum in viri veste
she-had-heard and-when the-blood holy on of-husband the-garment
oculis aspiceret; fide ad Dominum devota, spe ad
with-eyes she-beheld with-faith to the-Lord devoted with-hope to
salutem erecta, voto ad martyrem supplica, petivit lavari
health raised with-a-vow to the-martyr suppliant she-sought to-be-washed
et recipi in aqua sanguinem, ut hauriret salutem. Ita
and to-be-taken-up in water the-blood that she-might-draw health so
factum est, et illa illico curata est. Hoc fecit Deus primum
done it-was and she at-once cured was this did God first

signorum pro martyre suo statim in ipsa nocte. Hinc
of-the-signs for martyr his at-once on that-very night hence
credo Deo inspirante tractum fuisse, ut in aqua aliquid
I-believe with-God inspiring drawn to-have-been that in water some
sanguinis sancti Thomæ intingueretur, et illud sanguinis
of-blood of-saint Thomas should-be-dipped and it of-blood
et aqua mixtum peregrinis S. Thomæ distribueretur
and water mixed to-the-pilgrims of-Saint Thomas be-distributed
in ampullis stanneis reportandum ad infirmorum suorum
in flasks of-tin to-be-carried-back for of-the-sick their
salutem. Vidi ego in phialis plurimis inscriptum monostichon,
the-health I-saw I on vials very-many inscribed a-single-verse

Fertur in ampullis aqua Thomæ sanguine mixta.
Is-carried in flasks the-water of-Thomas with-blood mixed.

Et quidem operante Deo ad fidelium votum, et suffragante
and indeed with-working God at of-the-faithful the-vow and with-supporting
sancto martyre, et promerente fide, cui nihil est impossibile,
the-holy martyr and with-meriting faith to-which nothing is impossible
illud aqua mixtum non solum infirmis infinitis profuit ad
that water mixed not only to-the-sick countless was-of-use for
curationem, sed et aliquibus morientibus, ne morerentur:
cure but also to-some dying that-not they-might-die
plus dico, sed sanum credi, aliquibus profuit mortuis ut
more I-say but sound to-be-believed to-some it-was-of-use dead that
resurgerent redivivi. A passione ejus nocte quarta, ex qua
they-might-rise alive-again from the-passion his on-the-night fourth from which
sabbatum illuxit, revelatum est cuidam clerico Londoniensi,
the-sabbath dawned revealed it-was to-a-certain clerk of-London
quod quidam sacerdos Londoniensis, Willelmus de Capella,
that a-certain priest of-London William of Capel

qui obmutuerat, iret ad sepulchrum sancti Thomæ et
who had-become-dumb should-go to the-tomb of-saint Thomas and
ibi curaretur. Et factum est ita. Cuidam viro religioso in
there be-cured and done it-was so to-a-certain man religious in
nocturna revelatione ostensus fuit Jesus Christus crucifixus in
a-nocturnal revelation shown was Jesus Christ crucified in
ea parte cryptæ ubi beati Thomæ repositus erat mundanus
that part of-the-crypt where of-blessed Thomas laid-away was the-worldly
homo. Vere quidem; quia Ipse in singulis martyribus suis
man truly indeed because He-himself in individual martyrs his
patitur, qui beato Petro Romam ad martyrium eunti occurrit,
suffers who to-blessed Peter to-Rome to martyrdom going met
et quærenti "Domine, quo vadis?" respondit, "Venio
and to-him-asking Lord whither are-you-going answered I-come
Romam iterum crucifigi." Erat aliqua mulier, anachorita,
to-Rome again to-be-crucified there-was a-certain woman anchoress
laica, quæ litteras non didicerat, nihil eloquii Latini
lay who letters not had-learned nothing of-speech Latin
noverat, præter aliquos psalmos et orationem Dominicam
knew except some psalms and the-prayer of-the-Lord
et symbolum. Hæc in illa novitate illius martyrii diebus et
and the-creed she in that newness of-that martyrdom by-days and
noctibus condolens, anxia, et aliquando in exstasi posita, una
by-nights grieving anxious and sometimes in ecstasy placed on-one
dierum misit monachis Cantuariensibus scripta verba hæc,
of-the-days sent to-the-monks of-Canterbury written words these
dicta sibi a venustissima Domina quadam, quæ sibi in visu
said to-her by a-most-lovely Lady certain who to-her in a-vision
noctis apparuit: "Noli flere pro archiepiscopo; caput ejus in
of-the-night appeared do-not weep for the-archbishop the-head his in
gremio Filii mei requiescit." Initia miraculorum hæc, ut
the-lap of-Son my rests the-beginnings of-miracles these-were that

Thomam martyrem sanctum Deus revelaret; siquidem sanctus
Thomas martyr holy God might-reveal since holy
ille, cujus vita virtutibus, mors miraculis, declaratur.
that-man whose life by-virtues death by-miracles is-declared
Sed de miraculis ejus in Anglia, sacerdotum et bonorum
but about the-miracles his in England of-priests and of-good
virorum testimonio declaratis, et in capitulo Cantuariensis
men by-the-testimony declared and in the-chapter of-the-Canterbury
ecclesiæ publice recitatis, magnus codex conscriptus exstat,
church publicly recited a-great codex written exists
præter alia quæ longe lateque in Gallia, in Hibernia,
besides other-things which far and-wide in Gaul in Ireland
et ubique terrarum operatus est sanctus Thomas, quibus
and everywhere of-lands worked has saint Thomas which
memoriæ commendandis defuit qui scriberet.
to-memory to-be-commended was-lacking one-who should-write
Sed imminentibus in die illis de Broch, et ad parietes
but with-threatening by day those of Broc and at the-walls
hospitiorum Cantuariæ de nocte stantibus, ut loquentem
of-the-lodgings of-Canterbury by night standing that one-speaking
bona de archiepiscopo sublimem raperent, et ad
good-things about the-archbishop aloft they-might-snatch and to
tribunal judicis sui pertraherent; primo magnalia Dei non
the-tribunal of-judge their they-might-drag at-first the-great-works of-God not
nisi in silentio loqui audebant fideles, donec adeo in
except in silence to-speak dared the-faithful until so-much in
virtute Spiritus Sancti percrebuit ibi gratia sanitatum et
the-power of-the-Spirit Holy grew-common there the-grace of-healings and
concursus populorum, ut caritas foras mitteret timorem:
the-concourse of-peoples that love out should-cast fear
dicentibus insidiatoribus, qui prius ad pontes et transitus
with-saying the-ambushers who before at the-bridges and crossings

viarum conscribebant eum vivum vel martyrio consummatum
of-the-roads wrote-down him living or by-martyrdom consummated
visitantes, “Nihil est quod agimus; non est consilium contra
those-visiting nothing it-is which we-do not there-is counsel against
Dominum. Ecce tota Anglia ad illum abit.” Ibi siquidem
the-Lord behold all England to him goes there indeed
Deus, ad nominis sui gloriam, ad ecclesiæ suæ consolationem,
God to of-name his the-glory to of-church his the-consolation
ad fidei nostræ corroborationem, sanguinem innocentem, qui
to of-faith our the-strengthening the-blood innocent which
effusus est, de pavimento ecclesiæ ad eum clamasse ostendit,
shed was from the-pavement of-the-church to him to-have-cried showed
ita miraculorum gratia martyrem suum glorificans et
so of-miracles by-the-grace martyr his glorifying and
causam ejus justificans. Cæci visum receperunt, contractis
the-cause his justifying the-blind sight received of-the-contracted
membrorum lineamenta extensa et directa sunt, surdis
limbs the-lineaments extended and straightened are to-the-deaf
redditus est auditus, paralytica membra glutinantur, evadunt
restored was hearing paralyzed limbs are-knit-together escape
incarcerati, dæmoniaci liberantur. Plurimæ aliæ infirmitates,
the-imprisoned the-demoniacs are-freed very-many other infirmities
cancri, hydropisis, fistulæ, tumorum epiltasiæ strangalidesve
of-cancer of-dropsy of-fistula of-tumors of-epilepsy or-hard-swellings
curantur. Leprosi septem infra primum annum ibi sunt
are-cured lepers seven within the-first year there were
mundati. Sed et mortui plures per Angliam sunt resuscitati,
cleansed but also dead many through England were raised-up
infusa in eorum ora aqua beati Thomæ sanguine mixta,
with-poured into their mouths the-water of-blessed Thomas with-blood mixed
quam in phialis stanneis, ad peregrinationis suæ signum et
which in vials of-tin for of-pilgrimage their a-sign and

infirmorum suorum remedium, fideles Christi ad pectora sua
of-the-sick their a-remedy the-faithful of-Christ on breasts their
dependentem inde reportant, et in ecclesiis suis pro reliquiis
hanging thence carry-back and in churches their for relics
sanctis suspendunt, nutu quodam divino, ut ubique gentium
holy hang by-nod a-certain divine that everywhere of-peoples
beati Thomæ martyris gloria inferatur, et in omni ecclesia
of-blessed Thomas martyr the-glory be-brought and in every church
pro libertate ecclesiæ sanguis ejus ad Deum clamare videatur.
for the-liberty of-the-church blood his to God to-cry may-seem
Et justo quidem Dei contigit judicio, ut ubi superabundavit
and by-just indeed of-God it-happened judgment that where superabounded
iniquitas, supra quam de aliquo passo apostolo vel martyre
iniquity beyond what about any suffering apostle or martyr
auditum sit, ibi supra cujuslibet sancti gloriam miraculorum
heard has-been there beyond of-any saint the-glory of-miracles
superabundet gratia, Domino operante, et fide Christiana,
should-superabound grace with-the-Lord working and with-faith Christian
cui omnia possibilia sunt, suffragante. Quæ quidem omnia
to-which all-things possible are supporting which indeed all-things
digna et pia sunt credi de sancto Domini, ipsa confirmat
worthy and pious are to-be-believed about the-saint of-the-Lord itself confirms
auctoritas Jesu Christi dicentis de sancto suo, “Opera quæ
the-authority of-Jesus Christ saying about saint his the-works which
ego facio ipse faciet, et majora horum faciet.” Sed et
I do he-himself will-do and greater than-these will-do but also
in strata, ubi steterunt pedes ejus, dum parvulos oblatos
in the-road where stood the-feet his while the-little-ones offered

consignaret, non deest fidelibus Christi gratia virtutum
he-was-confirming not is-lacking to-the-faithful of-Christ grace of-miracles
operatrix, ubi fidelium vicinorum devotio capellas exstruit,
the-worker where of-the-faithful neighbors the-devotion chapels builds

"Jurandasque suum per nomen construit aras."
"And-to-be-sworn-by his by name he-builds altars."

In maris periculo summo constituti, eo patrocinante
in of-the-sea peril utmost placed with-him protecting
liberati, ad ipsius sepulchrum gratias agere redierunt, et
freed to his tomb thanks to-give they-returned and
miraculi tanti et ereptionis suæ signum reliquerunt.
of-the-miracle so-great and of-rescue their a-sign left
Dulcis illa anima sancti Thomæ martyris ita affectuose,
sweet that soul of-saint Thomas martyr so affectionately
ita gratiose, in omnium piarum animarum et omnium
so graciously in of-all pious souls and of-all
hominum bonæ voluntatis inhæsit desideriis et dilectioni, ut
men of-good will clung to-the-desires and love that
a pueris, qui colludentes in viis ejus narrant passionem,
from the-boys who playing-together in the-streets his tell passion
cantant gloriam, perficiunt laudem, usque ad senes
sing glory complete praise up-to to the-old-men
decrepitos, gaudentes se ad hæc Dei magnalia videnda
decrepit rejoicing themselves to these of-God great-works to-be-seen
durasse superstites, omnis ætas, omnis ordo eum veneretur,
to-have-lasted survivors every age every order him venerates
ejus requirat patrocinatum, ejus habeat amorem in corde,
his seeks protection his has love in heart
nomen in ore, ejus habeat memoriam in gloria, gloriam in
name in mouth his has memory in glory glory in

memoria. Excitavit in Dei devotionem, quæ in Anglorum
memory he-roused into of-God devotion which in of-the-English
mentibus jam pridem tepuerat, et in pia desideria vitæ
the-minds long since had-grown-lukewarm and into pious desires of-life
meliorandæ, peregrinationis sanctæ, et eleemosynæ faciendæ,
to-be-bettered of-pilgrimage holy and of-alms to-be-made
omnem Angliæ habitatorem, et comites et barones, et
every of-England inhabitant and earls and barons and
vicina undique regna, peregrinis ejus, prius quam ad
neighboring on-all-sides kingdoms with-the-pilgrims his sooner than to
sepulchrum ipsius accedant, peccata confitentibus et se
tomb his they-approach sins confessing and themselves
discalceantibus, ut de tanto utriusque sexus concursu,
unshoeing so-that from so-great of-each sex a-concourse
et tam pia visitationis ejus instantia, inter magnalia
and so pious of-visitation his urgency among the-great-works
Dei hoc unum sit de maximis. Vir sanctitate et gratia
of-God this one be of the-greatest a-man in-holiness and grace
plenus, martyr Dei, terra marique celeberrimus, promptus in
full martyr of-God by-land and-by-sea most-famous ready in
opportunitatibus adjutor, ut credere pium est, eo ampliore
needs a-helper as to-believe pious it-is by-so-much the-ampler
a Deo honoratur signorum frequentia, quo amplior in
by God is-honored of-signs with-frequency by-how-much the-ampler in
ipsius detruncatione sævit malitia; dum pro libertate et causa
his cutting-down raged malice while for the-liberty and cause
ecclesiæ ipse Christi minister a Christianis, sed nomine
of-the-church he-himself of-Christ the-minister by Christians but in-name
tantum, archiepiscopus a filiis, dominus ab hominibus suis,
only archbishop by sons lord by men his
in pace sibi pacta, in ecclesia Dei sancta metropolitana
in peace with-him agreed in the-church of-God holy metropolitan

sua, et in sancta Domini nostri Jesu Christi Nativitate,
his and on the-holy of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ Nativity
crudeliter est in corona gladiis transverberatus.
cruelly was on the-crown with-swords run-through
Sanctorum Innocentium S. Thomas martyr mente innocens et
of-the-Holy Innocents Saint Thomas martyr in-mind innocent and
vita innocuus comes est et socius, et ipse sub altare Dei
in-life harmless companion is and fellow and he-himself under the-altar of-God
occisus, unus quidem fratrum illorum de quorum implendo
killed one indeed of-the-brothers those of whose to-be-filled
numero innocentes acceperunt Divinum responsum sustinendi
number the-innocents received the-Divine answer of-waiting
modicum tempus. Unde et congrue ad sanctorum Innocentium
a-little time whence also fittingly to of-the-holy Innocents
translatus gloriam illorum memoriæ suam continuat memoriam.
carried the-glory to-their memory his continues memory
Sed et de Domino Jesu Christo et beato Thoma apostolo et
but also about the-Lord Jesus Christ and blessed Thomas apostle and
de hoc beato Thoma martyre aliquis clericus non improbabiliter
about this blessed Thomas martyr some clerk not improbably
intellexit et dixit, "Beatus Thomas apostolus passus in
understood and said blessed Thomas apostle having-suffered in
India fide illuminavit orientem. Hic beatus Thomas martyr
India by-faith illuminated the-east this blessed Thomas martyr
passus in Anglia totum illuminavit occidentem, Jesus
having-suffered in England the-whole illuminated west Jesus
Christus passus est Jerosolymis, et extremitatem mundi lux
Christ suffered has at-Jerusalem and the-extremity of-the-world a-light
communis, lux vera, illuminans omnem hominem venientem
common a-light true illuminating every man coming
in hunc mundum, quasi medio termino conjuncturus
into this world as-if by-the-middle term about-to-join

extrema. Et quæ est locorum, eadem est contemplatio
the-extremes and which is of-the-places the-same is the-contemplation
festivitatum eorum; Nativitatem Domini mediam, quinto
of-festivals their the-Nativity of-the-Lord in-the-middle on-the-fifth
die festivitate apostoli præcedente, martyris consequente."
day with-the-festival of-the-apostle preceding of-the-martyr following
De tempore passionis sancti Thomæ martyris quidam hoc
about the-time of-the-passion of-saint Thomas martyr someone this
distichon edidit:
distich published

"Annus millenus centenus septuagenus
"The-year thousandth hundredth seventieth
Et primus, primas quo cadit ense Thomas."
And first, the-primate in-which falls by-the-sword Thomas."

Ipse pro pace, libertate et unitate ecclesiæ, et pro
he-himself for peace liberty and unity of-the-church and for
omnium fidelium salute vivorum, requie defunctorum,
of-all the-faithful the-salvation of-the-living the-repose of-the-dead
intercedat apud Deum, qui in martyribus suis victoriosus
may-he-intercede with God who in martyrs his victorious
et omnibus sanctis suis exstat gloriosus per infinita sæcula
and in-all saints his stands glorious through infinite ages
sæculorum. Amen.
of-ages amen